In the Name of Allah, the Most Gracious, the Most Merciful

© Maktaba Dar-us-Salam, 2007
King Fahd National Library Catalog-in-Publication Data
An-Nasai, Ahmad bin `Ali
An-Nasai / Ahmad bin `Ali - An-Nasai-Riyadh-2007
491p, 14x21 cm
978-9960-58-760-8 (Vol.- 6)
1-Al-Hadith- Six books 2- Hadith 3-Title
237.3 dc 1428/7415
Legal Deposit no.1428/4679
978-9960-58-766-0 (Vol.- 6)
Contents

47. The Book Of Faith And Its Signs

Chapter 1. Mentioning The Best Of Deeds ........................................... 15
Chapter 2. The Taste Of Faith ............................................................... 16
Chapter 3. The Sweetness Of Faith ....................................................... 17
Chapter 4. The Sweetness Of Islam ....................................................... 17
Chapter 5. Islam's Description ............................................................. 18
Chapter 6. Description Of Faith And Islam .......................................... 20
Chapter 8. Description Of The Believer ............................................... 24
Chapter 9. Description Of The Muslim ................................................ 24
Chapter 10. A Man Being Good In His Islam ......................................... 25
Chapter 12. Which (Quality) Of Islam Is Best? ....................................... 26
Chapter 14. Pledging To Follow Islam .................................................. 27
Chapter 15. For What Are The People To Be Fought ............................. 28
Chapter 16. Mentioning The Branches Of Faith .................................... 29
Chapter 17. Variation In People's Level Of Faith .................................... 30
Chapter 18. Increasing Faith ............................................................... 31
Chapter 19. The Sign Of Faith ............................................................. 34
Chapter 20. The Sign Of A Hypocrite .................................................... 36
Chapter 21. Praying Qiyām In Ramadān ............................................... 38
Chapter 22. Spending Lailat Al-Qadr In Prayer ...................................... 39
Chapter 23. Zakāh ............................................................... 39
Chapter 24. Jihād ........................................................................ 40
Chapter 25. Paying The Khums ........................................................... 41
Chapter 26. Attending Funerals ........................................................... 42
Chapter 27. Modesty (Al-Hayā') .......................................................... 42
Chapter 28. Religion Is Easy ............................................................... 43
Chapter 29. Most Beloved Part Of Religion To Allāh .............................. 44
Chapter 30. Fleeing With The Religion From Tribulations ..................... 44
Chapter 31. The Parable Of The Hypocrite .......................................... 45
Chapter 32. The Parable Of The Believer And The Hypocrite Who Read The Qur'ān ............................................................... 45
Chapter 33. The Sign Of The Believer ................................................................. 46

48. The Book Of Adornment, From As-Sunan48

Chapter 1. The *Fitrah* ...................................................................................... 48
Chapter 2. Trimming The Mustache ................................................................. 50
Chapter 3. Concession For Shaving The Head ................................................. 51
Chapter 4. Prohibition Of A Woman Shaving Her Head .................................. 52
Chapter 5. Prohibition Of *Al-Qaza‘* (Shaving Part Of The Head And Leaving Part) ................................................................. 52
Chapter 6. Cutting The (Hair) .......................................................................... 53
Chapter 7. Combing The Hair Every Other Day ............................................... 55
Chapter 8. Starting On The Right When Combing One’s Hair ......................... 56
Chapter 9. Letting The Hair Grow .................................................................. 57
Chapter 10. Braids ............................................................................................ 58
Chapter 11. Letting The Hair Grow Long ......................................................... 59
Chapter 12. Tying Up The Beard .......................................................... 60
Chapter 13. Prohibition Of Plucking Gray Hairs .............................................. 61
Chapter 14.Permission To Dye The Hair ........................................................ 61
Chapter 15. Prohibition Of Dyeing Hair Black ................................................ 63
Chapter 16. Dyeing Hair With *Henna And Katam* ...................................... 64
Chapter 17. Dyeing The Hair With Yellow Dye ............................................. 67
Chapter 18. Women Dyeing ............................................................................ 69
Chapter 19. Disliking The Smell Of *Henna* .................................................. 70
Chapter 20. Plucking Hairs ............................................................................. 70
Chapter 21. Extending Hair With Cloth ........................................................... 72
Chapter 22. Woman Who Affixes Hair Extensions ......................................... 73
Chapter 23. Woman Who Has Hair Extensions Affixed .................................. 73
Chapter 24. *Al-Mutanammiṣat* (The Women That Have Their Eyebrows Plucked) ........................................................................ 75
Chapter 25. Women Who Have Tattoos Done, And Mention Of The Differences Reported From ‘Abdullāh Bin Murrah And Ash-Sha‘bī About This ........................................................................ 76
Chapter 26. Women Who Have Their Teeth Separated .................................. 79
Chapter 27. Prohibition On Filing (The Teeth) .................................................. 80
Chapter 28. Kohl ............................................................................................... 81
Chapter 29. *Ad-Dahn* (Oil) ............................................................................ 81
Chapter 30. Saffron .......................................................................................... 82
Chapter 31. Amber ............................................................................................ 82
Chapter 32. The Difference Between Perfumes For Men And Perfumes For Women ........................................................................... 83
Chapter 33. The Best Type Of Perfume ............................................................. 84
Chapter 34. Saffron And *Khaliq* .................................................................... 84
Chapter 35. Kinds Of Perfume That Are Disliked (*Makrāh*) For Women .......... 87
Chapter 36. Women Performing *Ghusl* To Remove Perfume ....................... 87
Chapter 37. Prohibition Of Women Attending The Prayer If They Have
Chapter 38. Perfumed Themselves With Incense ........................................... 88
Chapter 39. Incense ........................................................................ 91
Chapter 40. Dislike For Women To Show Their Jewelry And Gold .......... 91
Chapter 41. Prohibition Of Gold For Men .......................................... 95
Chapter 42. If A Man’s Nose Has Been Cut Off, Can He Wear A Nose Made Of Gold? ...................................................................... 102
Chapter 43. Concession For Gold Rings For Men .................................. 103
Chapter 44. Gold Rings ..................................................................... 104
Chapter 45. The Differences Reported From Yahya Bin Abi Kathir About That ............................................................................. 111
Chapter 46. The Hadith Of ‘Abidah ...................................................... 111
Chapter 47. The Hadith Of Abù Hurairah And The Differences Reported From Qatādah ............................................................. 112
Chapter 48. The Amount Of Silver That May Be Included In A Ring ....... 116
Chapter 49. Description Of The Ring Of The Prophet ﷺ ...................... 116
Chapter 51. Wearing An Iron Ring With Silver Twisted Around It ...... 120
Chapter 52. Wearing A Brass Ring ..................................................... 120
Chapter 53. The Words Of The Prophet ﷺ: “Do Not Engrave Arabic (Words) On Your Rings” ........................................................... 123
Chapter 54. Prohibition Of Wearing The Ring On The Forefinger ......... 123
Chapter 55. Taking Off One’s Ring When Entering Al-Khalâ’ (The Area In Which One Relieves Oneself) ......................................... 125
Chapter 56. Small Bells ..................................................................... 128

The Book Of Adornment From Al-Mujtaba

Chapter 57. The Fīrah ....................................................................... 131
Chapter 58. Trimming The Mustache And Letting The Beard Grow ...... 131
Chapter 59. Shaving Boys’ Heads ....................................................... 132
Chapter 60. Mentioning The Prohibition Of Shaving Part Of A Boy’s Head And Leaving Part .......................................................... 132
Chapter 61. Wearing One’s Hair Long ................................................ 133
Chapter 62. Calming Down One’s Hair .............................................. 135
Chapter 63. Parting The Hair .............................................................. 136
Chapter 64. Combing One’s Hair ....................................................... 136
Chapter 65. Starting On The Right When Combing The Hair ................ 136
Chapter 66. The Command To Dye The Hair ...................................... 137
Chapter 67. Dyeing The Beard Yellow .............................................. 138
Chapter 68. Dyeing The Beard Yellow With Wars And Saffron .......... 138
Chapter 69. Adding Extensions To The Hair .................................... 139
Chapter 70. Hair Extensions Made Of Cloth .................................... 140
Chapter 71. Cursing The Woman Who Fixes Hair Extensions ............. 140
Chapter 72. Cursing The Woman Who Fixes Hair Extensions And The One Who Has That Done ..................................................... 141
Chapter 72. Cursing *Al-Mutanannnisît* (The Women That Have Their Eyebrows Plucked) And Who Have Their Teeth Separated..... 142
Chapter 73. Using Saffron.............................................................. 143
Chapter 74. Perfume ........................................................................ 144
Chapter 75. The Best Of Perfume .................................................. 146
Chapter 76. Prohibition Of Wearing Gold ........................................ 146
Chapter 77. Prohibition On Wearing Gold Rings .............................. 146
Chapter 78. Description Of The Ring Of The Prophet ﷺ And Its Inscription ................................................................. 149
Chapter 79. Where The Ring Is To Be Worn .................................... 151
Chapter 80. Where The Stone (*Fasâr*) Is To Be Worn .................... 153
Chapter 81. Discarding A Ring And Not Wearing It Anymore .......... 154
Chapter 82. Mentioning Clothes Which It Is Recommended To Wear, And Those Which Is It Disliked To Wear .................................. 156
Chapter 83. Prohibition On Wearing *Sirâ* ............................... 156
Chapter 84. Concession Allowing Women To Wear *Sirâ* .................. 157
Chapter 85. Prohibition Of Wearing *Al-Istâbraq* ....................... 158
Chapter 86. Description Of *Al-Istâbraq* ........................................ 159
Chapter 87. Mentioning The Prohibition Of Wearing *Ad-Dibâj* .... 159
Chapter 88. Wearing *Ad-Dibâj* Intervoven With Gold ............... 160
Chapter 89. Mentioning The Abrogation Of That ...................... 161
Chapter 90. Stern Warning Against Wearing Silk, And That Whoever Wears It In This World Will Not Wear It In The Hereafter .... 162
Chapter 91. Prohibition Of *Al-Qâssîyah* Garments ...................... 164
Chapter 92. Concession For Wearing Silk ...................................... 164
Chapter 93. Wearing *Hullâhs* ......................................................... 166
Chapter 94. Wearing a *Hibârah* ...................................................... 167
Chapter 95. Mentioning The Prohibition Of Wearing Garments Dyed With Safflower ......................................................... 167
Chapter 96. Wearing Green Garments ............................................ 168
Chapter 97. Wearing *Burdâhs* (Cloaks) ........................................ 169
Chapter 98. The Command To Wear White Garments ................. 169
Chapter 99. Wearing *Qâbâ’s* .......................................................... 170
Chapter 100. Wearing Trousers .......................................................... 171
Chapter 101. Stern Warning Against Dragging One’s *Izâr* .............. 171
Chapter 102. Up To Where Should The *Izâr* Come? ............... 172
Chapter 103. Whatever Of The *Izâr* Comes Below The Ankles .... 173
Chapter 104. *Ishâb* *Al-Izâr* (Letting the *Izâr* Hang Below The Ankles) .......................................................... 174
Chapter 105. Women’s Hems ............................................................. 175
Chapter 106. Prohibition On *Ishâtînâl As-Šammmâ* .................. 177
Chapter 107. Prohibition Of *Al-Ithâbâ* (Wrapping Oneself In A Single Garment) ............................................... 178
Chapter 108. Wearing Black Turbans ............................................. 178
Chapter 109. Wearing Black Turbans ............................................. 179
Chapter 110. Letting The End Of The Turban Hang Between The Shoulders ........................................ 179
Chapter 111. Images .............................................. 180
Chapter 112. The People Who Will Be Most Severely Punished ................................................. 183
Chapter 113. What The Image-Makers Will Be Commanded To Do On The Day Of Resurrection ................................................. 184
Chapter 114. The People Who Will Be Most Severely Punished ................................................. 186
Chapter 115. Blankets ............................................. 187
Chapter 116. Description Of The Sandals Of The Messenger Of Allâh .................................................................... 188
Chapter 117. Prohibition Of Walking In One Sandal ................................................................. 188
Chapter 118. What Has Been Related About Leather Cloths ......................................................... 189
Chapter 119. Keeping Servants And Mounts ................................................................. 190
Chapter 120. Adornments Of A Sword ................................................................. 191
Chapter 121. Prohibition Of Sitting On Red Al-Mayâthir ................................................................. 192
Chapter 122. Sitting On Chairs ................................................................. 192
Chapter 123. Using Red Tents ................................................................. 193

49. The Book Of The Etiquette Of Judges

Chapter 1. Virtue Of The Judge Who Is Just In Passing Judgment .... 194
Chapter 2. The Just Ruler ............................................. 194
Chapter 3. Passing Correct Judgment ............................................. 196
Chapter 4. Not Appointing One Who Is Eager To Be A Judge ............................................. 196
Chapter 5. Prohibition Of Asking For Governorship ............................................. 197
Chapter 6. Appointing Poets ............................................. 199
Chapter 7. If People Appoint A Man As Judge, And He Passes Judgment Among Them ............................................. 199
Chapter 8. Prohibition Of Appointing Women For Judgment ............................................. 200
Chapter 9. Passing Judgment On The Basis Of A Comparison Or Similarities, And Mentioning The Differences Reported From Al-Walîd Bin Muslim In The Hâdîth Of Ibn ‘Abbâs ............................................. 201
Chapter 10. Mentioning The Different Reports From Yahya Ibn Abî Ishâq ............................................. 203
Chapter 11. Ruling According To The Consensus Of The Scholars ............................................. 205
Chapter 12. Meaning Of The Verse: “And Whosoever Does Not Judge By What Allâh Has Revealed, Such Are The Disbelievers” ............................................. 208
Chapter 13. Judgment Based On What Is Apparent ............................................. 211
Chapter 14. Ruling Of A Judge Based On His Knowledge ............................................. 212
Chapter 15. The Judge Is Allowed To Speak Of Something That He Will Not Actually Do In Order To Establish The Truth ............................................. 213
Chapter 16. The Judge Undoing A Ruling Passed By Someone Else Of His Caliber Or Greater Than Him ............................................. 213
Chapter 17. Refuting A Judge If He Passes An Incorrect Judgment ............................................. 214
Chapter 18. Mentioning What The Judge Should Avoid ............................................. 215
Chapter 19. Concession Allowing A Trustworthy Judge To Pass Judgment When He Is Angry ............................................. 216
Chapter 20. The Judge Passing Judgment In His House .............................. 218
Chapter 21. Seeking Help Against Another Person ........................................ 218
Chapter 22. Sparing Women The Need To Attend The Ruling ....................... 219
Chapter 23. The Judge Turning Toward One Who Tells Him That He Has Committed Zinâ ................................................................. 222
Chapter 24. The Judge Going To His People To Reconcile Between Them ........... 222
Chapter 25. The Judge Advising Disputing Parties To Reconcile .................... 224
Chapter 26. The Ruler Suggesting That The Disputant Should Pardon ............ 224
Chapter 27. The Judge Suggesting Leniency ............................................... 226
Chapter 28. The Judge Seeking To Intercede For One Of The Disputing Parties Before Passing Judgment .................................................. 227
Chapter 29. The Ruler Preventing His Flock From Wasting Their Wealth When They Have Need Of It ....................................................... 227
Chapter 30. Passing Judgment In A Dispute Concerning A Little Wealth, Or A Great Deal Of Wealth ......................................................... 228
Chapter 31. The Judge Suggesting Leniency ............................................... 226
Chapter 32. The Judge Seeking To Intercede For One Of The Disputing Parties Before Passing Judgment .................................................. 227
Chapter 33. The Judge Advising Disputants To Take An Oath ......................... 231
Chapter 34. How The Judge Is To Ask People To Swear For An Oath ............... 233

The Book Of Seeking Refuge With Allâh

(Chapter 1. What Was Narrated Concerning Al-Mu‘awwadhatain (Two Sîrahs Seeking Refuge With Allâh) ........................................... 235
Chapter 2. Seeking Refuge With Allâh From A Heart That Does Not Feel Humble ................................................................. 243
Chapter 3. Seeking Refuge From The Tribulation Of The Heart ....................... 244
Chapter 4. Seeking Refuge From The Evil Of One’s Hearing And Seeing ........ 244
Chapter 5. Seeking Refuge From Cowardice ............................................. 245
Chapter 6. Seeking Refuge From Miserliness ............................................. 245
Chapter 7. Seeking Refuge From Worry .................................................... 247
Chapter 8. Seeking Refuge From Grief ...................................................... 249
Chapter 9. Seeking Refuge From Debt And Sin ........................................... 250
Chapter 10. Seeking Refuge From The Evil Of Hearing And Seeing .................. 250
Chapter 11. Seeking Refuge From The Evil Of Seeing .................................. 251
Chapter 12. Seeking Refuge From Laziness ............................................... 251
Chapter 13. Seeking Refuge From Incapacity ............................................. 252
Chapter 14. Seeking Refuge From Humiliation .......................................... 253
Chapter 15. Seeking Refuge From Want .................................................... 254
Chapter 16. Seeking Refuge From Poverty ................................................ 255
Chapter 17. Seeking Refuge From The Evils Of The Trials Of The Grave ....... 256
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Seeking Refuge From A Soul That Is Not Satisfied</td>
<td>257</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Seeking Refuge From Hunger</td>
<td>258</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Seeking Refuge From Treachery</td>
<td>258</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Seeking Refuge From Opposing The Truth, Hypocrisy And Bad Manners</td>
<td>259</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>Seeking Refuge From Debt</td>
<td>260</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>Seeking Refuge From Debt</td>
<td>260</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>Seeking Refuge From Being Overwhelmed With Debt</td>
<td>261</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>Seeking Refuge From Difficult Debt</td>
<td>262</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>Seeking Refuge With Allâh From The Evil Of The Trials Of Richness</td>
<td>262</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>Seeking Refuge From The Trials Of This World</td>
<td>263</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>Seeking Refuge From The Evils Of One’s Sexual Organ</td>
<td>265</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>Seeking Refuge From The Evil Of Kifr</td>
<td>266</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>Seeking Refuge From Misguidance</td>
<td>266</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>Seeking Refuge From Being Overpowered By The Enemy</td>
<td>267</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>Seeking Refuge From The Enemy Rejoicing In One’s Misfortune</td>
<td>267</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>Seeking Refuge From Old Age</td>
<td>268</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>Seeking Refuge From Being Destined To An Evil End</td>
<td>268</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>Seeking Refuge From Being Overtaken By Destruction</td>
<td>269</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>Seeking Refuge From Madness</td>
<td>269</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>Seeking Refuge From The Evil Eye Of The Jinn</td>
<td>270</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>Seeking Refuge From Having A Bad Old Age</td>
<td>270</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>Seeking Refuge From Reaching The Age Of Senility</td>
<td>271</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>Seeking Refuge From Reaching The Age Of Second Childhood</td>
<td>271</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>Seeking Refuge From Loss After Plenty</td>
<td>272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>Seeking Refuge From The Prayer Of One Who Has Been Wronged</td>
<td>273</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td>Seeking Refuge From The Sorrows Of Return</td>
<td>273</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>Seeking Refuge From A Bad Neighbor</td>
<td>274</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>Seeking Refuge From Being Overpowered By Men</td>
<td>274</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td>Seeking Refuge From The Tribulation Of The Dajjâl</td>
<td>275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47</td>
<td>Seeking Refuge From The Torment Of Hell And The Evils Of Al-Masihid-Dajjâl</td>
<td>275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>Seeking Refuge From The Evil Of Devils Among Mankind</td>
<td>277</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49</td>
<td>Seeking Refuge From The Trials Of Life</td>
<td>277</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>Seeking Refuge From The Trials Of Death</td>
<td>279</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51</td>
<td>Seeking Refuge From The Torment Of The Grave</td>
<td>280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52</td>
<td>Seeking Refuge From The Trial Of The Grave</td>
<td>280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53</td>
<td>Seeking Refuge From The Punishment of Allâh</td>
<td>281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
<td>Seeking Refuge From The Torment Of Hell</td>
<td>281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55</td>
<td>Seeking Refuge From The Torment Of The Fire</td>
<td>282</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56</td>
<td>Seeking Refuge From The Heat Of The Fire</td>
<td>282</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 57. Seeking Refuge From The Evil Of What One Has Done, And Mentioning The Differences Reported from ‘Abdullâh Bin Buraidah About That ....................................................... 283
Chapter 58. Seeking Refuge From The Evil Of One’s Actions, And Mentioning the Differences Reported From Hilâl .......................................................... 284
Chapter 59. Seeking Refuge With Allâh From The Evil Of What One Has Not Done ............................................................................................................. 286
Chapter 60. Seeking Refuge From Being Swallowed Up By The Earth ........ 287
Chapter 61. Seeking Refuge From Being Thrown From A High Place Or Crushed Beneath A Falling Wall .......................................................... 288
Chapter 62. Seeking Refuge In The Pleasure Of Allâh Most High From His Wrath ........................................................................................................ 290
Chapter 63. Seeking Refuge From The Difficulty Of The Standing On The Day Of Resurrection ....................................................................... 290
Chapter 64. Seeking Refuge From A supplication That Is Not Heard ...... 291
Chapter 65. Seeking Refuge From A Supplication That Is Not Answered .. 292

51. The Book Of Drinks

Chapter 1. Prohibition Of Khamr ................................................................................................................................. 294
Chapter 2. The Drinks Which Were destroyed When Khamr Was Prohibited ................................................................. 295
Chapter 3. Khamr Is A Drink (Made) Of Unripe Dates And Dried Dates. .................................................................................. 297
Chapter 4. Clear Prohibition Of Drinking Nabidh Made Of Two Things Mixed Together, Relies Upon The Clarification Of Al-Balâh And At-Tamr (Dried Dates) ........................................................................................................ 298
Chapter 5. Mixing Al-Balâh And Az-Zahâw ....................................................................................................................... 298
Chapter 6. Mixing Az-Zahâw And Rûdâb Ripe Dates .............................................................................................................. 300
Chapter 7. Mixing Az-Zahâw And Al-Busr ....................................................................................................................... 300
Chapter 8. Mixing Al-Busr And Ripe Dates (Ar-Rûdâb) ......................................................................................................... 301
Chapter 9. Mixing Al-Busr And Dried Dates (At-Tamr) ........................................................................................................ 301
Chapter 10. Mixing Dried Dates And Raisins .................................................................................................................... 303
Chapter 11. Mixing Ripe Dates And Raisins ..................................................................................................................... 303
Chapter 12. Mixing Al-Busr And Raisins ....................................................................................................................... 304
Chapter 13. Mentioning The Reason Why These Mixtures Are Forbidden, Which Is That One Of Them Is More Potent Than The Other ............ 304
Chapter 14. Concession Allowing Soaking Of Al-Busr On Their Own, And Drinking It Before It Changes In One’s Fadâkh .............................................................................. 305
Chapter 15. Concession Allowing Soaking (Of These Fruits) In Vessels That Are Tied Shut ................................................................. 306
Chapter 16. Concession Allowing Soaking Of Dried Dates On Their Own ................................................................................. 306
Chapter 17. Soaking Raisins On Their Own .................................................................................................................... 307
Chapter 18. Concession Allowing Soaking Al-Busr On Their Own ....................................................................................... 307
Chapter 19. Interpretation Of The Saying Of Allâh The Most High: “And From The Fruits Of Date Palms And Grapes, You Derive Strong Drink And A Goodly Provision” .... 308
Chapter 20. Kinds Of Things From Which Khamr Was Made When The Prohibition Of It Was Revealed ........................................ 310
Chapter 21. Prohibition Of Intoxicating Drinks Made From Fruits And Grains Of All Types .................................................. 311
Chapter 22. Applying The Name Khamr To All Drinks That Intoxicate .................................................................................. 311
Chapter 23. Prohibition Of Every Drink That Intoxicates ........................................................................................................ 313
Chapter 24. Explanation Of Al-Bit' (Mead) And Al-Mixr (Beer) .............................................................................................. 317
Chapter 25. Prohibition Of Every Drink That Intoxicates In Large Amounts ........................................................................ 320
Chapter 26. Prohibition Of Nābidh Al-Jī'ah Which Is A Drink Made From Barley ................................................................... 321
Chapter 27. In What (Fruits) Were Soaked For The Prophet ....................................................................................................... 322
Chapter 28. Prohibition Of Soaking (Making Nābidh) In Earthenware Jars .............................................................................. 323
Chapter 29. Green Earthenware Jars ........................................................................................................................................... 325
Chapter 30. Prohibition Of Nābidh Made In Ad-Dubbā' (Gourds) ............................................................................................ 326
Chapter 31. Prohibition Of Nābidh Made In Ad-Dubbā' (Gourds) And Al-Muzaffāt ................................................................. 327
Chapter 32. Mentioning The Prohibition Of Nābidh Made In Ad-Dubbā' (Gourds), Al-Hantam And An-Naqīr ......................... 329
Chapter 33. Prohibition Of Nābidh Made In Ad-Dubbā' (Gourds), Al-Hantam And Al-Muzaffāt .................................................. 329
Chapter 34. Mentioning The Prohibition Of Nābidh Made In Ad-Dubbā' (Gourds), An-Naqīr, Al-Muqayyar And Al-Hantam .... 330
Chapter 35. Al-Muzaffāt ............................................................................................................................................................... 333
Chapter 36. Mentioning The Evidence That The Prohibition Of The Vessels Mentioned Above Was General In Application And Did Not Refer To An Isolated Incident ........................................ 333
Chapter 37. Explanation Of The Vessels Mentioned ..................................................................................................................... 334
Permission Allowing Soaking (Fruits to Make Nābidh) In Some Of The Vessels Mentioned Above .................................................. 335
Chapter 38. The Permission Concerning Whatever Of These Drinks Is Made In A Water Skin ...................................................... 335
Chapter 39. Permission For Earthenware Jars Only .................................................................................................................. 336
Chapter 40. Permission For Some Of Them ................................................................................................................................ 337
Chapter 41. Status Of Khamr ...................................................................................................................................................... 340
Chapter 42. Stern Warnings About Drinking Khamr .................................................................................................................... 341
Chapter 43. Mentioning The Reports Concerning The Šalāh Of The One Who Drinks Khamr .................................................... 343
Chapter 44. Sins Generated By Drinking Khamr, Such As Forsaking Šalāh, Murder And Committing Zīnā .................................................................................................................. 344
Chapter 45. Repentance Of The One Who Has Drunk Khamr ..................................................................................................... 346
Chapter 46. Reports Concerning Drunkards ................................................................................................................................ 348
Chapter 47. Banishing The Drinker Of Khamr .......................................................................................................................... 349
Chapter 48. Reports Used By Those Who Permit The Drinking Of Intoxicants ........................................................................ 349
Chapter 49. Humiliation And Painful Torment That Allāh, The Mighty And Sublime, Has Prepared For The One Who Drinks Intoxicants ................................................................................... 363
**Contents**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>50.</td>
<td>Encouragement To Avoid Doubtful Matters</td>
<td>363</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51.</td>
<td>It Is Disliked To Sell Raisins To One Who Will Use Them To Make <em>Nabīdah</em></td>
<td>364</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52.</td>
<td>It Is Disliked To Sell Juice</td>
<td>365</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53.</td>
<td>What Kind Of Thickened Grape Juice Is Permissible To Drink And What Kind Is Not Permitted</td>
<td>366</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56.</td>
<td>Kinds Of <em>Nabīdah</em> That Are Permissible To Drink And The Kinds That Are Not</td>
<td>371</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57.</td>
<td>Different Reports From Ibrāhīm Concerning <em>Nabīdah</em></td>
<td>376</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58.</td>
<td>Mentioning The Permissible Drinks</td>
<td>378</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Glossary Of Islamic Terms</td>
<td>383</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
47. The Book Of Faith
And Its Signs

Comments:
Lexically the term *inān* is formed from (*Amuna*). And the term *Amuna* signifies to make free from fear. But generally this expression is used to mean to believe, to accept or to testify. In the Glorious Qur’ān and the Hadith or the Traditions, the terms *Imān* and Islam are generally used synonymously. But sometimes distinction is made between them from lexical point of view. ‘Say: You believe not (*lam tu’mīnā*), but say: We have submitted (*Aslanma‘*)’ (49:14). Here the term Islam stands for apparent obedience and *Imān* for the faith in the heart. According to the majority of the people of knowledge among Companions of the Prophet ﷺ and the followers, *Imān* is affirmation with the tongue, testification with heart and action by limbs of the body. Concisely, statement and action is called *Imān* (Faith), because attestation (*Tasdiq*) which translates into action is in reality the action of the heart. Likewise, according to the people of the Sunnah, *Imān* continues to increase or decrease due to various causes. The people of the Sunnah do not exclude anyone who testified to Islam from the fold of Islam due to their sin while the Mu’tazilah and the Khawarij do exclude them from Faith. The *Jahmīyyah* and the *Mujīrāh* do not reckon action as necessary. According to them, only testification is enough.

Chapter 1. Mentioning The
Best Of Deeds

4988 It was narrated from Abū Hurairah that the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ was asked: “Which deed is best?” “He said: Faith in Allāh and His Messenger.” (Ṣahīḥ)
The Book of Faith And Its Branches

Comments:
This Faith is the root of action, without which the tree of Faith and Islam cannot be visualized at all; and without it no good action gives any benefit. When this Faith exists, one's entrance into Paradise is absolute, or after undergoing punishment. In this narration, Faith has been stipulated as action. This corroborates the statement that actions are part of Faith.

4989. It was narrated from 'Abdullāh bin Ḥubshī Al-Khath'amī that the Prophet ﷺ was asked: "Which deed is best?" He said: "Faith in which there is no doubt, Jihād in which there is no Ghulāl,[1] and Ḥajjatun Mabrūr."[2] (Hasan)

Comments:
1. So to speak, the real eminence resides in sincerity; in whatever thing it might be whether it is in striving in the way of Allāh, or in the acts of Pilgrimage.
2. In response to the question concerning the most meritorious act, various narrations have come. Reconciliation between them is: Allāh's Messenger ﷺ has responded in accordance with the conditions and keeping in view the questioner. In certain circumstances, some particular deed is supremely meritorious, in some other condition another! In the same manner, for one person, a particular deed is meritorious, for someone else, another.

Chapter 2. The Taste Of Faith

4990. It was narrated that Anas bin Mālik said: “The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ said: ‘There are three things, whoever attains them will find therein the sweetness of faith: When Allāh, the Mighty and Sublime, and His Messenger are

---

[1] Goods pilfered from the spoils of war prior to them be presented to the commander for proper distribution.
[2] The accepted Hajj, or, the Ḥajj free of sin. This narration appeared in a more complete form under No. 2527.
dearer to him than all else; when he loves for the sake of Allâh and hates for the sake of Allâh; and when a huge fire be lit and he fall into it, than associate anything with Allâh.” (Sahîh)

Comments:
When man’s Faith deepens, he feels delight in the works of Faith, as common people feel delight in eating, drinking, and other pursuits of merrymaking. And he considers himself fortunate on account of his Faith. But this is a lofty station.

Chapter 3. The Sweetness Of Faith

4991. It was narrated that Qatâdah said: “I heard Anas bin Mâlik narrating that the Prophet ﷺ said: “There are three things, whoever attains them will find therein the sweetness of faith: When he loves a person, and only loves him for the sake of Allâh; when Allâh and His Messenger are dearer to him than all else; and when he would prefer to be thrown into the fire rather to go back to the disbelief from which Allâh has saved him.”” (Sahîh)

Chapter 4. The Sweetness Of Islam

4992. It was narrated from Anas that the Prophet ﷺ said: “There are three things, whoever attains
them will find therein the sweetness of Islam: When Allâh and His Messenger are dearer to him than all else; when he loves a person and only loves him for the sake of Allâh; and when he would hate to go back to disbelief as much as he would hate to be thrown into the fire." (Sahîh)

Comments:
It has preceded that Islam and Imân are often used for the same meaning. This narration also corroborates it. In the previous narrations, Faith was used, in this Tradition the same attributes have been mentioned as being the cause of the sweetness of Islam.

Chapter 5. Islam’s Description

4993. ʿAbdullâh bin ʿUmar said: "ʿUmar bin Al-Khaṭṭâb told me: ‘While we were with the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ one day, a man appeared before us whose clothes were exceedingly white and whose hair was exceedingly black. We could see no signs of travel on him, but none of us knew him. He came and sat before the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ, putting his knees against his, and placing his hands on his thighs, then he said: “O Muḥammad, tell me about Islam.” He said: “It is to bear witness that there is none worthy of worship except Allâh and that Muḥammad is the Messenger of Allâh, to establish the ʿSalâh, to give Zakâh, to fast Ramaḍân, and to perform Hajj to the House if you are able to..."
bear the journey.” He said: “You have spoken the truth.” And we were amazed by his asking him, and then saying, “You have spoken the truth”. Then he said: “Tell me about Faith.” He said: “It is to believe in Allâh, His Angels, His Books, His Messengers, the Last Day, and in the Divine Decree, its good and its bad.” He said: “You have spoken the truth.” He said: “Tell me about Al-Insân.” He said: “It is to worship Allâh as if you can see Him, for although you cannot see Him, He can see you.” He said: “Tell me about the Hour.” He said: “The one who is asked about does not know more about it than the one who is asking.” He said: “Then tell me about its signs.” He said: “When a slave woman gives birth to her mistress, when you see the barefoot, naked, destitute shepherds competing in making tall buildings.” ‘Umar said: “Three (days) passed, then the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said to me: “O ‘Umar, do you know who the questioner was?” I said: “Allâh and His Messenger know best.” He said: “That was Jibrîl, peace be upon him, who came to you to teach you your religion.” (Sahîh)

Comments:

1. ‘A man appeared before us’: means he was not seen coming from a distance. We saw him close by. Moreover, from his hair and attire, one could presume that he had emerged from his house, having taken a fresh bath. But no one recognized him either. So to say, he looked like a wayfarer.
Chapter 6. Description Of Faith And Islam

4994. It was narrated that Abû Hurairah and Abû Dharr said: "The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ would sit among his Companions and if a stranger came, he would not know which of them was he (the Prophet ﷺ) until he asked. So we suggested to the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ that we should make a dais for him so that any stranger would know him if he came to him. So we built for him a bench made of clay on which he used to sit. (One day) we were sitting and the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ was sitting in his spot, when a man came along who was the most handsome and good-smelling of all people, and it was as if no dirt had ever touched his garments. He came near the edge of the rug and greeted him, saying: 'Peace be upon you, O Muhammad!' He returned the greeting, and he said: 'Shall I come closer, O Muhammad?' He came a little closer, and he kept telling him to come closer, until he put his hands
on the knees of the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ. He said: ‘O Muḥammad, tell me, what is Islam?’ He said: ‘Islam means to worship Allâh and not associate anything with Him; to establish Salâh, to pay Zakâh, to perform Hajj to the House, and to fast Ramadân.’ He said: ‘If I do that, will I have submitted (be a Muslim)?’ He said: ‘Yes.’ He said: ‘You have spoken the truth.’ When we heard the man say, ‘You have spoken the truth,’ we found it odd. He said: ‘O Muḥammad, tell me, what is faith?’ He said: ‘To believe in Allâh, His Angels, the Book, the Prophets, and to believe in the Divine Decree.’ He said: ‘If I do that, will I have believed?’ The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said: ‘Yes.’ He said: ‘You have spoken the truth.’ He said: ‘O Muḥammad, tell me, what is Al-Ihsân?’ He said: ‘To worship Allâh as if you can see Him, for although you cannot see Him, He can see you.’ He said: ‘You have spoken the truth.’ He said: ‘O Muḥammad, tell me about the Hour.’ He lowered his head and did not answer. Then he repeated the question, and he did not answer. Then he repeated the question (a third time) and he did not answer. Then he raised his head and said: ‘The one who is being asked does not know more than the one who is asking. But it has signs, by which it may be known. When you see the herdsman competing in building
tall buildings, when you see the barefoot and naked ruling the Earth, when you see a woman giving birth to her mistress. Five things which no one knows except Allâh. Verily, Allâh, with Him (alone) is the knowledge of the Hour up to His saying: 'Verily, Allâh is All-Knower, All-Aware (of things).'[1] Then he said: 'No, by the One who sent Muhammad with the truth, with guidance and glad tidings, I did not know him more than any man among you. That was Jibrîl, peace be upon you, who came down in the form of Dîhyah Al-Kalbî.'" (Sahîh)

Comments:

'Placed his hands on the Prophet's knees': He touched the knees of the Prophet out of respect, and there is no harm in it.


4995. It was narrated from 'Amîr bin Sa'd bin Abî Waqqâs that his father said: "The Prophet gave a share (of some spoils of war) to some men and not to others. Sa'd said: 'O Messenger of Allâh, you gave to so-and-so and so-and-so, but..."
you did not give anything to so-and-so, and he is a believer.’ The Prophet ﷺ said: ‘Or a Muslim,’ until Sa’d had repeated it three times, and the Prophet ﷺ said: ‘Or a Muslim,’ three times. Then the Prophet ﷺ said: ‘I give to some men, and leave those who are dearer to me, without giving them anything, lest (the former) be thrown into Hell on their faces.’” (Ṣaḥīḥ)

**4996.** It was narrated from Sa’d that the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ distributed (some spoils of war) and gave to some people but withheld from others. I said: “O Messenger of Allāh, you gave to so-and-so and so-and-so, and you withheld from so-and-so, who is a believer.” He said: “Do not say ‘a believer,’ say ‘a Muslim.’” Ibn Shihāb (one of the narrators) said: The Bedouins say: “We believe”. [1] (Ṣaḥīḥ)

**4997.** It was narrated from Bishr bin Suhaim that the Prophet ﷺ commanded him to call out on the days of At-Tashrīq[2] that no one would enter Paradise except a believer, and that these were the days of eating and drinking. (Ṣaḥīḥ)

---


[2] Referring to the three days following ‘Īd Al-Adhā.
The Book of Faith And Its Branches

Comments:
1. 'Ayyām At-Tashriq': The eleventh, twelfth, and thirteenth days of the month of Dhul Hijjah are called Ayyām At-Tashriq, the Days of Tashriq. This announcement was made on the occasion of the Farewell Pilgrimage. These days are called the Days of Tashriq because on those days, they used to cut the meat of their sacrificial animals into strips and dry them in the sun. Pieces of jerked meat (Qadid) are also called Sharriiq.

2. 'Except a believer': means one whose Faith has passed beyond his tongue. He only is entitled to enter into Paradise, while a sinful believer would enter Paradise in the end. A disbeliever, however, would never be able to enter Paradise.

Chapter 8. Description Of The Believer

4998. It was narrated from Abū Hurairah that the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ said: “The Muslim is the one from whose tongue and hand the people are safe, and the believer is the one from whom the people’s lives and wealth are safe.” (Sahih)

Comments:
This means the Faith brings better behavior. Because not every person that you feel safe from this, do you trust with that.

Chapter 9. Description Of The Muslim

4999. It was narrated that ‘Abdullāh bin ‘Amr said: “I heard the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ say: ‘The Muslim is the one from whose tongue and hand the Muslims are safe, and the Muhājir is the one who forsakes (Hajara) that which Allāh has forbidden to him.” (Sahih)
Comments: ‘Muhājir (emigrant)’: If someone abandons one’s home but does not abandon disobedience to Allāh, Most High, his emigration is incomplete.

4500. It was narrated that Anas said: “The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ said: ‘Whoever prays as we pray, turns to face the same Qiblah as us and eats our slaughtered animals, that is a Muslim.” (Sahīh)

Comments: These are the apparent attributes of a Muslim. After the observance of the two testifications, from among the worships, only the ritual prayer is such a worship that could become a symbol or hallmark of Islam, because fasting is a hidden thing. Zakah is not obligatory upon each and every person. The Pilgrimage is performed once in a lifetime and required upon those who can bear it.

Chapter 10. A Man Being Good In His Islam

5001. It was narrated that Abū Sa‘eed Al-Khudrī said: “The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ said: ‘If a person accepts Islam, such that his Islam is good, Allāh will decree reward for every good deed that he did before, and every bad deed that he did before will be erased. Then after that will come the reckoning; each good deed will be rewarded ten times up to seven hundred times. And each bad deed will be recorded as it is, unless Allāh, the Mighty and
Sublime, forgives it.” (Ṣaḥīḥ)

Comments:

“When someone becomes a good Muslim’ means his heart also harmonizes with his tongue, and his Islam passes beyond his tongue and descends into his heart and reaches all his bodily organs and limbs. He neither remains a hypocrite nor a transgressor.

Chapter 11. Whose Islam Is Most Virtuous?

5002. It was narrated that Abū Mūsā said: “I said: ‘O Messenger of Allāh, whose Islam is most virtuous?’ He said: ‘The one from whose tongue and hand the Muslims are safe.’” (Ṣaḥīḥ)

Comments:

In this chapter, the objective of the author (May Allāh be pleased with him) is to demonstrate that all Muslims are not equal in Islam and Faith. Rather the Islam and Faith of some happen to be deep, of some shallow. And this deficiency and fullness occur from the angle of deeds as well as from the angle of the inner state of the heart.

Chapter 12. Which (Quality) Of Islam Is Best?

5003. It was narrated from ‘Abdullāh bin ‘Amr that a man asked the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ: “What quality of Islam is best?” He said: “To feed (the poor) and to say the Salām to whomever one knows and whomever one does not know.” (Ṣaḥīḥ)
Comments:
In response to the question of the most meritorious deed, different narrations have come. This difference is from the dimension of different individuals and circumstances. It would, therefore, not be considered contradiction. (For details, please turn to Hadith 4989)

Chapter 13. On How Many (Pillars) Is Islam Built?

5004. It was narrated from Ibn ‘Umar that a man said to him: “Why don’t you go out and fight?” He said: “I heard the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ say: ‘Islam is built on five (pillars): Testimony that there is none worthy of worship except Allâh, establishing Salâh, giving Zakâh, Hajj, and fasting Ramâdân.’” (Sahîh)

Comments:
Ibn ‘Umar cited this narration in his reply, because he considered the fighting at that time to be a fitnah, rather than Jihad. See Nos. 4513 and 4514 of Al-Bukhârî.

Chapter 14. Pledging To Follow Islam

5005. It was narrated that ‘Ubâdah bin Ās-Sâmît said: “We were with the Prophet ﷺ in a gathering and he said: ‘Give me your pledge that you will not associate anything with Allâh, you will not steal and you will not have unlawful sexual relations’ – and then he recited the Verse to
them. 'Whoever among you fulfills this pledge, his reward will be with Allâh, and whoever commits any of those actions and Allâh, the Mighty and Sublime, conceals him, it is up to Allâh: If He wills, He will punish him, and if He wills, He will forgive him.' (Sahîh)

Comments:
This narration has preceded, see No. 4166.

Chapter 15. For What Are The People To Be Fought

5006. It was narrated from Anas bin Mâlik that the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said: "I have been commanded to fight the people until they bear witness that there is none worthy of worship except Allâh and that Muhammad is the Messenger of Allâh. If they bear witness that there is none worthy of worship except Allâh and that Muhammad is the Messenger of Allâh, they turn to face the same Qiblah as us, they eat our slaughtered animals, and they pray as we pray; then their blood and their wealth are forbidden to us, except for a right that is due, and they have the same rights and duties as the Muslims." (Sahîh)
Chapter 16. Mentioning The Branches Of Faith

5007. It was narrated from Abû Hurairah that the Prophet ﷺ said: “Faith has seventy odd branches and modesty (Al-Ḥayâ’) is a branch of faith.” (Ṣaḥīḥ)

Comments:
Faith has been compared to the branches of a tree, Ḥṣān to its fruits in the Ḥadîth of Jibrîl, and Islām to its trunk in numerous narrations.

5008. It was narrated that Abû Hurairah said: “The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said: ‘Faith has seventy-odd branches, the most virtuous of which is Lâ ilâha illallâh (there is none worthy of worship except Allâh) and the least of which is removing something harmful from the road. And modesty (Al-Ḥayâ’) is a branch of faith.’” (Ṣaḥīḥ)

Comments:
This narration mentions something required in every case — saying Lâ ilâha illalâh, and something that is recommended at the least — removing something harmful. This proves that all of the orders and recommendations and all of the prohibitions and censured matters when abided by, such practices are included in Faith.

5009. It was narrated from Abû Hurairah that the Prophet ﷺ said: “Modesty (Al-Ḥayâ’) is a branch of Faith.” (Ṣaḥīḥ)
Comments:

Al-Haya, or modesty, is that trait which prevents man from committing evil things and deeds, so that one may not be disgraced. Even when it is not intended to, modesty wards off bad behavior; hence, all of it is good.

Chapter 17. Variation In People's Level Of Faith

5010. It was narrated from 'Amr bin Shurahbîl, that one of the Companions of the Prophet said: "The Messenger of Allâh said: 'Ammâr's heart overflows with Faith.'" (Hasan)

5011. Abû Sa‘eed said: "I heard the Messenger of Allâh say: 'Whoever among you sees an evil, let him change it with his hand; if he cannot, then with his tongue; if he cannot, then with his heart – and that is the weakest of Faith.'" (Sahîh)
Comments:
1. ‘Should change it with his hand’ meaning if he has the authority, the power, and the ability, as indicated because the average person is not allowed to take the law in his own hand; it would otherwise give birth to anarchy. The implementation of the prescribed legal punishments is also the responsibility of the government. Individuals may not implement them, nor are they commissioned or charged with carrying it out. That is why Allāh’s Messenger stipulated the condition of ability.

2. ‘Then with his tongue’: This is everyone’s responsibility when capable, except for when there is the difference of the ranks; For example, children in front of parents, students in front of the teacher, the ruled in front of the ruler; and slaves in front of the master do not have the ability to speak out. Or when there is the risk of losing one’s life, as it comes in the forthcoming narration.

3. ‘With his heart’ meaning he must at least believe it is evil, and the Prophet included this among Faith.

5012. It was narrated that Ṭāriq bin Shihāb said: “Abū Sa‘eed Al-Khudrī said: ‘I heard the Messenger of Allāh say: Whoever among you sees an evil and changes it with his hand, then he has done his duty. Whoever is unable to do that, but changes it with his tongue, then he has done his duty. Whoever is unable to do that, but changes it with his heart, then he has done his duty, and that is the weakest of Faith.’”

(Sahih)

Comments:
We get to learn that witnessing the sin taking place is also a sin, except for the one who fulfills his duty imposed upon him by the Shar’iāh.

Chapter 18. Increasing Faith

5013. It was narrated that Abū Sa‘eed Al-Khudrī said: “The Messenger of Allāh said: ‘No one of you disputes more intensely for something that is rightly his in this
world, than the believers will dispute with their Lord for their brothers who have entered the Fire. They will say: ‘Our Lord, our brothers used to pray with us and fast with us, and perform Hajj with us, and you have caused them to enter the Fire?’ He will say: ‘Go and bring forth whomever you recognize among them.’ So they will go to them, and will recognize them by their appearances. Among them will be those who have been seized by the Fire up to the middle of their shins, and some among them those whom it has taken up to his ankles. They will bring them forth, then they will say: ‘Our Lord, we have brought forth those whom You commanded us (to bring forth).’ He will say: ‘Bring forth everyone in whose heart is faith the weight of a Dinar.’ Then He will say: ‘Everyone in whose heart is faith the weight of half a Dinar,’ until He will say: ‘In whose heart is faith the weight of the smallest speck.” Abū Sa‘eed said: “Whoever does not believe this, let him read this Verse: ‘Verily, Allâh forgives not that partners should be set up with Him (in worship), but He forgives except that (anything else) to whom He wills up to a tremendous (sin).’”\[1\] (Sahih)

Comments:

‘Recognize’: So to state, the fire would not touch their faces, as it becomes

---

known from the forthcoming speech, because the face is the place of prostration. They would be the performers of the ritual prayers. The fire would not touch the places of ritual prayer, or would not disfigure them.

5014. Abû Sa‘e’d Al-Khudrî said: “The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said: ‘While I was sleeping, I saw the people being shown to me, and they were wearing shirts. Some reached the breast and some reached lower than that. And ‘Umar bin Al-Khattâb was shown to me, and he was wearing a shirt that he was dragging.’ They said: ‘How do you interpret that, O Messenger of Allâh?’ He said: ‘The religion.’” (Sahîh)

Comments:
The shirt conceals the blemishes, deficiencies, and ignominies of the human body, and lends handsomeness to man. The Din or religion also erases the moral faults of man, and civilizes him. This is why Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ took the shirt to denote religion.

5015. It was narrated that Târiq bin Shihâb said: “A Jewish man came to ‘Umar bin Al-Khattâb and said: ‘O Commander of the Believers! There is a Verse in your Book which you recite; if it had been revealed to us Jews we would have taken that day as a festival.’ He said: ‘Which Verse is that?’ He said: ‘This day, I have perfected your religion for you, completed My favor upon you, and have chosen for you Islam as your
religion."[1] 'Umar said: 'I know the place where it was revealed and the day on which it was revealed. It was revealed to the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ at 'Arafât, on a Friday.'" (Sahîh)

Comments:
'Ve would have taken that day as a festival', because the perfection of Din is a matter of great honor and bounty for a nation. That honor fell to the lot of the nation of Allâh's Messenger, Muḥammad ﷺ.

Chapter 19. The Sign Of Faith

5016. It was narrated from Qatâdah that he heard Anas say: "The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said: 'None of you has believed until I am dearer to him than his son, his father and all the people.'" (Sahîh)

Comments:
'Dearer': Here love for the Prophet ﷺ means obedience. One's love appears through obedience. Love is hidden. One may also advance a false claim of love for someone. The affirmation of true love comes through obedience.

5017. It was narrated that Anas said: "The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said: 'None of you has believed until I am dearer to him than his family, his wealth and all the people.'" (Sahîh)

5018. Abū Hurairah narrated that the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ said: “By the One in Whose hand is my soul, none of you has believed until I am dearer to him than his son or his father.” (Sahih)

5019. It was narrated that Qatâdah said: “I heard Anas say: ‘The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ said (Humaid bin Mas‘dah said in his Hadith: ‘The Prophet of Allāh ﷺ said): None of you has believed until he loves for his brother what he loves for himself.’” (Sahih)

Comments:
’What he loves for himself’ means, goodness.

5020. It was narrated from Anas that the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ said: “By the One in Whose hand...”
is the soul of Muhammad, none of you has believed until he loves for his brother what he loves for himself of goodness.” (Sahih)

Comments:
'Goodness' means every goodness and welfare of this world and the Hereafter.

5021. It was narrated that Zirr said: 'Ali said: "The Unlettered Prophet made a covenant with me, that none but a believer would love me, and none but a hypocrite would hate me." (Sahih)

5022. It was narrated from Anas that the Prophet said: “Love for Ansâr is a sign of Faith, and hatred for Ansâr is a sign of hypocrisy.” (Sahih)

Chapter 20. The Sign Of A Hypocrite

5023. It was narrated from 'Abdullâh bin 'Amr that the Prophet said: "There are four (traits), whoever has them is a hypocrite and whoever has one of...
them, then has one of the traits of hypocrisy, until he gives it up: When he speaks, he lies; when he makes a promise, he breaks it; when he makes a covenant, he betrays it; and when he argues, he resorts to foul language.” (Sahih)

Comments:

Here hypocrite does not signify creedal or doctrinal, because one cannot become aware of it except by way of Wahi or Revelation. Rather, action-related or practical hypocrisy is meant, meaning whose works are like those of hypocrites. And these works are in reality the works of hypocrites.

5024. It was narrated from Abū Hurairah that the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ said: “The signs of the hypocrite are three: When he speaks, he lies; when he makes a promise he breaks it; and when he is entrusted with something, he betrays (that trust).” (Sahih)

Comments:

(See No. 2194)

5025. It was narrated that ‘Alī said: “The Prophet ﷺ made a covenant with me that none would love me but a believer, and none would hate me but a hypocrite.” (Sahih)
5026. It was narrated that Abû Wâ’il said: “Abdullâh said: ‘There are three (traits), whoever has them is a hypocrite: When he speaks, he lies; when he is entrusted with something, he betrays that trust; and when he makes a promise, he breaks it. Whoever has one of these (traits) then a trait of hypocrisy has not ceased in him, until he leaves it.’” (Sahîh Mawqîf)

Chapter 21. Praying Qiyâm In Ramadân

5027. It was narrated from Abî Hurairah that the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said: “Whoever stands (in the voluntary night prayer of) the Ramadân out of faith and in the hope of reward, his previous sins will be forgiven.” (Sahîh)

5028. It was narrated from Abî Hurairah that the Prophet ﷺ said: “Whoever stands (in the voluntary night prayer of) Ramadân out of faith and in the hope of reward, his previous sins will be forgiven.” (Sahîh)
5029. It was narrated from ʿAbd al-Hurayrah that the Prophet ṣaw said: “Whoever stands (in the voluntary night prayer of) Ramadān out of faith and in the hope of reward, his previous sins will be forgiven.” (Ṣaḥīḥ)

Chapter 22. Spending Lailat Al-Qadr In Prayer

5030. ʿAbd al-Hurayrah narrated that the Messenger of Allāh ụṣṣ said: “Whoever stands (in the voluntary night prayer of) Ramadān out of faith and in the hope of reward, his previous sins will be forgiven. And whoever spends the night of Lailat Al-Qadr in prayer out of faith and in the hope of reward, his previous sins will be forgiven.” (Ṣaḥīḥ)

Comments:
(See No. 2208).

Chapter 23. Zakāh

5031. ʿAbd al-Suḥail narrated from his father, that he heard Ṭalḥah bin ʿUbādullāh say: “A man from Najd with unkempt hair came to the Messenger of Allāh ụṣṣ, he was speaking loudly but his speech could not be understood until he came close. He was asking about
The Book of Faith And Its Branches

Islam. The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ said: 'Five prayers every day and night.' He said: 'Do I have to do any more than that? He said: 'No, not unless you do it voluntarily.' The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ said: 'Fasting the month of Ramadān.' He said: 'Do I have to do any more than that?' He said: 'No, not unless you do it voluntarily.' Then the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ told him about Zakāh. He said: 'Do I have to do any more than that?' He said: 'No, not unless you do it voluntarily.' The man left saying, 'I will not do any more than that or any less. 'The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ said: 'He will succeed, if he is telling the truth.'" (Ṣaḥīḥ)

Comments:
(See No. 459).

Chapter 24. Jihād

5032. Abū Hurairah said: “I heard the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ say: ‘Allāh has promised the one who goes out in His cause and does not go out except with faith in Me and for Jihād in My cause,’ that he is guaranteed to enter Paradise no matter how, either he is killed, or he dies, or he will be brought back to his home from which he departed having acquired whatever he acquired of reward or spoils of war.”" (Ḥasan)

5033. It was narrated that Abū Hurairah said: “The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ said: ‘Allāh, the Mighty and
Sublime, has guaranteed to the one
who goes out in His cause, 'and he
does not go out for any other
purpose except Ḥiḥāḍ in My cause
and faith in Me, believing in My
Messengers, but he is guaranteed
that I will admit him to Paradise or I
will send him back to his dwelling
from which he set out, having
acquired whatever he acquired of
reward or spoils of war.'" (Ṣaḥīḥ)

Comments:
'Faith in Me': This is the repetition of a statement of Allāh, because the
words believing in My Messengers could only be stated by Allāh. See also No.
3125.

Chapter 25. Paying The
Khumus

5034. It was narrated that Ibn
‘Abbās said: "The delegation of
‘Abdul-Qais came to the Messenger
of Allāh ﷺ and said: 'We are a
group of people from (the tribe of)
Rabī‘ah, and we can only reach you
during the sacred month. Tell us
something that we can take from you
and to which we may call those who
are behind us.' He said: 'I command
you to do four things and I forbid
you from four: Faith in Allāh' – and
he explained that to them – 'bearing
witness that there is none worthy of
worship except Allāh, establishing
Ṣalāh, paying Zakāh and giving to
me one-fifth (the Khumus) of the
spoils of war you acquire. And I
forbid you from Ad-Dubbā', Al-
Hantam, Al-Mugayyir, and Al-Muzaffat.”[1] (Sahīḥ)

Comments:

'We are the descendants of Rabi'ah': Mudār and Rabi'ah were brothers. The Quraysh of Makkah were of the offspring of Mudār and the people of Yemen of Rabi'ah. Banu Abdul Qais were also the Yemenites. In order for them to arrive at Al-Madinah from Yemen, they had to pass through the vicinity of Makkah, and the pagan Quraish intercepted every caravan and convey if they suspected that they were proceeding to meet the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ.

Chapter 26. Attending Funerals

5035. It was narrated from Abū Hurairah that the Prophet ﷺ said: “Whoever follows the funeral procession of a Muslim out of faith and in the hope of reward, then offers the funeral prayer for him and waits until he is placed in his grave, then he will have two Qirāts, each of which is like Mount Uthud. Whoever offers the funeral prayer for him then returns, he will have one Qirāt.” (Sahīḥ)

Chapter 27. Modesty (Al-Ḥayā’)

5036. It was narrated from Sālīm, from his father, that the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ passed by a man who was censuring his brother about

[1] For the definitions of, and rulings related to these terms, see Chapter 28 and subsequent chapters in the Book of Drinks.
modesty. He said: “Let him be, for modesty is part of faith.” (Sahih)

Comments:
1. ‘Censuring’ here means he is too modest to demand his right. See No. 5009.

Chapter 28. Religion Is Easy

5037. It was narrated that Abū Hurairah said: “The Messenger of Allâh said: ‘Indeed, this religion is easy, and no one will ever overburden himself in religion, except that it will overcome him. So seek what is appropriate, and come as close as you can, and receive the glad tidings (that you will be rewarded), and take it easy; and gain strength by worshipping in the mornings, afternoons and during the last hours of the nights.’” (Sahih)

Comments:
‘The true Religion (Dīn) is easy’ means the commandments which have been stipulated by Allâh, Most High, are not beyond the capability of man. They could be practiced with ease, because Allâh, Most High, does not burden any soul with more than he is able to bear. This, however, does not mean the work which appears difficult cannot be religious. For a dishonest man, each and every work and aspect of the religion is difficult.
Chapter 29. Most Beloved Part Of Religion To Allāh

5038. It was narrated from ‘Āishah that the Prophet Ḥ entered upon her and there was a woman with her. He said: “Who is this?” She said: “So-and-so; she does not sleep” – she mentioned her excessive praying. The Prophet Ḥ said: “Keep quiet. You should do what you are able to, for by Allāh, Allāh, the Mighty and Sublime, does not get tired (of giving reward) but you get tired. The most beloved religion to Him is that in which a person persists.” (Sahih)

Chapter 30. Fleeing With The Religion From Tribulations

5039. It was narrated that Abū Sa‘eed Al-Khudrī said: “The Messenger of Allāh Ḥ said: ‘Soon the best wealth of a Muslim will be the sheep which he follows in the mountain peaks and places where rainfall is to be found, fleeing with his religion from the tribulations.’” (Sahih)
Comments:
When remaining among a people will assist in evil, then fleeing is part of faith if it is done to protect his religion.

Chapter 31. The Parable Of The Hypocrite

5040. It was narrated from Ibn 'Umar that the Messenger of Allah ﷺ said: "The parable of the hypocrite is that of a sheep that hesitates between two flocks, sometimes following one, and sometimes following another, not knowing which to follow." (Sahîh)

Comments: Indicating their lack of faith in the heart, and that whatever works they do, it is only for worldly gain.

Chapter 32. The Parable Of The Believer And The Hypocrite Who Read The Qur'ân

5041. Abû Mûsâ Al-Ash'ârî said: "The Prophet ﷺ said: 'The parable of the believer who recites the Qur'ân is that of a citron, the taste and smell of which are good. The parable of a believer who does not read the Qur'ân is that of a date, the taste of which is good but it has no smell. The parable of a hypocrite who reads the Qur'ân is that of basil, the smell of which is good but its taste is bitter. And the parable of a hypocrite who does not read the Qur'ân is that of a colocynth (bitter-apple), the taste of which is bitter and it has no smell.'" (Sahîh)
Comments:
The recitation of the Noble Qur’an and the performance of ritual prayer have been compared to fragrance, because both are apparent. It appears that the objective behind narrating this report here is to underscore the reality that faith increases and decreases, because dates and citrus fruits do not possess the same sweetness. They differ in their taste and flavor. Likewise, the believers too are not identical in faith.

Chapter 33. The Sign Of The Believer

5042. It was narrated from Anas bin Mālik that the Prophet ﷺ said: “None of you has believed until he loves for his brother what he loves for himself.” (Sahih)

Al-Qādī – meaning Ibn Kassār[1] – said: “I heard ‘Abduş-Şamad Al-Bukhārī saying: ‘Haʃṣ bin ‘Umar, the one who reports from ‘Abdur-Raḥmān bin Mahdī, I do not know who he is. Unless the Waw was dropped from Haʃṣ bin ‘Amr Ar-Rabālī, the one popular with reporting from the people of Al- Başrah, and he is trustworthy.’ And he mentioned him in this statement about the Hadith of Mansūr bin Sa’d, in the Chapter: Description Of The Muslim.[2] And I heard him say: ‘I do not know who reported the Marfū’ Hadith of Anas bin Mālik: I have been commanded to fight the people — additionally with his statement — and they turn to face

[2] His narration is, No. 5000.
the same Qiblah as us, they eat our slaughtered animals, and pray as we pray’ – reporting it from Ḥumaid Al-Ṭawīl, except for ‘Abdullāh bin Al-Mubārak and Yahya bin Ayyūb Al-Miṣrī.’ And it is in this section, in the Chapter: For What Are The People To Be Fought.”[1]
5043. It was narrated from ʿĀishah that the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said: “Ten things are part of the Fitrah: Trimming the mustache, trimming the nails, washing the joints, letting the beard grow, using the Siwâk, rinsing the nose, plucking the armpit hairs, shaving the pubes, and washing with water (after relieving oneself).” Mus'ab bin Shaibah said: “I have forgotten the tenth, unless it was rinsing the mouth.” (Sahîh)

Comments:
1. Elaborate details concerning the majority of these elements have been fully described in Kitâb Tahârah or the Book of Purification. (See Nos 15 to 30)
2. Barajjim is the plural of the term Barjam. The term Burjumah signifies all such joints upon which dirt collects. The expression Burjumah literally means a knuckle or finger joint, the outer, or the inner joint or place of division of the fingers, or the backs of the finger bones. The same refers to toes. If proper attention is not paid, water does not reach these bodily parts.

5044. Al-Mu'tamir narrated that his father said: “I heard Talq mentioning ten things that have to do with the Fitrah: Using the
Siwāk, trimming the mustache, clipping the nails, washing the joints, shaving the pubes, rinsing the nose, and I am not sure about rinsing the mouth.” (Sahih)

5045. It was narrated that Ṭalq bin Ḥābib said: “Ten things are from the Sunnah: Using the Siwāk, trimming the mustache, rinsing the mouth, rinsing the nose, letting the beard grow, trimming the nails, plucking the armpit hairs, circumcision, shaving the pubes and washing one’s backside.” (Sahih)

Abū ‘Abdūr-Rahmān (An-Nasā’ī) said: The Ḥadīth of Sulaimān At-Tāmī[1] and Ja’far bin Iyās[2] is likely more correct than the Ḥadīth of Muṣ‘ab bin Shaibah.[3] And Muṣ‘ab is Munkar in Ḥadīth.

Comments:
1. ‘Washing one’s backside.’ The use of stones or the like serves the purpose, but perfect cleansing is not achieved. Complete cleansing is not possible without water. Absolute purification procedure (Istinjā) is obligatory, while cleansing with water is Sunnah. Intiqāṣul ma’ (cleansing with water) signifies Istinjā with water.
2. Man is beautified with these deeds. Cleanliness reaches its zenith. Man looks civil. That is why these things were recorded under the Kitābuz-Zinah (Book pertaining to adornment or beautification).

[1] He is the father of Al-Mu’tamir, in No. 5044.
5046. It was narrated that Abû Hurairah said: “The Messenger of Allah ﷺ said: ‘Five things are of the Fitrah: Circumcision, shaving the pubes, plucking the armpit hair, clipping the nails and trimming the mustache.’” (Sahîh)

5047. It was narrated that Abû Hurairah said: “Five things are of the Fitrah: Clipping the nails, trimming the mustache, plucking the armpit hairs, shaving the pubes, and circumcision.” (Sahîh Mawqûf)

Chapter 2. Trimming The Mustache

5048. It was narrated from Ibn ‘Umar that the Messenger of Allah ﷺ said: “Trim the mustache and let the beard grow.” [1] (Sahîh)

[1] Some scholars consider Ihfâ’ to mean shave, while considering all of the narrations, and those most popularly reported, then the implication is cut, clip, trim short, etc.
Comments:
(For the explanation of this narration, please see No. 15)

5049. Ibn ‘Umar said: “The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said: ‘Let the beard grow and trim the mustache.’” (Sahîh)

5050. It was narrated that Zaid bin Al-Arqam said: “I heard the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ say: ‘Whoever does not take from his mustache, he is not one of us.’” (Sahîh)

Comments:
1. ‘The one who does not take from his mustache’ means when there is a need to trim it; when it begins to fall into the mouth, etc. Otherwise, it is not necessary to trim it everyday, nor is it enough to cut it once or twice during the whole lifetime.
2. ‘Is not of us’ means he does not adhere to our practice, or does not appear to be a Muslim when looked at. This is reproach, and while reproaching, severe words are often utilized.

Chapter 3. Concession For Shaving The Head

5051. It was narrated from Ibn ‘Umar that the Prophet ﷺ saw a boy, part of whose head had been shaven and part had been left. He forbade that and said: “Shave all of it, or leave all of it.” (Sahîh)
Comments:

The unbelievers used to leave a lock or two in the name of some idol, etc. while shaving the head, as nowadays some ignorant people grow a tassel of hair on their heads in the name of their spiritual mentor, while shaving the rest, although such glorification of someone other than Allāh, Most High, is unlawful. Therefore, Allāh’s Messenger forbade it. This, however, does not mean that one ought to shave the hair from parts of the head equal in length. Rather the prohibition is in shaving part and leaving part from around the ears so that they do not hang into the ears. And if from the upper part of the head they are cut less, then there is no harm in it, provided they present a look of evenness or symmetry.

Chapter 4. Prohibition Of A Woman Shaving Her Head

5052. It was narrated from ‘Alī: “The Messenger of Allāh forbade women to shave their heads.” (Hasan)

Chapter 5. Prohibition Of Al-Qaza’ (Shaving Part Of The Head And Leaving Part)

5053. It was narrated from ‘Abdullāh bin ‘Umar that the Prophet said: “Allāh, the Mighty and Sublime, has forbidden me from Al-Qaza’ (to shave part of the head and leave part).” (Sahih)
Comments:

*Al-Qaza* signifies to shave the hair from parts of the head, while leaving the rest unshaven. For the reason of forbiddance, please turn to *Hadith* 5051.

5054. It was narrated that Ibn ‘Umar said: “The Messenger of Allah ﷺ forbade *Al-Qaza*‘ (to shave part of the head and leave part).” (*Sahih*)


5055. It was narrated that Wā’il bin Ḥuṣr said: “I came to the Prophet ﷺ and I had hair. He said: ‘This is bad,’ and I thought he meant me, so I cut my hair then I came to him. He said to me: ‘I didn’t mean you, but this is better.’” (*Sahih*)

5056. It was narrated that Anas said: “The hair of the Prophet ﷺ was wavy, neither curly nor straight, and (hung down) between his ears and his shoulders.” (*Sahih*)

---

[1] That is No. 5233 which appears later.
[2] That is No. 5232 which appears later.
[3] The text says: “Mustache” while the narrations mention only hair.
The Book Of Adornment

Comments:

1. 'Curly': It is possible his hair had a natural curl from birth. It is also possible that his hair had formed curls due to their having been long. Long hair generally have the tendency to form curls.

2. 'Between his ears and his shoulders': It appears that he used to have his hairs clipped off below his ears, and when it would reach his shoulders. Other versions mention it touching his shoulders. See Al-Bukhārī No. 5903. and No. 5063 which follows. Some versions appear to use "bain" to refer to the shoulders, in which case it means his shoulders were broad. Both are correct.

3. These narrations prove the allowance to clip one's hair.

5057. It was narrated that Ḥumaid bin ‘Abdur-Raḥmān Al-Ḥimyarī said: "I met a man who accompanied the Prophet as Abū Hurairah accompanied him for four years, who said: 'The Messenger of Allāh forbade us from combing our hair every day.'"[1] (Ṣaḥīḥ)

Comments:

1. 'Like Abū Hurairah': This comparison could be concerning the period of time too; that he also stayed with the Prophet for four years. Abū Hurairah arrived in the year 7H. and the Prophet passed away in the third month of the year 11H. Or the comparison could also be in its nature or particulars that, as Abū Hurairah stayed all the time with the Prophet; in the same manner this dignified person also used to remain in the company of the Prophet.

2. 'Combing the hair daily': Because one's combing the hair daily provides the evidence that they are given to preening themselves excessively, and this trait is generally found in women. Either such a person preens and spruces himself

[1] Meaning, so as not to be preoccupied with personal appearance, and Muslims today have lost most of this chapter in their pursuit of constantly following the non-Muslims. And to Allāh is our complaint.
and keeps himself attractive like women, which puts other men to the test and cause them to go astray, or if he does so in order to attract women toward him, then he would cause mischief among women. Men should not have excessive inclination toward preening and beautification, otherwise they would give rise to evils.

3. The unmistakable outcome of one's not combing the hair daily would be that they would be prompted to have regular haircuts, so that the need for combing the hair daily does not remain. Herein lies the correlation of this chapter with the theme.

Chapter 7. Combing The Hair

Every Other Day

5058. It was narrated that ‘Abdullah bin Mughaffal said: “The Messenger of Allah forbade combing one’s hair, except every other day.” (Da‘if)

5059. It was narrated from Al-Hasan that the Prophet forbade combing one’s hair except every other day. (Da‘if)

5060. It was narrated that Al-Hasan and Muhammad said: “Combing one’s hair (should be done) every other day.” (Da‘if)
In this command, there is an admonition for those people who always keep a comb in their pockets. For elaborate discussion, please turn to Hadith 5057.

5061. It was narrated that ‘Abdullāh bin Shaqiq said: “One of the Companions of the Prophet was a governor in Egypt, and one of his companions came to him and found him with unkempt, wild hair. He said: ‘How come I see you with wild hair when you are a governor?’ He said: ‘The Prophet of Allāh forbade us from Al-Ifāh, and we said: ‘What is Al-Ifāh?’ He said: ‘To comb your hair every day.’” (Ṣahīḥ)

Comments:
Indulgence in ease and plenty or Al-Ifāh has a wider meaning. Combing and anointing oneself daily is part of its meaning.

Chapter 8. Starting On The Right When Combing One’s Hair

5062. It was narrated that ‘Āishah said: “The Messenger of Allāh used to like to start in the right. He would accept with his right hand and give with his right hand, and he liked to start on the right in all his affairs.”” (Ṣahīḥ)

Comments:
[1] The general meaning of which is “luxuriousness.”
Chapter 9. Letting The Hair Grow

5063. It was narrated that Al-Barâ’ said: “I have never seen anyone who looked more handsome in a red *Hullah* than the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ, with his long hair that came down to his shoulders.” *(Sahîh)*

5064. It was narrated that Anas said: “The hair of the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ came halfway down his ears.” *(Sahîh)*

Comments:
Meaning: Sometimes it was this length, sometime that.

5065. Al-Barâ’ said: “I have never seen any man more handsome in a red *Hullah* than the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ.” He said: “And I saw his long hair, coming almost to his shoulders.” *(Sahîh)*

---

[1] Normally referring to two pieces made from the same material which are worn together, and it preceded.
Comments:
In Arabic, three expressions are used for long hair of the head: Wafrah, meaning hair that reach the lobe of the ear; Limmah which descend below the lobe of the ear but do not touch the shoulders; and Jummah, which reach the shoulders.

Chapter 10. Braids

5066. ‘Abdullâh bin Mas‘ûd said: “According to whose recitation do you want me to recite? Because I recited seventy-odd Sûrahs to the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ when Zaid had two braids, and was playing with the other boys.” (Sâhih)

5067. It was narrated that Abû Wâ’il said: “Ibn Mas‘ûd addressed us and said: ‘How do you want me to recite? According to the recitation of Zaid bin Thâbit, when I learned seventy-odd Sûrahs from the mouth of the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ while Zaid was with the other boys with two braids?’” (Sâhih)

Comments:
In order to hold the hair of the children in place, they used to be braided, so that the hair do not get defiled while playing and sporting around. When the child would become sensible, there remained no need for braiding the hair.

The gist of the matter is that he was just a child. From this Hadîth, the
permissibility of plaiting the hair becomes known.

5068. Ziyād bin Al-Ḥuṣain narrated that his father said: “When he came to the Prophet in Al-Madīnah, the Messenger of Allah said to him: ‘Come closer to me.’ So he came closer to him, and he put his hand on his braid and wiped his head and prayed for him.” *(Hasan)*

Comments:
The term 'Dhuwāba' is used to denote plaits of hair, meaning hair which are braided or plaited. It is also used to signify hanging hair, which are called locks, too. Actually, the hair which falls on the face were called locks or tresses. And Allah knows best.

Chapter 11. Letting The Hair Grow Long

5069. It was narrated that Wa’il bin Ḥujr said: “I came to the Prophet and I had long hair. He said: ‘It is not good,’ and I thought he meant me, so I went and cut my hair. He said: ‘I did not mean you, but this is better.’” *(Sahih)*

Comments:
He said: “Jummah” (long hair) indicating that it looked better when shorter than that, and its explanation preceded.
Chapter 12. Tying Up The Beard

5070. Ruwaifi' bin Thābit said: "The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ said: 'O Ruwaifi', you may live for a long time after me, so tell the people that whoever ties up his beard, or twists it, or hangs an amulet, or cleans himself (after relieving himself) with animal dung or bones, Muḥammad has nothing to do with him.'" (Ṣaḥīḥ)

Comments:
1. 'Perhaps': This was in fact a prediction that 'you would live for a long time after my passing away'. And that was the case. Ruwayfa' died in the year 53 H. and he was the last of the Prophet's Companions who died in Africa.

2. 'One who knots the beard': 'Knotting' means knotting the hair of the beard into a tangle so that it appears small. This is an unnecessary and unrealistic contrivance. It is, therefore, forbidden. Or it means denoting tying the knots out of arrogance and pride, as proud and overweening people used to tie knots in battles. Or they probably tied knots so that they might not face any hindrance while fighting. So to speak, tying the knots was synonymous with fighting a battle. And Allāh knows best.

Some have understood it to mean that one should not fiddle with one's beard while performing the ritual prayer. Or one should not tie knots in one's beard before commenced the prayer with a view to protecting it from dust, as Allāh's Messenger ﷺ has forbidden one's tying the hair of the head and collecting one's clothes during prayer. In other words, one should not merely continue to worry about saving one's body, etc., from dust. One should rather pay heed to praying the Salāh.

3. 'Hangs an amulet': It is 'wearing a bow string as a necklace. Watar signifies the hip sinew or the vein of the sacrificial animal. It happens to be extremely strong. The bow is stringed with it, so that it could discharge the arrow afar.

[1] To make braids or to make it curly.
due to its flexibility. During the period of Jahiliyyah, people would get this vein-string sufflated or blown upon by a soothsayer and then wear it round the neck, so that they could guard themselves against evil eye. Since the soothsayers used to recite polytheistic phrases, it was forbidden. Or a bell, etc., used to be strung round the necks of animals. It was forbidden because it was a means to caution the enemy. Or it was forbidden to tie the necks of animals with the string, because it used to be very hard and sharp. There was likelihood of the animal getting suffocated or his neck being slit, and they say it was all done for protection; hence, it involves Shirk!

4. Cleansing (Istinja) after defilement by various types of bodily discharge with the dung or bone of animals. Such things do not cleanse. It was, therefore, forbidden to use it as a means of cleansing. Moreover, it is the food of Jinn. Dung is nevertheless like filth.

5. ‘Has nothing to do with’: This is a rebuke and reprimand, because these are evil deeds, and some of them can be considered Shirk.

Chapter 13. Prohibition Of Plucking Gray Hairs

5071. It was narrated from ‘Amr bin Shu‘aib, from his father, from his grandfather, that the Messenger of Allâh forbade plucking gray hairs. (Hasan)

Comments:
Graying is a sign of oldness or old age. When gray hairs begin to appear, they obdurately continue to appear. It is useless to pluck them out. Moreover, plucking gray hairs is a trick that deceives people, and deception is not permitted. Dying the gray hair has been allowed since it is not an attempt to permanently alter it. See what follows.

Chapter 14. Permission To Dye The Hair

5072. It was narrated from Abû Hurairah that the Messenger of Allâh said: “The Jews and Christians do not dye their hair, so
be different from them.” (Saḥīḥ)

Comments:
(See also No. 5078).

5073. A similar report was narrated from Abū Hurairah, from the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ. (Saḥīḥ)

5074. It was narrated that Abū Hurairah said: “The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ said: ‘The Jews and the Christians do not dye their hair, so be different from them and dye your hair.’” (Saḥīḥ)

5075. It was narrated from Abū Hurairah that the Prophet ﷺ said: “The Jews and the Christians do not dye their hair, so be different from them.” (Saḥīḥ)
5076. It was narrated that Ibn ‘Umar said: “The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said: ‘Change gray hair, but do not imitate the Jews.’” (Saḥîḥ)

5077. It was narrated that Az-Zubair said: The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said: “Change gray hair but do not imitate the Jews.”” (Hasan)

Both of these are not preserved.

Chapter 15. Prohibition Of Dyeing Hair Black

5078. It was narrated that Ibn ‘Abbâs, who attributed it to the Prophet ﷺ, said: “Some people will dye their hair black like the breasts of pigeons at the end of time, but they will not even smell the fragrance of Paradise.” (Saḥîḥ)

[Excerpts from the Arabic text are not transcribed, as they contain religious content and are not translated into English.

The Book Of Adornment... 63

كتاب الزينة من الشنّ

تصنيع وحشلافه..."


تخريج: [صحيح] وهو في الكبير، ح: 9344، وسنده حسن، وللحديث شواهد كثيرة.

تخريج: [إسناده حسن] أخرجه أحمد: 1/165 عن محمد بن كنامة به، وهو في الكبير، ح: 9345.

العجم (15) - النهي عن الخضاب

بالسود (الفتحة 15)

تخريج: [إسناده صحيح] أخرجه أبو داود، الثرجة، باب ما جاء في خضاب السود، ح: 4212 من حديث عبيد الله بن عمرو الرقيق به، وهو في الكبير، ح: 9346.
The Book Of Adornment...

Comments:
1. 'Like the breasts of pigeons' means black.
2. Using pure, or dark, or "jet" black is unlawful, while other dark colors mentioned later are exempt from this.

5079. It was narrated that Jābir said: "Abū Quhāfah was brought on the Day of the Conquest of Makkah, and his hair and beard were white like the Thaghāmah. The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ said: 'Change this with something, but avoid black.'" (Ṣaḥīḥ)

1. The Thaghāmah is a plant with white blossoms. Due to profuseness of the blossoms, the shrub too looks white from afar.

2. Abū Quhāfah is the father of Abū Bakr As-Siddīq ﷺ.

Chapter 16. Dyeing Hair With Henna And Katam

5080. It was narrated from Abū Dharr that the Prophet ﷺ said: "The best things with which you can change gray hair are Henna and Katam." (Ṣaḥīḥ)

تخريج: 1. أبي ذر مسلم بن مسلم قال: "أحسن ما أنفق مالك سنة إنسان، فإن أبي إسحاق، أبا أيبلي، عني أبي ذر، عن النبي ﷺ قال: "فأفضل ما غليان، عن أبي إسحاق، عن أبي أيبلي، عن أبي ذر، عن النبي ﷺ قال: "فأفضل ما غيرت به السجاد والكتم".

تخريج: صحيح وهو في الخبر، ح: 9349، للحديث شواهد، منها الحديث الآتي ﷺ محمد بن مسلم هو ابن وارة، وغيلان هو ابن جامع، أبو إسحاق عن عن، وابن أبي ليلى هو عبدالرحمن.

[1] A white fruit from a type of plant.
[2] A dye, which was dark. Some of them say it was a dye made by mixing a plant with henna, or other plants.
When both are mixed well, the color does not remain utterly black, but becomes slightly inclined to reddishness. Consequently, the possibility of deception does not remain. The woad or indigo dye obtained from the leaves of the plant called *Katam* should not be in excess. Rather redness ought to be apparent in it. *Katam* are the leaves of a tree: *mimosa flava*. It grows in Yemen. This dye applied with *Henna* to the hair is said to preserve its original color. Its color is black with a touch of redness.

5081. It was narrated that Abū Dharr said: “The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ said: ‘The best things with which you can change gray hair are *Henna* and *Katam.*’” *(Sahih)*

5082. It was narrated that Abū Dharr said: “I heard the Prophet ﷺ say: ‘Some of the best things with which you can change gray hair are *Henna* and *Katam.*’” *(Sahih)*

5083. It was narrated that Abū Dharr said: “The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ said: ‘The best things with which you can change gray hair are *Henna* and *Katam.*’” *(Sahih)*

Al-Jurairī and Kahmas contradicted him.
5084. It was narrated that 'Abdullāh bin Buraidah said: "The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ said: 'The best things with which you can change gray hair are Henna and Katam." (Ṣaḥīḥ)

5085. It was narrated from 'Abdullāh bin Buraidah that he heard that the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ said: "The best things with which you can change gray hair are Henna and Katam." (Ṣaḥīḥ)

5086. It was narrated that Abū Rimthah said: "My father and I came to the Prophet ﷺ and he had dyed his beard with Henna." (Ṣaḥīḥ)

5087. It was narrated that Abū Rimthah said: "I came to the Prophet ﷺ and I saw that he had dyed his beard with yellow dye." (Ṣaḥīḥ)

Comments:
Tinting the beard pale-gold or blonde means applying Henna only, as has preceded above. The color of Henna too happens to be like pale-gold or blonde.
Chapter 17. Dyeing The Hair
With Yellow Dye

5088. It was narrated that Zaid bin Aslam said: “I saw Ibn ‘Umar dyeing his beard yellow with Khalūq[1] and I said: ‘O Abū ‘Abdur-Rahmān, are you dyeing your beard yellow with Khalūq?’ He said: ‘I saw the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ dyeing his beard yellow with it, and there was no other kind of dye that was dearer to him than this. He used to dye all of his clothes with it, even his ‘Imāmah ( turban).’” (Ṣaḥīḥ)

Abū ‘Abdur-Rahmān (An-Nasā’ī) said: This is likely more correct than the narration of Abū Qutaibah.[2]

Comments:

Khalūq is a feminine fragrance, which is made out of saffron and some other ingredients. Its color happens to be yellowish-red. Since it is for the use of women, men have been prevented from using it. The Prophet ﷺ might perhaps have used it. Or something else which had a similar appearance as in the previous narrations, or gotten it on his garments from touching his wives. And Allāh knows best.

5089. It was narrated from Qatādah that he asked Anas: “Did the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ dye his hair?” He said: “His gray hair didn’t go that far, it was only a little at his temples.” (Ṣaḥīḥ)

5090. It was narrated from Anas that the Messenger of Allâh (N.B. did not dye his hair; his gray hair were only a little beneath his lower lip and at his temples, and a little on his head. (Sahîh)

5091. It was narrated from 'Abdullâh bin Masûd that the Prophet of Allâh (N.B. disliked ten things: Yellow dye, meaning Khaluq, changing gray hair, dragging one's Ižâr, wearing gold rings, playing with dice (Kî'âb),[1] (a woman) showing her adornment to people to whom it is not permissible for her to show it, reciting Ruqyah, unless it is with Al-Mu'âwidhât (Verses seeking refuge with Allâh), hanging amulets, removing to ejaculate in other than the right place,[2] and taking away the milk of an infant boy (by having intercourse with his mother) — but he did not say that this is Ḥarâm. (Hasan)

Comments:
1. ‘He disliked them’: Some of the above-quoted deeds or acts are absolutely

---

[1] Kî'âb is plural of Ka'b and here it refers to bones taken from the knees of sheep which were used in gambling similar to dice. Hence, it is considered to also apply to that.

[2] The meaning of ‘Azl is to withdraw prior to ejaculation, which was a practice implemented to prevent pregnancy.
unlawful and some reprehensible or undesirable. The expression ‘dislike’ could be employed for both of them.

2. ‘Applying Khalīq’: Please see Hadīth 5088.
3. ‘Changing gray hair’ meaning by dyeing it black.
5. Dice: Other texts mention “Nard” for dice, and Shatranj or backgammon.
6. ‘Not permissible for her to show it’ means a woman’s displaying her beautification in front of someone other than husband. This is unlawful.
7. ‘Al-Mu‘āwidhāt’ meaning the last two Sūrah of the Qur‘ān, in which Allāh’s refuge is sought; or other such reported prescriptions for Ruqyah.
8. ‘Hanging amulets’: Beads, amulets, or talismans, which are worn to ward off evil.
9. ‘In other than the right place’: Meaning to pullout during intercourse, so the semen does not enter the woman’s designated, lawful location.
10. ‘Taking a way the milk’ means to have coitus during the period of lactation, because if pregnancy occurs during the period of lactation, the breast-milk becomes injurious to the child. In the circumstances of weaning the child off its mother’s milk, the health of the child is likely to be adversely affected. This is, however, reprehensible or undesirable. It is not unlawful.
11. ‘He did not say that this is Harām’: Some venerable individuals have stated concerning this phrase that Allāh’s Messenger did not like all the above-described things, but he did not rule them unlawful. But this is wrong, because there are quite a number of things quoted above, which are unlawful, it rather refers to the last act mentioned.

Chapter 18. Women Dyeing

5092. It was narrated from ‘Āishah that a woman reached out her hand (to give) a letter to the Prophet, and he withdrew his hand. She said: “O Messenger of Allāh, I reached out my hand (to give you) a letter and you did not take it.” He said: “I did not know whether it was the hand of a woman or a man.” She said: “It is the hand of a woman.” He said: “If you were a woman, you would

[1] The author did not mention “hair”, nor is that in the narration; due to the sequence it appears that he intends: “dyeing the hair.”
change your nails (by dyeing them) with Henna.” (Pa'ff)

Comments:
1. ‘Withdrew his hand from it, or he refrained from laying hand upon it’: Lest it might be the hand of a woman, because Allah’s Messenger ﷺ never touched the hand of a marriageable woman.
2. ‘You would change your nails with Henna’: It is one issue that a woman should not keep her hands identical to those of men, but she should rather necessarily tint the entire hand or at least the tips of the fingers, so that distinction could be made. Otherwise, a mistake could be committed. It is a different thing that due to his having been extremely cautious, the Prophet ﷺ made no mistake. But his apprehension proved right. It, however, does not mean that if you had tainted your hands with Henna, I would not have withdrawn my hand.

Chapter 19. Disliking The Smell Of Henna

5093. Karimah said: “I heard a woman asking ‘Aishah about dyeing the hair with Henna. She said: ‘There is nothing wrong with it, but I do not like to do it because my beloved – meaning the Prophet – disliked its smell.’” (Pa'ff)

Comments:
It seems the question was pertaining to using it in the hair otherwise applying Henna to the hands is commendable for a woman.

Chapter 20. Plucking Hairs

5094. It was narrated from Abû Al-Ḥuṣain Al-Haitham bin Shufayy (Abû Al-Aswad said: Shufayy) that he said: “A friend of mine who was
called Abū ʿAmir, from Al-Maʿāfir, and I went out to pray in Jerusalem. Their preacher was a man from (the tribe of) Azd who was called Abū Raiḥānah, one of the Companions.” Abū Al-Ḥuṣain said: “My companion reached the Masjid before I did, then I caught up with him, and sat beside him. He said: ‘Have you heard the preaching of Abū Raiḥānah?’ I said: ‘No.’ He said: ‘I heard him say: ‘The Messenger of Allāh forbade ten things: Filing (the teeth), tattoos, plucking (hair), for two men to lie under one cover with no barrier between them, for two women to lie under one cover with no barrier between them, for a man to add more than four fingers’ width of silk to the bottom of his garment like the foreigners (Persians), or to wear more than four fingers’ width of silk on his shoulders like the foreigners (Persians), (and he forbade) plundering, riding (while sitting on) on leopard skins and wearing rings—except for rulers.’” (Daʿif)

Comments:

1. Filing (the teeth): Old women or women advanced in age, in order to resemble young, used to file their teeth so that they might look young.

2. “Tattooing”: With the intention of beautification, a picture or design was marked on a person’s skin by making small holes in the skin with a needle; it was then filled with antimony or any other hue or color.

3. ‘Plucking out hair’ means gray hairs, or the women plucking out the hair of their eyebrows, making them thinner, or while wailing. All of these are prohibited. Some scholars consider it to refer to plucking any hair aside from the pubic and underarm region, saying that plucking is more permanent, and
shaving or the like is allowed. This is the view of Ahmad.

4. 'With no barrier': People of the period of Ignorance did not consider it necessary to have something between man and man, and between woman and woman.

5. 'Bottom of his garment': Meaning the hem or edges.

Chapter 21. Extending Hair
With Cloth

5095. It was narrated from Sa’eed bin Al-Musayyab that Mu’awiyah said: “The Messenger of Allâh forbade giving a false impression.”

(Sahîh)

Comments:

Zuwr: (False impression) refers to falsehood in general, saying or testifying to what is not true. The author included it here to indicate the reason for prohibiting extending the hair. And he named this chapter: “With cloth” because some scholars before him allowed extending the hair with substances other than hair. While these narrations indicate that the prohibition applies to anything used for such purpose.

5096. It was narrated that Sa’eed Al-Maqburî said: “I saw Mu’awiyah bin Abî Sufyân on the Minbar, holding a ball of hair such as women use. He said: ‘What is wrong with Muslim women who put such things (on their heads)? I heard the Messenger of Allâh say: “Any woman who adds hair to her head that is not hers, it is something false, that she is adding to her head.””

(Hasan)
Chapter 22. Woman Who Affixes Hair Extensions

5097. It was narrated from Hishâm bin ‘Urwah, from his wife Fâtimah, from Asmâ’ bint Abî Bakr, that the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ cursed the woman who affixes hair extensions and the woman who has that done. (Ṣâhîh)

Comments:
Irrespective of whether one does it for a price or gratis out of willingness, because providing help or aid in unlawful works is also unlawful.

Chapter 23. Woman Who Has Hair Extensions Affixed

5098. It was narrated that Ibn ‘Umar said: “The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ cursed the woman who affixes hair extensions and the woman who has that done, the woman who does tattoos and the woman who has that done.” Al-Walîd bin Abû Hishâm narrated it in Mursal form. (Ṣâhîh)

5099. It was narrated from Nâfi’ that he heard that the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ cursed the woman who affixes hair extensions and the woman who has that done, the woman who does tattoos and the woman who has that done. (Ṣâhîh)
5100. It was narrated from Safiyyah bint Shaibah, that 'Aishah said: "The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said: 'May Allâh curse the woman who affixes hair extensions and the woman who has that done.'" (Sahîh)

Comments:

It transpires from this, that even a woman who has little hair may not add false hair, because this act also entails treachery and deception.

5101. It was narrated from Masrûq that a woman came to 'Abdullâh bin Mas'ûd and said: "I am a woman with little hair; is it alright for me to add extensions to my hair?" He said: "No." She said: "Is it something that you heard from the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ or that you find in the Book of Allâh?" He said: "No, rather I heard it from the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ and I find it in the Book of Allâh." And he quoted the Hadîth. (Sahîh)

Comments:

It transpires from this, that even a woman who has little hair may not add false hair, because this act also entails treachery and deception.
Chapter 24. Al-Mutanammiṣāt
(The Women That Have Their Eyebrows Plucked)[1]

5102. It was narrated that ‘Abdullāh said: “The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ cursed the women who do tattoos and the women who have them done, Al-Mutanammiṣāt, and the women who have their teeth separated[2] for the sake of beauty, those who change (the creation of Allāh.)” (Ṣaḥīḥ)

Comments:
1. ‘Nāmisah’ means plucking the hair: Clarification concerning it has preceded earlier in Ḥadīth 5094. It should, however, be kept in mind that those hair which the Divine law has commanded to remove are exempted from this. Moreover, as women are forbidden to pluck out hairs other than those quoted above, in the same manner, men also may not pluck out hairs for the reason of beautification or for cosmetic reasons.

5103. It was narrated that Ibrāhīm said: “Abdullāh said: ‘The women who have their teeth separated...’ and he quoted the Ḥadīth.”’ (Ṣaḥīḥ)

5104. Abān bin Ṣa‘īḥah narrated that his mother said: “I heard ‘Āishah say: ‘The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ forbade the woman who does tattoos and the woman who

[1] Al-Mutanammiṣāt and most of them say it refers to women who have the hair on their eyebrows plucked, others say it includes the face, as has preceded, and others say it includes more than that.

[2] That is, to make a gap between two of them.
has that done, the woman who affixes hair extensions and the woman who has that done, An-
Nûmisah (the one who does the plucking) and Al-Mutanammisah (the one who has it done)."
(Sâhih)

Chapter 25. Women Who Have Tattoos Done, And Mention Of
The Differences Reported From 'Abdullâh bin Murrah And Ash-
Sha’bî About This

5105. It was narrated from 'Abdullâh bin Murrah, from Al-
Hârîth, from 'Abdullâh, who said: "The one who consumes Ribâ, the
one who pays it, and the one who writes it down, if they know that it
is Ribâ; the woman who does tattoos and the woman who has
that done for the purpose of beautification; the one who
withholds Sadaqah (Zakâh); and the one who reverts to the life of a
Bedouin after having emigrated - they will (all) be cursed upon the
tongue of Muhammad on the Day of Resurrection." (Haṣan)

Comments:
1. 'Consumes Ribâ' whether he consumes it or puts it to any other use, because
the use of interest or usurious gain is forbidden for one’s self, in any form.
2. "The one who writes it down" because this person also becomes a helper in
the perpetration of an enormity or a major sin.
3. "If they know": means the individuals concerned have the knowledge that it is
a usurious transaction. Ignorance is forgivable.
4. ‘One who reverts to the life of a Bedouin’. See No. 4191.
5. ‘Upon the tongue of Muhammad ﷺ’ means Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ has stated that such a person would be under the curse on the Day of Resurrection.

5106. It was narrated from Ḥūṣain, Mughfīrah, and Ibn ‘Awn, from Ash-Shā’bī, from Al-Ḥārith, from ‘Alî, that the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ cursed the one who consumes Ribâ, the one who pays it, the one who writes it down, and the one who withholds Ṣadaqah (Zakîh). And he used to forbid wailing (in mourning for the dead). (Ḥasan)

Ibn ‘Awn and ‘Atâ’ bin As-Sâ’îb narrated it in Murṣal form.

5107. It was narrated from Ibn ‘Awn, from Ash-Sha’bî, from Al-Ḥārith, who said: “The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ cursed the one who consumes Ribâ, the one who pays it, the one who writes it down and the one who witnesses it; the woman who does tattoos and the woman who has that done” – he said: [1]

“Unless it is done as a remedy;” he said: “Yes” – “the man who married a woman in order to divorce her so that she may go back to her first husband and the man (the first husband) for whom that is done; and the one who withholds Ṣadaqah (Zakîh). And he used to forbid wailing (in mourning), but he did not say ‘cursed.’” (Ḥasan)

[1] That is Ibn Awn asking the question and Ash-Sha’bî answering it, as is clear in the narration of it recorded by Imâm Ahmad, No. 1120 (1:133).
Comments:
1. ‘In order to divorce her:’ See No. 3445.
2. “He did not say ‘cursed”’ means wailing is assuredly unlawful, but the term curse is not used for it here.

5108. It was narrated that from ‘Atâ’ bin As-Sâ‘îb, from Ash-Sha’bî who said: “The Messenger of Allâh cursed the one who consumes Ribâ, the one who pays it, the one who witnesses it and the one who writes it down; the woman who does tattoos and the woman who has that done; and he forbade wailing (in mourning), but he did not say that its doer is cursed.” (Hasan)

Comments: [حسن] انظر الحديثين السابقين، وهو في الكبرى، ح: 9392.

5109. It was narrated that Abû Hurairah said: “A woman who did tattoos was brought to ‘Umar and he said: ‘I adjure you by Allâh, did any one among you hear (anything from) the Messenger of Allâh?’ Abû Hurairah said: “I stood up and said: ‘O Commander of the Believers! I heard him (say something).’ He said: ‘What did you hear?’ I said: ‘I heard him say: Do not do tattoos and do not have tattoos done.”’ (Sahîh)

تخرج: أخرجه البخاري، الباجي، باب المستوشمة، ح: 946 من حديث جرير بن عبدالمجيد به، وهو في الكبيرى، ح: 9392.
Chapter 26. Women Who Have Their Teeth Separated

5110. It was narrated that Ibn Mas‘ūd said: “I heard the Messenger of Alläh  saying Al-Mutanammiṣāt, women who have their teeth separated, and women who have tattoos done, those who change the creation of Alläh, the Mighty and Sublime.” (Sahīḥ)

Comments:
In the Hadīth 5094, it has preceded that during the period of Ignorance, women were in the habit of filing their teeth to make them thinner. The intention was to make the teeth appear separated from each other. The same thing has been alluded to in this Hadīth by making spaces between the teeth (for beautification). This is unlawful.

5111. It was narrated that ‘Abdullāh said: “I heard the Messenger of Alläh  saying: ‘May Alläh curse Al-Mutanammiṣāt, women who have their teeth separated, and women who have tattoos done, those who change the creation of Alläh, the Mighty and Sublime.”’ (Sahīḥ)

5112. It was narrated that ‘Abdullāh said: “I heard the Messenger of Alläh  say: ‘May Alläh curse Al-Mutanammiṣāt, women who have tattoos done and women who have their teeth separated, those who change the creation of Alläh, the Mighty and
Sublime.” (Sahih)

Comments:

'Think what Allah has created': So to speak, such deeds which these women indulge in for the sake of beautification are in reality synonymous with disfiguring a human’s natural or primordially inherent form, although due to their having corrupt disposition, they visualize it as beautification.

Chapter 27. Prohibition On Filing (The Teeth)

5113. It was narrated from Abû Al-Husain Al-Himyarî that he and a companion of his used to stay with Abû Raihânah to learn good things from him. He said: "One day my companion came and told me that he had heard Abû Raihânah say: ‘The Messenger of Allah forbid filing (the teeth), tattoos, and plucking hairs.’" (Daif)

Comments: (This matter has been explained in previous narrations. See No. 5094)

5114. It was narrated that Abû Raihânah said: "We heard that the Messenger of Allah forbid filing (the teeth) and tattoos." (Daif)

Comments: (Insanaa Dhaifee)
5115. It was narrated that Abû Raihânah said: “We heard that the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ forbade filing (the teeth) and tattoos.” *(Sahîh)*

5116. It was narrated from Ibn ‘Abbâs that the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said: “One of the best kinds of kohl that you use is *Ittimîd* (antimony); it brightens the vision and makes the hair (eye-lashes) grow.” *(Hasan)*

Abû ‘Abdur-Rahmân (An-Nasâ’î) said: ‘Abdullâh bin ‘Uthmân bin Khuthaim is feeble in *Hadîth*.

Chapter 28. Kohl

5116. It was narrated that Simâk said: “I heard Jâbir bin Samurah being asked about the gray hairs of the Prophet ﷺ. He said: 'If he put oil on his head they could not be seen, but if he did not put oil on his head, they could be seen.'” *(Sahîh)*

Chapter 29. Ad-Dahn (Oil)[1]

5117. It was narrated that Simâk said: “I heard Jâbir bin Samurah being asked about the gray hairs of the Prophet ﷺ. He said: 'If he put oil on his head they could not be seen, but if he did not put oil on his head, they could be seen.'” *(Sahîh)*

**[1] Ad-Dahn refers to any thick oil, as opposed to other types which are mentioned.**
The objective of Jabir is that Allâh’s Messenger had few gray hairs, which were not seen when he applied oil to the hair.

Chapter 30. Saffron

5118. ‘Abdullâh bin Zaid narrated from his father that Ibn ‘Umar used to dye his garments with saffron. He was asked about that and he said: “The Messenger of Allâh used to dye his clothes (with it).” (Sahîh)

Comments:

See No. 5088.

Chapter 31. Amber[^1]

5119. It was narrated that Muhammad bin ‘Ali said: “I asked ‘Aishah: ‘Did the Messenger of Allâh wear perfume?’ She said: ‘Yes, the perfumes used by men: Musk and amber.’” (Da’iff)

Comments:

‘Muhammad bin ‘Ali’: By him is meant ‘Ali’s son Muhammad who is called Muhammad bin Al-Hanafiyyah, and Al-Hanafiyyah refers to his mother. May Allâh’s mercy be upon him. ‘Men’s perfumes’ are which have fragrance but no color. Colored perfumes are for women, for instance, saffron, etc.

[^1] ‘Anbar, which has been called ambergris and then amber in later times, is named after the whale as it is a product which it regurgitates. It is not the same as the sap from trees which hardens and is called “amber.”
Chapter 32. The Difference Between Perfumes For Men And Perfumes For Women

5120. It was narrated that Abû Hurairah said: "The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said: 'The perfume for men is that whose scent is apparent while its color is hidden, and the perfume for women is that whose color is apparent, while its scent is hidden.'" (Dâ'î)

Comments:
1. 'Whose color is hidden': Men's perfumes may contain light color which is, however, apparent when looked at from a distance, for instance, the hue of musk. In the same manner, women's perfumes may contain slight fragrance. If it is not sensed by passers-by, then there is no harm in it, because Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ did not negate it, he rather said, 'whose scent is hidden.' So to speak, there is no harm if there is a slight scent.

2. If a woman is in the house of her husband, and if she does not go out, she may also use a stronger fragrance.

5121. It was narrated from Abû Hurairah that the Prophet ﷺ said: "The perfume for men is that whose scent is apparent while its color is hidden, and the perfume for women is that whose color is apparent, while its scent is hidden." (Hasan)
Chapter 33. The Best Type Of Perfume

5122. It was narrated that Abū Sa'eed Al-Khudrī said: "The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ said: 'A woman from among the Children of Israel took a ring of gold and filled it with musk.' The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ said: 'That is the best kind of perfume.'" (Hasan)

Chapter 34. Saffron And Khalīq

5123. It was narrated that Abū Hurairah said: "A man came to the Prophet ﷺ wearing a little dab of Khalīq." The Prophet ﷺ said to him: "Go and scrub it off." Then he came (again) and he said: "Go and scrub it off." Then he came to him (again) and he said: "Go and scrub it off, and don't put it on again." (Da'if)

Comments:
1. Khalīq is a category of colored perfumes, which is composed of saffron and other ingredients. It is forbidden to men because of its color.
2. 'Go back and wash it off yourself': The stain might have not yet been removed.

5124. It was narrated from Ya'la bin Murrah that he passed by the Prophet ﷺ wearing Khalīq. He
said to him: “Do you have a wife?” I said: “No.” He said: “Wash it off, then wash it off, then do not put it on again.” (Da’if)

الساحب قال: سمعت أبي حفص بن ع([(غروه
وقال على إثره وَجَدْتُ عَنْ يَعْلَى بِنِ مَرْةً: أَنَّهُ مَرْ عَلَى الْبَيْنَيْنَ وَهُوَ مُتَحْلِّلٌ فَقَالَ لَهُ: فَكُلْ لَكَ اَمْرًا؟ فَقَالَ: لَا، قَالَ: قَاغِشَكَةُ نَمَ اَغْيِلَةُ كَمْ لا يُنْتَعِدُ.

تخريج: [إسناده ضعيف] أُخْرِجَهُ النَّمِضِيجِ، الأدَّب، بَاب ما جاء في كِرَاهِيَة التَّزِعِير
والخِلْقِ لِلنَّجَالِ، ح: 12816 من حديث شعبة به، وَقَالُ: "حسن"، وَهُوَ فِي الْكِبْرَى، ح: 9417.

Comments:

‘Do you have a wife?’ The purpose of the Messenger of Allah ﷺ was to underscore that the perfume was allowed for his wife. A mark of the perfume might have remained upon him due to his interaction with his wife. If it was so, then there was no harm, because he had not applied it deliberately. But if it is applied deliberately, then it is not allowed.

5125. It was narrated from Ya’la bin Murrah that the Messenger of Allah ﷺ saw a man wearing Khalūq and said: “Go and wash it off, then wash it off, and do not put it on again.” (Da’if)

تخريج: [إسناده ضعيف] انظر الحديث السابق، وهو في الْكِبْرَى، ح: 9417.

5126. A similar report was narrated from Ibn ‘Amr, from a man, from Ya’la. (Da’if)

5127. It was narrated that Ya'la bin Murrah Ath-Thaqafi said: “The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ saw me wearing a little dab of Khatûq. He said: ‘O Ya'la, do you have a wife?’ I said: ‘No.’ He said: ‘Wash it off and do not put it on again, then wash it off and do not put it on again, then wash it off and do not put it on again.’ I said: ‘So I washed it off, and did not put it on again, then I washed it off, and did not put it on again, then I washed it off, and did not put it on again.”’

(Dee)</p>

Comments:

The reiteration of washing it up again and again is only for emphasis so that one washes it well and he does not go near it again. The reiteration of Abû Ya'la too is the expression of his acceptance of this emphasis or insistence. He did not even allow that notion to occur in his heart again.

5128. It was narrated that Ya'la said: “I passed by the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ and I was wearing Khatûq. He said: ‘O Ya'la, do you have a wife?’ I said: ‘No.’ He said: ‘Go and wash it off, then wash it off, then wash it off, and do not put it on again.’ So I went and washed it off, then washed it off, then washed it off, and I did not put it on again.”

(Dee)
Chapter 35. Kinds Of Perfume That Are Disliked (Makrūh) For Women

5129. It was narrated that Al-Ash'arī said: “The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ said: ‘Any woman who puts on perfume then passes by people so that they can smell her fragrance then she is an adulteress.”' (Hasan)

Comments:
‘She is an adulteress’ means it is a sign of a woman’s loose character and of her having been an adulteress that she exhibits her adornment to people, so that people might be drawn to her and desire her.

Chapter 36. Women Performing Ghusl To Remove Perfume

5130. It was narrated that Abū Hurairah said: “The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ said: ‘If a woman goes out to the Masjid, let her perform Ghusl to remove perfume as she would perform Ghusl to remove Janābah (impurity following sexual activity).’” This is an abridged form of it. (Sahih)
Comments:

1. ‘To the Masjid’ means going out of home, whether she goes to the mosque, or to someone’s house, or to the farm. The mosque is specifically mentioned, because it is the place of purity. Fragrance is extremely superior therein, but a woman may not perfume herself even while going to the mosque. Hence, other places are out of the question.

2. ‘Perform Ghusl’, because the perfume touches from one part of the body to another. The effect of perfume, therefore, would not be obliterated unless one takes full bath.

Chapter 37. Prohibition Of Women Attending The Prayer
If They Have Perfumed Themselves With Incense

5131. It was narrated that Abû Hurairah said: “The Messenger of Allah said: ‘If a woman has perfumed herself with incense, let her not attend ‘Ishâ’ prayer.’” (Sahîh)

Abû ‘Abdur-Rahmân (An-Nasâ’î) said: I do not know of anyone who followed up Yazîd bin Khuṣaifah (by also narrating) from Busr bin Sa’eed, for the saying of Abû Hurairah. Ya’qûb bin ‘Abdullâh Ibn Al-Ashajj contradicted him, he reported it from Zainab At-Thaqafiyyah.

Comments:

Bakhår means incense; when lighted with fire, its fragrance is sensed, as are incense sticks, etc. in modern days. It is not permissible for a woman to go out of home, applying any kind of fragrance, whether she goes to the mosque or anywhere else. The Isha prayer is specifically mentioned, because incense would be burned more at that time for various reasons.
5132. It was narrated that Zainab, the wife of 'Abdullâh, said: “The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said: ‘If one of you wants to attend ‘Ishâ’ prayer, let her not touch perfume.’” (Sahîh)

5133. It was narrated that Zainab, the wife of 'Abdullâh, said: The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said: “If one of you wants to attend ‘Ishâ’ prayer, let her not touch perfume.” (Sahîh)

Abû ‘Abdur-Rahmân (An-Nasâ‘î) said: The Hadîth of Yahyâ[1] and Jarîr is more worthy of being correct than the Hadîth of Wuhâib bin Khâlid,[2] and Allâh knows best.

5134. It was narrated from Zainab Ath-Thaqafîyyah that the Prophet of Allâh ﷺ said: “If any one of you goes out to the Masjid, let her not go near perfume.” (Sahîh)

Comments:

If women do not intend to go out of the home, they may perfume themselves for their husbands.

---

[1] The narration with chains from both of them appears under No. 5262, and it is the same as that narrated through Jarîr under No. 5133.

5135. It was narrated from Zainab Ath-Thaqafiyyah, the wife of ‘Abdullāh, that the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ told her not to touch perfume if she wanted to go out to ‘Ishā’ the later. (Sahih) [1]

Comments:
This narration does not connote that women may arrive for the other remaining prayers (other than the ‘Ishā’) perfumed. Rather, the ‘Ishā’ prayer was particularly mentioned, because it is the time when women generally perfume themselves, as is described in Hadīth 5131. In other versions going to the Masjid in general is mentioned.

5136. It was narrated from Zainab Ath-Thaqafiyyah that the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ said: “If a woman goes out to (pray) ‘Ishā’, let her not touch perfume.” (Sahih)

5137. It was narrated that Zainab Ath-Thaqafiyyah said: “The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ said: ‘If one

[1] The later of the nighttime prayers.
of you wants to attend the prayer, let her not touch perfume.””
(Sahih)
Abū Abdur-Rahman (An-Nasâî) said: And this is not preserved as a narration from Az-Zuhri.

Chapter 38. Incense

5138. It was narrated that Nâfî said: “When Ibn ‘Umar burned incense he would burn Al-Ulîwwah[1] that was not mixed with anything else, or camphor mixed with some Al-Ulîwwah. Then he said: ‘This is what the Messenger of Allâh used to burn.”” (Sahih)

Chapter 39. Dislike For Women To Show Their Jewelry And Gold

5139. ‘Uqbah bin ‘Amir narrated that the Messenger of Allâh used to tell his wives not to wear jewelry and silk. He said: “If you want the jewelry and silk of Paradise, then do not wear them in this world.”” (Sahih)

---

[1] Al-Ulîwwah, they say it is a Persian word for ‘Ud (aloeswood).
Comments:
The author indicates - by the chapter name and narrations - that what is narrated prohibiting gold for women, applies to them wearing it such that those not related to them see it.

5140. It was narrated from Rib'i, from his wife, that the sister of Hudhaifah said: “The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ addressed us and said: ‘O women, do you not have any silver to wear for adornment? For there is no woman among you who wears gold and shows it, but she will be punished because of it.” (Da'if)

5141. It was narrated from Rib'i, from his wife, that the sister of Hudhaifah said: “The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ addressed us and said: ‘O women, do you not have any silver to wear for adornment? For there is no woman among you who wears gold and shows it, but she will be punished because of it.” (Da'if)

5142. Asmâ’ bint Yazīd narrated that the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ said: “Any woman who puts on a necklace of gold, Allāh will put...
something similar of fire around her neck. Any woman who puts earrings of gold on her ears, Allâh, the Mighty and Sublime, will put earrings of fire on her ears on the Day of Resurrection.” (Da‘îf)

It was narrated from Abû Asmâ‘ Ar-Raḥâbî that Thawbân, the freed slave of the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ, told him: “Fâtîmah bint Hubairah came to the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ with a big ring on her hand.” He (the narrator) said: “This is what I found in the book of my father, a huge ring.” – “The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ started hitting her hand, so she entered upon Fâtîmah, the daughter of the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ, and complained to her about what the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ had done. Fâtîmah took off a gold chain from her neck and said: ‘This was given to me by Abû Hasan.’ The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ came in and (saw) the chain in her hand. He said: ‘O Fâtîmah, would you like the people to say that the daughter of the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ has a chain of fire in her hand? Then he went out, without sitting down. Fâtîmah sent the chain to the market and sold it, and she bought a slave with the
money, and set him free. He was told of that and he said: ‘Praise be to Allâh Who has saved Fâtimah from the Fire.’” (Sahîh)

5144. It was narrated that Thawbân said: “The daughter of Hubairah came to the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ and on her hand were large gold rings.” — a similar report. (Sahîh)

5145. It was narrated that Abû Hurairâh said: “I was sitting with the Prophet ﷺ when a woman came to him and said: ‘O Messenger of Allâh, two bracelets of gold.’ He said: ‘Two bracelets of fire.’ She said: ‘O Messenger of Allâh, a necklace of gold.’ He said: ‘A necklace of fire.’ She said: ‘Two earrings of gold.’ He said: ‘Two earrings of fire.’ She was wearing two bracelets of gold, so she took them off and said: ‘O Messenger of Allâh, if a woman does not adorn herself for her husband, she will become unattractive to him.’ He said: ‘What is there to keep any one of you from making earrings of silver and painting them yellow
with saffron or some ‘Abū’?"[1]
This is the wording of Ibn Ḥarab. (Ḍa‘īf)

The Book Of Adornment

5146. It was narrated from ʿĀishah that the Messenger of Allāh  saw her wearing two bracelets of gold. The Messenger of Allāh  said:

"Shall I not tell you of something that is better than this? Why don’t you take these off and wear two bracelets of silver, and paint them yellow with saffron, and they will look fine." (Ḍa‘īf)

Abū ‘Abdur-Rahmān (An-Nasā‘ī) said: This is not preserved, and Allāh knows best.

Chapter 40. Prohibition Of Gold For Men

5147. ‘Ali bin Abī Ṭālib said: "The Prophet of Allāh  took hold of some silk in his right hand and some gold in his left, then he said:

'These two are forbidden for the males of my Ummah.'" (Ṣaḥīḥ)

[1] ‘Abīr is saffron and a mixture of other perfumes.
The Book Of Adornment...

Comments:
So to speak, they are permissible for women, as is unequivocally mentioned in the forthcoming narrations; whereas it is not permissible for men to imitate women. Adornment and beautification is a woman’s strong point or specialty. It is contrary to manliness.

5148. ‘Ali bin Abî Tâlib said: “The Prophet of Allah took hold of some silk in his right hand, and some gold in his left, then he said: ‘These two are forbidden for the males of my Ummah.’” (Sahîh)

5149. ‘Ali said: “The Prophet of Allah took hold of some silk in his right hand, and some gold in his left, then he said: ‘These two are forbidden for the males of my Ummah.’” (Hasan)

Abû ‘Abdur-Rahmân (An-Nasâ’î) said: The Hadîth of Ibn Al-Mubârak is more worthy of being correct, except for his saying: “Aflah” (narrated it) because Abû Aflah is more appropriate.

The Book Of Adornment...
5150. It was narrated that 'Abdullâh bin Zurair Al-Ghâfiqî said: “I heard 'Alî say: ‘The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ took some gold in his right hand and some silk in his left hand and said: This is forbidden for the males of my Ummah.”’ (Sahîh)

Comments:

The conflict of the right and the left is an error of some later transmitter.

5151. It was narrated from Abû Mûsâ that the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said: "Gold and silk have been permitted for the females of my Ummah, and forbidden to the males.” (Sahîh)

5152. It was narrated from Mu'âwiyyah that the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ forbade wearing silk and gold, unless it was broken (into smaller pieces). (Sahîh)

‘Abdul-Wahhâb contradicted him; he reported it from Khâlid, from Maimûn, from Abû Qilâbah.
Comments:

‘In small pieces or fragments’: The Arabic expression used in مُنِّقَة، means it ought to be small in size and used in various places, for instance, on the hilt of the sword, whether it is in the form of frill or ruffle or fluff or in the form of dots. The entire hilt may not be gilded. Likewise, there could be gold flakes or marks upon a silver ring. In the same manner, if silk is also utilized in the form of fragments upon another cloth, in small or tiny size, then there is no harm in it.

5153. It was narrated from Mu‘āwiyah that the Messenger of Allāh forbade wearing gold unless it was broken (into smaller pieces), and (he forbade) riding on Al-Mayāthir. (Sahīḥ)

Comments:

Al-Mayāthir See No. 5311.

5154. It was narrated from Abū Shaikh that he heard Mu‘āwiyah say, when a group of the Companions of Muḥammad were with him: “Do you know that the Prophet of Allāh forbade wearing gold unless it was broken (into smaller pieces)?” They said: “By Allāh, yes.” (Sahīḥ)

Comments:

5155. It was narrated that Abū Shaikh[1] said: “While we were with Mu‘āwiyah on one of his pilgrimages, he gathered together a group of the Companions of Muḥammad and said to them:

[1] Abū Shaikh Al-Hunā‘i Al-Hamdānī Al- Başrī, they say his name is Haywān bin Khālid, and they also say it was Khaywān. He was a famous reciter of Al-Basrah, and he died after the year 100. (Tahdīb Al-Kamāl).
Do you not know that the Messenger of Allâh forbid wearing gold unless it was broken (into smaller pieces)?" They said: 'By Allâh, yes.' (Sâhîh)

Yahya bin Abî Kathîr contradicted him, as his other companions differed.[1]

تخريج: [صحيح] انظر الحديث السابق، وهو في الكرب، ح: 9454، وانظر،

5156. It was narrated from Abû Himmân that when Mu‘âwiyyah went on Hajj, he gathered together a group of the Companions of the Messenger of Allâh at the Ka‘bah and said to them: "I adjure you by Allâh, did the Messenger of Allâh forbid wearing gold?" They said: "Yes." He said: "And I bear witness to that." (Sâhîh)

Harb bin Shaddâd contradicted him; he reported it from Yahya, from Abû Shaikh, from his brother, Himmân.

تخريج: [صحيح] وهو في الكرب، ح: 9455 يحيى هو ابن أبي كبر، وانظر الأحاديث الآتية.

5157. Abû Shaikh narrated from his brother Himmân, that when Mu‘âwiyyah went on Hajj, he gathered together a group of the Companions of the Messenger of Allâh at the Ka‘bah and said to them: "I adjure you by Allâh, did the Messenger of Allâh forbid wearing gold?" They said: "Yes." He said: "And I bear witness to

[1] Meaning, in the following narration, Yahya reported it with: "Abû Shaikh, Al-Huna‘i, from Abû Himmân..."
5158. Himmân said: "Mu'awiyah went on Hajj and he called a group of Anṣâr to the Ka’bah. He said: 'I adjure you by Allâh, did you hear the Messenger of Allâh forbid gold?' They said: 'Yes.' He said: 'And I bear witness to that.'" (Sahîh)

5159. Himmân said: 'Mu'awiyah went on Hajj and he called a group of Anṣâr to the Ka’bah. He said: 'Did you hear the Messenger of Allâh forbid gold?' They said: 'Yes.' Himmân said: 'And I bear witness to that.'" (Sahîh)

5160. Ibn Himmân said: "Mu'awiyah went on Hajj and he called a group of Anṣâr to the Ka’bah. He said: 'Did you hear the
5161. Ḥimmān said: "Mu‘āwiyyah went on Ḥajj and he called a group of Anṣār to the Ka‘bah. He said: 'I adjure you by Allāh, did you hear the Messenger of Allāh forbid gold?' They said: 'Yes.' He said: 'And (be forbade) wearing gold unless it was broken into smaller pieces?' They said: 'Yes.'" (Ṣaḥīḥ)

Abū 'Abdur-Rahmān (An-Nasā‘ī) said: 'Umārah is better at memorizing than Yahya, and his narration[1] is more worthy of being correct.

5162. Abū Shaikh Al-Hunārī said: "I heard Mu‘āwiyyah say to a group of Muhājirūn and Anṣār who were around him: 'Do you know that the Messenger of Allāh forbade wearing silk?' They said: 'By Allāh, yes.' He said: 'And (he forbade) wearing gold unless it was broken (into smaller pieces)?' They said: 'Yes.'" ‘Alī bin Ghurāb contradicted him; he reported it from Bahais, from Abū Shaikh, from Ibn ‘Umar. (Ṣaḥīḥ)

[1] Umārah's narration is No. 5159.
5163. Abû Shaikh said: “I heard Ibn ‘Umar say: “The Messenger of Allah forbade wearing gold unless it is broken (into smaller pieces).”’ (Hasan)


Chapter 41. If A Man’s Nose Has Been Cut Off, Can He Wear A Nose Made Of Gold?

5164. It was narrated from ‘Arfajah bin As’ad, that his nose was cut off at the battle of Al-Kulâb during the Jâhiyâyah, so he wore a nose made of silver, but it began to rot, so the Prophet told him to wear a nose made of gold. (Hasan)

Comments:
1. We learn that for men, the use of gold as adornment is forbidden; but it is permissible by way of necessity.
2. ‘The Battle of Kulab’: The Kulâb was the name of a well or a spring. A fierce battle had taken place there, during the period of Ignorance.

[1] That is, 5162 is more worthy of being correct than 5163.
5165. It was narrated from 'Abdur-Rahmân bin Tarafah, from 'Arfajah bin As'ad bin Karib, who was his grandfather — saying that he saw his grandfather, and he said: "His nose had been cut off at the battle of Al-Kulab during the Tâhîlîyâh, so he wore a nose made of silver, but it began to rot on him, so the Prophet ﷺ told him to wear a nose made of gold." (Hasan)

Chapter 42. Concession For Gold Rings For Men

5166. It was narrated that Sa'eed bin Al-Musayyab said: "Umar said to Suhaib: 'Why do I see you wearing a ring of gold?' He said: 'One who was better than you saw it and did not criticize it.' He said: 'Who was that?' He said: 'The Messenger of Allah ﷺ.'" (Da'if)

Comments:
See the following narration.
Chapter 43. Gold Rings

5167. It was narrated that Ibn 'Umar said: "The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ started to wear a gold ring, and the people started to wear gold rings. The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said: 'I was wearing this ring, but I will never wear it again.' He threw it away and the people threw their rings away." (Sahîh)

Comments:
1. Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ had not worn the gold signet-ring for adornment. But he had it made for sealing. That is why he wore it with the stone turned inward toward palm, whereas those who wear it for adornment keep the stone outside on the back of the hand.
2. ‘I shall never wear it again’: So to say, the permissibility was abrogated. In the forthcoming narrations, there is clarification regarding its unlawfulness.
3. ‘So the people threw their rings away’: Following the Messenger ﷺ.
4. Other narrations explain that Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ then got a silver ring fashioned so that he could seal letters and ordinances or commands with it.


تخريج: [إسناده صحيح] وهو في الكبرى، ح: 9467، ﷺ إسماعيل هو ابن جعفر بن أبي كثير المدني.

[2] *Al-Qassi* and *Al-Qasîyyah*: Referring to a cloth, or clothing, from a place called Al-Qass, which they say was in Egypt; a fabric which was mostly silk.
[3] *Al-Jî’ah*: A drink made from barley or wheat; beer.
5169. It was narrated that ‘Alî said: “The Prophet forbade me to wear gold rings and Al-Qassi, red Al-Miyâthîr.” (Hasan)

5170. ‘Alî said: “The Messenger of Allâh forbade gold rings, red Al-Miyâthîr, Qassiyah garments and Al-Jî’âh, which is a drink made from barley and wheat.” – And he mentioned its strength. (Hasan)

‘Ammâr bin Ruzaiq contradicted him; he reported it from Abû Ishâq, from Sa’â’ah, from ‘Alî.

5171. It was narrated that ‘Alî said: “The Messenger of Allâh forbade me (to wear) gold rings and Al-Qassî, Al-Mîtharâh, and Al-Jî’âh.” (Sahîh)

Abû ‘Abdur-Rahmân (An-Nasâ’î) said: The one that is before it is more likely to be correct.

تَّكَابُ الزَّرَىَةَ مِنْ النَّجَّةَ

5169 - أَخْبَرَنَا مُحَدِّدُ بِنْ عَبْدِ الْلَّهِ بِنْ عُبْدِ القَدَمِ، عَنْ أُمَّةَ بْنِ عَبْدِ الْمَجَلِّلِ، عَنْ زُكَّرِيَّةٍ، عَنْ أَبِي إِسْحَاقٍ، عَنْ حَبْبُةٍ، عَنْ عَلِيّ بنَ الْمَيْمنَةِ، عَنْ رَسُولِ اللَّهِ صلى الله عليه وسلم، عَنْ حَاجَتٍ الْدُّنْيَا، وَعَنْ الْقَفَّيِ، وَعَنْ الْمَيْمَانِ الْمُمِّجَرِ.

تَخْرِيجٌ: [حسن] أنظر الحديث السابق، وهو في الكبير، ح: 9468.

5170 - أَخْبَرَنَا مُحَدِّدُ بِنْ عَبْدِ الْلَّهِ بِنْ عُبْدِ القَدَمِ، عَنْ حَدِيثَهُ مُحَدِّدٍ، وَعَنْ حَدِيثٍ أَبِي إِسْحَاقٍ، عَنْ حَبْبُةٍ سَبِيعَةٍ مِّنْ عَلِيّ بنَ الْمَيْمنَةِ، عَنْ رَسُولِ اللَّهِ صلى الله عليه وسلم، عَنْ حَاجَتٍ، وَعَنْ الْقَفَّيِ، وَعَنْ الْمَيْمَانِ الْمُمِّجَرِ، وَعَنْ الْجُبْعَةِ، وَعَنْ الْمُذَكُّرِ مِنْ الْمُشْعِرِ وَالْحَجَّةِ، وَذَكَرَ مِنْ شَرَابٍ يَضُنَّ مِنْ الْمُشْعِرِ، وَعَنْ حَاجَتٍ، وَعَنْ أَبِي إِسْحَاقٍ، عَنْ صَعْطَةٍ، عَنْ عَلِيّ.

تَخْرِيجٌ: [حسن] أنظر الحديث السابق، وهو في الكبير، ح: 9469.

5171 - أَخْبَرَنَا مُحَدِّدُ بِنْ عَبْدِ الْلَّهِ بِنْ عُبْدِ القَدَمِ، عَنْ حَدِيثَهُ مُحَدِّدٍ، وَعَنْ حَدِيثٍ أَبِي إِسْحَاقٍ، عَنْ حَبْبُةٍ، عَنْ رَسُولِ اللَّهِ صلى الله عليه وسلم، عَنْ حَاجَتٍ، وَعَنْ الْقَفَّيِ، وَعَنْ الْمَيْمَانِ الْمُمِّجَرِ، وَالْكَفَّيِ، وَالْمُذَكُّرِ، وَالْجُبْعَةِ، وَالْمُتَشَكَّرِ.

قَالَ أَبُو عَبْدِ الْرَّحْمَنُ: الَّذِي قَبَلَهُ آبَاهُ، بِالْصُّنَّابِ.

تَخْرِيجٌ: [صحيح] وهو في الكبير، ح: 9470. وانظر الحديث الآتي.
Comments:
Every kind of intoxicating drink is unlawful; irrespective of whatever ingredients it might have been made of, whether it is little or more.

5172. It was narrated that Sa‘ṣa‘ah bin Ṣuwḥān said: “I said to ‘Alī: ‘Forbid to us that which the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ forbade to you.’ He said: ‘He forbade me from Ad-Dubbā’[1], Al-Hantam[2], gold circles (rings), wearing silk, and Al-Qassī, and red Al-Mitharah.’” (Ṣaḥīh)

Comments:
Gourd containers and pitchers smeared with tarcoal happen to be without pores. If Nabidh is made in them, it soon produces intoxication. That is why during the period of Ignorance, people had kept these vessels especially for brewing wine. Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ, therefore, forbade the use of these utensils for making Nabidh in the beginning. Later on, he gave permission, provided it did not produce intoxication. (Detail has preceded in its place).

5173. It was narrated that Mālik bin ‘Umair said: “Sa‘ṣa‘ah bin Ṣuwḥān came to ‘Alī and said: ‘Forbid to us from that which the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ forbade to you.’” He said: “He forbade us from Ad-Dubbā’, Al-Hantam, An-Naqīr,[3] Al-Ji‘ah, and he forbade us from gold circles (rings), wearing silk, and wearing Al-Qassī, and red Al-Mitharah.” (Pa‘f)

The Book Of Adornment...  107

Comments:

An-Naqiv: A large vessel used to be fashioned by hollowing out the root or the lower part of a palm tree. Since this one also used to be devoid of pores, they had specified this vessel also for wine, so that intoxication could occur quickly.

5174. Sa‘sa‘ah bin Suwhân said to ‘Ali: “O Commander of the Believers! Forbid us from that which the Messenger of Allâh forbid you from.” He said: “He forbade us from Ad-Dubbâ’, Al-Hantam, Al-Jî’ah, and from gold circles (rings), and from wearing silk, and from red Al-Mithârah.” (Sahîh)

Abû ‘Abdur-Rahmân (An-Nasâ’î) said: The Hadîth of Marwân and ‘Abdul-Wâhid is more worthy of being correct than the Hadîth of Isrâ’il.[3]

5175. It was narrated that ‘Ali said:
“My beloved, the Messenger of Allâh forbade me three things but I do not say that he forbade them to the people. He forbade me from wearing rings of gold, from wearing Al-Qassi, and Al-Mu‘asfar Al-Mufaddam (garments that are deeply dyed with safflower),[4] and

[2] Hadîth No. 5173 and 5174, respectively.
[4] No. 5175 has it Al-Mu’asfar–Mufaddam, while No. 5176 has it: Al-Mufaddam and Al-Mu‘asfar. In No. 3601 of Sunan Ibn Mâjah is the following: It was narrated that Ibn ‘Umar
(he forbade me) from reciting Qur'ān when prostrating or bowing.”

He was followed (in that narration) by ʿAbd-Ḍāḥḥāk bin ʿUthmān: (Ṣaḥīḥ)

Comments:
1. ‘I do not say’: The purpose is to emphasize that since Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ had addressed me in the singular, I too employ the singular forms, and not the plural. Otherwise, the hereunder mentioned substances are unlawful for every Muslim as they were unlawful for ‘Alī ﷺ. But the unlawfulness of gold and silk is for men.

2. ‘In the postures of bowing and prostrating’: The reason for the unlawfulness of reciting the Qur’ān might perhaps have been due to the fact that the bowing and prostrating are the conditions of extreme helplessness and humbleness or debasement before Allāh, Most High. And the Glorious Qur’ān is the Speech of Allāh, which is of immensely lofty rank. It is not suitable or compatible with these states or postures. And Allāh knows best!

5176. It was narrated that ʿAlī said:
“The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ forbade me – but I do not say that he forbade you – from wearing rings of gold, and from wearing Al-Qāsī, and from wearing Al-Mufaddām (garments dyed deep red) and Al-Muʿāṣfar (garments dyed with safflower), and from reciting Qur’ān while bowing.” (Ṣaḥīḥ)
5177. It was narrated from Ibrāhīm that his father told him that he heard ‘Alī say: “The Messenger of Allāh forbade me to recite Qur’ān while bowing and to wear gold and garments dyed with safflower.” (Ṣaḥīḥ)

5178. It was narrated from Ibrāhīm bin ‘Abdullāh bin Hunain that his father said: “I heard ‘Alī say: ‘The Messenger of Allāh forbade me – but I do not say that he forbade you – from wearing gold rings, Al-Qassī, and garments dyed with safflower, and reciting Qur’ān while bowing.’” (Ṣaḥīḥ)

5179. It was narrated that ‘Alī said: “The Messenger of Allāh forbade me from rings of gold, garments dyed with safflower, and wearing Al-Qassī, and from reciting Qur’ān while bowing.” (Ṣaḥīḥ)
5180. It was narrated from Ibn Ḥunain – the freed slave of Ibn ‘Abbās – that ‘Alī said: “The Messenger of Allāh forbade me from wearing Al-Qāsī, garments dyed with safflower, and gold rings.” (Ṣaḥīḥ)

5181. It was narrated from Ibn Ḥunain, the freed slave of ‘Allah, that ‘Alī said: “The Messenger of Allāh forbade me from four: Gold rings, wearing Al-Qāsī, reciting Qur’ān while I am bowing, and from wearing garments dyed with safflower.” (Ṣaḥīḥ)

And Ayyūb was in accord with him, except that he did not mention “freed slave.”

5182. It was narrated from Nāfi’, from a freed slave of Ibn ‘Abbās, that ‘Alī said: “The Messenger of Allāh forbade me from wearing garments dyed with safflower, and from Al-Qāsī, and from gold rings, and that I recite Qur’ān while I am bowing.” (Ṣaḥīḥ)
Chapter 43. The Differences Reported From Yahya Bin Abî Kathîr About That

5183. Ibn  indebis narrated that ‘Ali said to him: “The Messenger of Allâh forbade me (from wearing) garments dyed with safflower, and from gold rings, and from wearing Al-Qassî, and that I recite Qur’ân while I am bowing.” (Saîhîh)

Al-Laîth bin Sa’d contradicted him.

5184. It was narrated from ‘Ali that the Messenger of Allâh forbade (wearing) garments dyed with safflower, and Al-Qassîyeh garments, and reciting Qur’ân while he is bowing. (Saîhîh)

5185. It was narrated that ‘Ali said: “The Messenger of Allâh forbade” and he quoted the same Hadîth. (Saîhîh)

Chapter 44. The Hadîth Of ‘Abîdah

5186. It was narrated that ‘Ali said: “The Messenger of Allâh forbade” and he quoted the same Hadîth.
said: "The Prophet forbade me from Al-Qassî, silk, gold rings, and that I recite Qur'ân while bowing."

Hishâm contradicted him, he did not narrate it in Marfû' form. (Sahîh)

5187. It was narrated from 'Abîdah, from 'Ali, he said: "He forbade red Al-Mayâthîr, wearing Al-Qassî, and gold rings." (Sahîh)

5188. It was narrated that 'Abîdah said: "He forbade red Al-Mayâthîr, and gold rings." (Sahîh)

Chapter 45. The Hadîth Of Abû Hurairah And The Differences Reported From Qâtâdah

5189. It was narrated that Abû Hurairah said: "The Messenger of Allah forbade me to wear gold rings."

Note: All quotes are from The Book of Adornment, page 112.
5190. Hafs Al-Laiṭhī said: “I bear witness that ‘Imrān narrated to us, he said: ‘The Messenger of Allāh forbade wearing silk, and gold rings, and drinking from Al-Ḥanā‘īm.’” (Ṣaḥīḥ)

Comments:
It becomes explicitly clear from these two narrations that the above-quoted things are not specific to ‘Alī.

5191. Abū Sa‘īd Al-Khadrī narrated that a man came from Najrān to the Messenger of Allāh. He was wearing a gold ring, and the Messenger of Allāh turned away from him, and said: “You have come to me with a coal of fire on your hand.” (Ḥasan)

Comments:
‘A coal of fire’: Because gold is unlawful for men and it is the cause of punishment, therefore, the gold ring was called a coal of fire.

5192. It was narrated from Al-Barā’ bin ‘Āzib that a man was sitting with the Prophet and he was wearing a gold ring. The
Messenger of Allâh ﷺ had a stick in his hand and the Prophet ﷺ struck his finger. The man said: “What’s wrong with me, O Messenger of Allâh?” He said: “Why don’t you get rid of this thing that is on your finger?” The man took it and threw it away. The Prophet ﷺ saw him after that and said: “What happened to the ring?” he said: “I threw it away.” He said: “I did not tell you to do that, rather I told you to sell it and benefit from its price.” This Hadîth is Munkar. (Da’îf)

5193. It was narrated from Abû Tha’labah Al-Khushânî that the Prophet ﷺ saw a gold ring on his hand, and he started to smack him with a stick that he had in his hand. When the Prophet ﷺ looked away, he threw it away. He said: “I think that we hurt you or we made you lose money.” (Da’îf)

Yûnus contradicted him; he reported it from Az-Zûhrî, from Abû Idrîs in Mursal form.

5194. Abû Idrîs Al-Khawlânî narrated that a man, among those who met the Prophet ﷺ, wore a gold ring. A similar report. (Da’îf)

Abû ‘Abdur-Rahmân (An-Nasâ’î)
said: The Hadith of Yûnus is more worthy of being correct than the Hadith of An-Nu'mân.

5195. It was narrated from Abû Idrîs Al-Khawwâlînî that the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ saw a man wearing a gold ring. A similar report. (Da'i'f)

5196. It was narrated from Abû Idrîs that the Prophet ﷺ saw a gold ring on a man’s hand and he struck his finger with a stick that he had with him, until he threw it away. (Da'i'f)

5197. Ibrâhîm bin Sa’îd bin Shihâb narrated that the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ... In Mursal form. (Da'i'f)

Abû ‘Abdur-Rahmân (An-Nasâ’î) said: The Mûṣâl narrations are more likely to be correct.
Chapter 46. The Amount Of Silver That May Be Included In A Ring

5198. ‘Abdullâh bin Buraidah narrated from his father that a man came to the Prophet and he was wearing an iron ring. He said: “Why do I see you wearing the jewelry of the people of Hell?” He threw it away, then he came and he was wearing a brass ring. He said: “Why do I notice the stench of idols from you?” So he threw it away, and said: “O Messenger of Allâh, what should I use?” He said: “Silver, but it should not equal a Mithqâl.” (Hasan)

Comments:
1. ‘The ornament of the inhabitants of the Fire (of Hell)’: Because it is with such a thing that they will be shackled. This is the view of some scholars, see also numbers 5208 and 5209, and their chapters.
2. ‘Why do I notice the stench of idols (asnâm) from you?’: Because idols were generally fashioned out of brass in that period of time.
3. ‘Keep it less than one Mithqâl’: A Mithqâl equals 4.235 grams, a little over four grams. Hence, the silver ring too ought to be no more than that weight.

Chapter 47. Description Of The Ring Of The Prophet

5199. It was narrated from Anas that the Prophet wore a ring of silver with an Ethiopian stone (Fâṣṣ), on which was inscribed (the phrase): “Muḥammad Rasûl Allâh
(Muḥammad the Messenger of Allah).” (Ṣaḥīḥ)

Comments:
1. ‘Abyssinian (Habashi)’ means it was fashioned in the Abyssinian (Ethiopian) style, or was made in Abyssinia, because it comes in other narrations that it was of silver only. Some have taken it to mean that its stone (Fuss) was black. But it does not follow that it was assuredly of silver only. Some researchers have established parallelism between the two cases that the Abyssinian stone was on the gold ring, and in the silver ring, the stone was of silver.

2. ‘On it which was engraved’: It is elucidated in other reports that these three terms were not engraved straight in one line or linear, but they were in three lines. The word Allāh was on the top, Rasūl in the middle, and in the bottom Muhammad (May Allāh’s peace and greetings be upon him). This displays his handsomest decorum that despite his name having been occurring first in the sequence, the Prophet ṣaḥ placed his name below and the name of Allāh above.

5200. It was narrated that Anas bin Mālik said: “The Messenger of Allāh ṣaḥ had a ring of silver which he wore on his right hand. It had an Ethiopian stone (Fass), and he used to wear the stone (Fass) next to his palm.” (Ṣaḥīḥ)

Comments:
1. ‘On his right hand’, because for adornment the right hand is appropriate. The left hand is used for cleansing etc. In some narrations, there is mention of the left hand, because in the left hand the ring would be slipped and removed by the right hand. So to speak, it is permissible in both the hands, but priority is given to the right hand. This is because it so occurs in numerous narrations. See Ḥadīth 5257 as well.

2. ‘Its stone toward the inside of his palm’: Because he had not worn it for adornment or beautification. He had worn it for the purpose of sealing. Even so, there is no harm if the stone is moved toward the back of the hand, because there is no evidence for its prohibition.

3. We learn from this that the silver ring also should be worn when some need arises. Not for mere adornment.
5201. It was narrated that Anas bin Mālik said: “The ring of the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ was of silver and its stone (Fass) was made of silver too.” (Ṣaḥīḥ)

5202. It was narrated from Anas that the Prophet’s ring was made of silver and its stone (Fass) was made of silver too. (Ṣaḥīḥ)

5203. It was narrated that Anas said: “The ring of the Prophet ﷺ was made of silver and its stone (Fass) was made of silver too.” (Ṣaḥīḥ)

5204. It was narrated that Anas said: “The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ wanted to write to the Romans, but they (the Companions) said: ‘They do not read any letter unless it has a seal.’ So he took a ring of silver, and it is as if I can see its whiteness
on his hand, and on it were engraved (the words): "Muḥammad Rasūl Allāh (Muḥammad the Messenger of Allāh)." (Ṣaḥīḥ)  

5205. It was narrated that Anas said: "The Messenger of Allāh  delayed ʿIshā prayer one night, until half the night had passed, then he came out and led us in prayer. And it is as if I can see the whiteness of his silver ring on his hand." (Ṣaḥīḥ)

Chapter 48. Where The Ring Should Be Worn On The Hand, Mentioning The Hadīth Of ‘Ālī And ‘Abdullāh Bin Jāfar

5206. Ibn Wahab narrated from Sulaimān – and he is Ibn Bilāl – from Sharīk – and he is Ibn Abī Namr – from Ibrāhīm Ibn ‘Abdullāh bin Ḥunain, from his father, from ‘Alī; Sharīk said: “And Abū Salamah informed me” – That the Prophet  used to wear his ring on his right hand.[1] (Ḥasan)

[1] That is, the Hadīth was narrated from ‘Alī, and one of the narrators, Sharīk also heard it from Abū Salamah bin ‘Abdur-Raḥmān bin ‘Awf.
It was narrated from 'Abdullāh bin Ja'far that the Prophet used to wear his ring on his right hand. (Sahih)

Chapter 49. Wearing An Iron Ring With Silver Twisted Around It

Iyās bin Al-Hārith bin Al-Mu'āqiqb narrated that his grandfather Mu'āqiqb said: “The ring of the Prophet was made of iron with silver twisted around it.” He said: “And sometimes it was on my hand.” And Mu'āqiqb was the keeper of the ring of the Messenger of Allāh. (Hasan)

Chapter 50. Wearing A Brass Ring

It was narrated from Abū Sa'eed Al-Khudrī: “A man came

Comments:
(For details, please see Hadith 5200)
from Al-Bahrain to the Prophetﷺ and greeted him with Ṣalām, but he did not return his greeting. He was wearing a gold ring on his hand, and was wearing a silken Jubbah. He took them off, then he greeted him with Ṣalām, and he returned his greeting. Then he said: ‘O Messenger of Allâh, I came to you just now, and you turned away from me.’ He said: ‘You had a coal of fire on your hand.’ He said: ‘Then I have brought many coals.’ He said: ‘What you have brought with you is no better for us than the stones of Al-Harrah, but it is a temporary convenience of this world.’ He said: ‘What should I use for a ring?’ He said: ‘A ring of iron or silver or brass.’” (Hasan)

Comments:
1. ‘A coal of fire’ means the gold ring which would turn into fire on the Day of Judgment.
2. ‘I have brought many coals’ means if gold is a coal of fire, then I have brought a lot of gold.
3. ‘The stones of Al-Harrah’: Gold becomes a coal of fire for the one who uses it as adornment and beautification, considering it a thing of valued beauty. But the one who does not give importance to gold, nor is it one’s objective to acquire gold, and he merely fulfills the needs of his life by means of gold, and if one does not utilize it for adornment and beautification, gold would not become fire for such a person. Every Muslim should keep this statement of Allâh’s Messengerﷺ before them.
4. A stony ground is called Al-Harrah. In the east and the west, of Madinah, there are two spacious stony grounds which are called the Harratayn (the two Harrahs), containing black volcanic rock!
5. It becomes clear from this Tradition that it is permissible to wear a ring of iron and brass also.
5210. It was narrated that Anas said: “The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ came out wearing a silver ring. He said: ‘Whoever wants to make a ring like this, let him do so, but do not put the same inscription.’”

(Sâhîh)

Comments:

‘On the blessed signet ring of the Prophet ﷺ: ‘Muhammadan Rasûlullah’ was engraved, which in reality was his seal. If other people were also given permission to use this engraving, no distinction would have remained in this signet ring, and deception might have occurred. The entire objective of fashioning the signet-ring might have been defeated.

5211. It was narrated that Anas bin Mâlik said: “The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ put on a ring, and he had some words inscribed on it. He said: ‘We have put on a ring and have had some words engraved on it; no one of you should copy this inscription.’” Then Anas said: “It is as if I can see its whiteness on his hand.” (Sâhîh)
Chapter 51. The Words Of The Prophet ﷺ: "Do Not Engrave Arabic (Words) On Your Rings"

5212. It was narrated that Anas bin Mâlik said: “The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said: ‘Do not be so close to the Mushrikîn that you can benefit from the light of their fires, and do not engrave Arabic (words) on your rings.’” (Da’îf)

Comments:
1. ‘The fires of the polytheists’ means ‘do not reside among polytheists’. So to speak, the Muslims ought to live separate from the unbelievers, and so far away from them that the fires lit by the polytheists do not come into sight; while fire could be seen from miles away particularly in the desert region.
2. ‘Arabic phrasing or script’: While some scholars consider this to be a general prohibition of inscriptions with Arabic on rings, the real or the root purpose is the engravings of the Prophetic ring shall not be copied. It was in the Arabic script. No inscription other than this was well-known in the Arabic script during that period of time. Otherwise, absolute engraving of any Arabic script or inscription is not forbidden.

Chapter 52. Prohibition Of Wearing The Ring On The Forefinger

5213. It was narrated that Abû Burdah said: ‘Âlî said: “The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said to me: ‘O ‘Âlî, ask Allâh for guidance and steadfastness,’ and he forbade me from placing a ring on this one and
The preferred practice is to wear the signet ring on the little finger (Khinsar). It is considered improper to wear a signet ring on the index finger (Sabbāba) and the middle finger (Al-Wūsta). See also No. 5198.

5214. It was narrated that ‘Alī said: “The Messenger of Allāh forbid me to wear a ring on this one and this one,” meaning the forefinger and middle finger.[2]
And this is the wording of Ibn Al-Muthanna. (Sahih)

5215. It was narrated that ‘Alī said: “The Messenger of Allāh said to me: ‘Say: O Allāh, guide me and make me steadfast,’ and he forbade me to put a ring on this one and this one” – and Bishr (one of the narrators) pointed to his forefinger and middle finger. And ‘Āṣim said: “One of the two of them.”[3] (Sahih)

1. The one pointing is one of the narrators.
2. The statement: “meaning” is from one of the narrators.
3. And all of these are narrated by ‘Āṣim.
Comments:

‘Steadfast’: In Arabic, the term used in No. 5213 is As-Sadād. It lexically signifies a right state; appropriate direction, having or taking a right direction or tendency, tending toward the right point or object, etc. That is why this signification was given priority or precedence.

Chapter 53. Taking Off One’s Ring When Entering Al-Khalā’ (The Area In Which One Relieves Oneself)

5216. It was narrated from Anas that when entering the Khalā’, the Messenger of Allāh ἡ would take off his ring. (Da’if)

5217. It was narrated that Ibn ‘Umar said: “The Messenger of Allāh ἡ put on a ring of gold and put its stone toward his palm. Then the people started to wear rings of gold. Then the Messenger of Allāh ἡ threw away his ring and said: ‘I will never wear it again,’ and the people threw away their rings.” (Sahih)

Comments:

On the signet ring of the Prophet ἡ was engraved the sacred name of Allāh, Most High, and his own blessed name. Al-Khalā’ is a place where one goes to relieve oneself. To carry, therefore, such sacred words, while relieving oneself, is not proper. Likewise, to carry inside the toilet the Qur’ānic Verses and the Prophetic Traditions in written forms would be forbidden.
Comments:
See Nos. 5167 and 5292. Apparently, there does not seem to be any relevance of this narration to the chapter concerned. Perhaps the author (May Allāh’s mercy be upon him) is indicating by this, that he has forgotten to make the new chapter here, or it is the allusion that the previous narration 5216 is not correct.

5218. It was narrated from Ibn ‘Umar that the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ put on a ring of gold and put its stone (Fass) toward his palm. Then the people started to wear rings, and the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ discarded it and said: “I will never wear it again.” (Sahih)

5219. It was narrated that Ibn ‘Umar said: “The Prophet ﷺ used to wear a ring of gold, then he discarded it, and put on a ring of silver on which was engraved (the words): ‘Muḥammad Rasūl Allāh.’ He said: ‘No one else should engrave his ring with an inscription like this ring of mine.’ Then he put the stone toward the palm of his hand.” (Sahih)

5220. It was narrated from Ibn ‘Umar that the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ wore a ring of gold for three days, and when his Companions saw it, gold rings became popular. Then he threw it away and we did not realize what he had done. Then he ordered that a ring of silver be
made, and that (the words): “Muhammad Rasūl Allāh” be engraved on it. It remained on the hand of the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ until he died, then on the hand of Abū Bakr until he died, then on the hand of ‘Umar until he died. Then (it remained) on the hand of Uthmān for the first six years of his duties, but when he had to write many letters, he gave it to a man from among Anṣār who used to seal letters with it. Then the Anṣārī went out to a well belonging to Uthmān and the ring fell. They looked for it but could not find it. He ordered that a similar ring be made and engraved (the words): “Muhammad Rasūl Allāh” on it. (Hasan)

Comments:
1. The blessed signet ring of the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ remained after him in the hands of the Rightly Guided Caliphs or Khulafa by way of necessity and blessedness; not by way of owned property. When that signet ring was lost, the period of tribulations and corruption started. In other words, a thing of great blessing was lifted. It was, after all, the signet ring of the Seal of the Prophets.
2. ‘Many letters’: Hence, he encountered a hardship in sealing them again and again. He, therefore, appointed an Ansārī to set the seals.
3. ‘In the well’: The name of this well was Aris (the well of Aris: Bir’ Aris). In order to search for the signet ring, the well was emptied of its water; every inch of the well was combed, but the signet ring was not to be found.
4. ‘He ordered that a similar ring be made’: Although Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ had forbidden people from engraving them. But this signet ring was fashioned as a replacement of the original ring of the Prophet ﷺ. Besides, the Prophet’s motive was to close the door of deception and false imitation. But due to the loss of the original, this apprehension does not remain in the event of its replication. Dubiousness and deception would have occurred, had there been so many signet rings bearing the same engraving. So to speak, the basis of commandments are their objectives or goals, not the apparent words. And this principle is worth retention.
5221. It was narrated from Ibn Umar that the Messenger of Allâh used to put on a ring of gold, and he used to wear its stone (Fasî) next to his palm. Then the people started to wear rings of gold. Then the Messenger of Allâh discarded it, and the people discarded their rings. Then he acquired a ring of silver with which he used to seal letters, but he did not wear it. (Hasan)

Comments:
Concerning the narrations of the chapter, please turn to Hadîth 5167.

Chapter 54. Small Bells

5222. It was narrated that Abû Bakr bin Abî Shaikh said: “I was sitting with Sâlim when a caravan belonging to Umm Al-Banîn passed by us, and they had bells with them. Sâlim narrated to Nâfî’ from his father, that the Prophet said: ‘The angels do not accompany a caravan that has small bells with them.’ How often do you see small bells with these people.” (Sahîh)

Comments:
For the reasoning behind this, see No. 5548 in Sahîh Muslim: “Bells are the wind instruments of the Shaîtan.”
5223. It was narrated that Abû Bakr bin Mûsâ said: "I was with Sâlim bin ‘Abdullâh when Sâlim narrated from his father, that the Prophet ﷺ said: 'The angels do not accompany groups of people who have small bells with them.'" (Sahîh)

5223B. It was narrated from Sâlim, from his father, who attributed it to the Prophet ﷺ: "The angels do not accompany groups of people who have small bells with them." (Sahîh)

5224. Umm Salamah, the wife of the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ, said: "I heard the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ say: 'The angels do not enter a house in which there is a small bell, or a bell, and the angels do not accompany groups of people who have bells with them.'" (Sahîh)

5225. It was narrated from Abû Al-Alâwâs that his father said: "I was sitting with the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ and he saw that I was
dressed in scruffy clothes. He said: ‘Do you have any wealth?’ I said: ‘Yes, O Messenger of Allâh, all kinds of wealth.’ He said: ‘If Allâh gives you wealth then let its effect be seen on you.’” (Sahîh)

5226. It was narrated from Abû Al-Âhwas, from his father, that he came to the Prophet wearing shabby clothes. The Prophet said to him: “Do you have any wealth?” He said: “Yes, all kinds of wealth.” He said: “What kinds of wealth?” He said: “Allâh has given me camels, cattle, sheep, horses and slaves.” He said: “If Allâh has given you wealth, then let the effect of Allâh’s blessing and generosity be seen on you.” (Sahîh)

Comments:

The appropriate dress is the one which avoids miserliness, extravagance, nudity, ostentation, and arrogance. Unnatural affectation is blameworthy in the matter of dress that plunges a man into self-imposed hardship. Wearing silk and letting the dress hang below the ankles, for men, is Harâm, irrespective of with whatever intention it is done, although a legal excuse or compulsion legitimized by the Divine law merits consideration.
The Book Of Adornment
From *Al-Mujtaba*

*Al-Mujtaba* is the abridgement of *Sunan Al-Kubra*. Hence, the majority of the narrations of *Al-Mujtaba* occur in *Sunan Al-Kubra* under the Book of Adornment. Several of the forthcoming narrations have preceded.

Chapter 55. The *Fitrah*

5227. It was narrated that Abû Hurairah said: “The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said to me: 'Five things are from the *Fitrah*: Trimming the mustache, plucking the armpit hairs, clipping the nails, shaving the pubes and circumcision.'” (*Sahîh*)

Comments:
(See Hadîth 5043).

Chapter 56. Trimming The Mustache And Letting The Beard Grow

7869. It was narrated from Ibn 'Umar that the Prophet ﷺ said: “Trim the mustache and let the beard grow.” (*Sahîh*)

Comments:
(See Hadîth 15).
Chapter 57. Shaving Boys' Heads

5229. It was narrated that ‘Abdullâh bin Ja’far said: “The Messenger of Allâh سلم stayed away from the family of Ja’far (when he died) for three days, then he came to them, and said: ‘Do not weep for my brother after today.’ Then he said: ‘Call my brother’s sons to me.’ We were brought like little chicks, and he said: ‘Call the barber for me.’ Then he ordered that our heads be shaved.” (Sahîh)

Comments:
1. Ja’far was the elder brother of ‘Alî, and was the cousin brother of the Prophet سلم. He embraced Islam in its early period. He emigrated to Abyssinia; then he emigrated to Al-Madinah. He was martyred in the expedition of Muta. May Allâh be pleased with him and he be with Him.
2. 'Do not weep': Crying was not absolutely forbidden, but it was forbidden by way of mourning, as mourning is observed for three days when someone dies. Condolers arrive intermittently and the sound of crying soars sporadically; otherwise, tears may surge at anytime. No one has control over tears.
3. There is no disagreement concerning the shaving of the head, provided the entire head is shaved. No locks or tassels of hair should be left unshaven. (See the following narration).

Chapter 58. Mentioning The Prohibition Of Shaving Part Of A Boy’s Head And Leaving Part

5230. It was narrated from Ibn ‘Umar that the Prophet ﷺ forbade Al-Qaza’ (shaving part of the head and leaving part). (Sahîh)
Comments:

Al-Qaza' signifies shaving parts of the head while leaving the rest unshaven.
(See No. 5051)

5231. Ibn 'Umar said: "I heard the Messenger of Allâh مصلي forbidding Al-Qaza' (shaving part of the head and leaving part)." (Saḥīḥ)

5232. It was narrated that Ibn 'Umar said: "The Messenger of Allâh مصلي forbade Al-Qaza' (shaving part of the head and leaving part)." (Saḥīḥ)

5233. It was narrated from Ibn 'Umar that the Prophet مصلي forbade Al-Qaza' (shaving part of the head and leaving part)." (Saḥīḥ)

Chapter 59. Wearing One's Hair Long

5234. It was narrated that Al-Barâ' said: "The Messenger of Allâh مصلي was a man of average height with broad shoulders, a thick beard and a reddish complexion, and his hair..."
The Book Of Adornment...

came down to his earlobes. I saw him in a red Hullah and I never saw anything more handsome than him.” (Sahih)

Comments:
1. Concerning the details about the blessed hair of the beloved Prophet ﷺ, please see Hadith 5056, 5065.
2. ‘Red Hullah’: The term Hullah is used for two sheets made of the same cloth. One of them was fastened as a loin-cloth, while the other was draped on the upper part of the body. It is said that his Hullah had red in its pattern, not that it was entirely red, and Allâh knows best.

5235. It was narrated that Al-Barâ’ said: “I never saw any long haired man in a Hullah who was more handsome than the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ, and he had hair that came down to his shoulders.” (Sahih)

Comments:
(For detail, please turn to Hadith 5065)

5236. It was narrated from Anas that the hair of the Prophet ﷺ came halfway down his ears. (Sahih)

Comments:
(See Hadith 5064)

5237. It was narrated from Anas that the hair of the Prophet ﷺ came down to his shoulders. (Sahih)
Chapter 60. Calming Down
One’s Hair

5238. It was narrated that Jābir bin ‘Abdullāh said: “The Prophet came to us and saw a man with wild hair. He said: ‘Could this man not find anything with which to calm down his hair?’” (Ṣaḥīḥ)

Comments:
Disheveled hair of the beard or the head presents an untidy look. Hence, it is essential for a Muslim that he keeps his hair in order, takes good care of it and combing it periodically.

5239. It was narrated that Abū Qatādah said that he had long thick hair. “He asked the Prophet (about it) and he told him to take care of it and comb it every day.”[1] (Ḍaʿḥī)

Comments:
(See nos. 5241, 5057, 5061).

[1] In Sunan Al-Kubra, after the narration before this one, the author indicated its weakness as well. In No. 2252 of Sīlat Al-Aḥadīth, As-Ṣaḥīḥah, Shaikh Al-Albānī graded the version Ṣaḥīḥ that says: “If you grow hair, then honor it” without mentioning of combing every day.
Chapter 61. Parting The Hair

5240. It was narrated from Ibn ‘Abbás that the Messenger of Allâh used to let his hair hang down (without a parting) and the Mushrikûn used to part their hair. The Messenger of Allâh liked to act in accordance with the People of the Book, in matters where no specific command had been given to him. Then the Messenger of Allâh parted his hair after that. (Sahîh)

Translation: After the Messenger had concluded the narration of his story, he made the people of the Book part their hair. Then, the Messenger of Allâh made the people of the Book part their hair. Then the Messenger of Allâh parted his hair. After that, the Messenger of Allâh parted his hair.

Comment:
1. Allâh’s Messenger’s accord with the People of the Book in such matters was in order to reconcile their hearts. They might perhaps incline toward Islam. But when he realized that conformance with them is also not beneficial, he gave that up. The mention of “Where no specific command had been given...” and a Mursal version recorded by ‘Abdur-Razzâq, saying: “Then he was ordered to part...” lead some to consider that it was revealed that he should now part his hair. While most scholars do not interpret the ruling based on that Mursal narration, and consider it lawful to part or not.

Chapter 62. Combing One’s Hair

5241. It was narrated from ‘Abdullâh bin Buraidah that a man from among the Companions of the Prophet who was called ‘Ubaid said: “The Messenger of Allâh used to forbid too much of Al-İrfâh.” Ibn Buraidah was asked what too much of Al-İrfâh

[1] The general meaning of which is “luxuriousness.”
meant, and he said: “It includes combing the hair.” \(\textit{Sahih}\)

Comments: 
(Please see Nos. 5061, 5057, 5239)

Chapter 63. Starting On The Right When Combing The Hair

5242. It was narrated from ’Āishah that the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ liked to start on the right whenever possible; when purifying himself, when putting on his shoes, and when combing his hair. \(\textit{Sahih}\)

Comments:  
(Please see \textit{Hadith} 5062)

Chapter 64. The Command To Dye The Hair

5243. Abū Hurairah narrated that the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ said: “The Jews and the Christians do not dye their hair, so be different from them.” \(\textit{Sahih}\)

Comments:  
(Please see \textit{Hadith} 5072 and 5077 for details)

5244. It was narrated that Jābir said: “Abū Qubāfah was brought to the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ and his head and beard were white like the
Chapter 65. Dyeing The Beard Yellow

5245. It was narrated that 'Ubaid said: “I saw Ibn 'Umar dyeing his beard yellow and I asked him about that. He said: “I saw the Prophet dye his beard yellow.”” (Sahih)

Comments:
(For details, vide Hadith 5079)

Chapter 66. Dyeing The Beard Yellow With Wars And Saffron

5246. It was narrated that Ibn 'Umar said: “The Prophet used to wear Sibtiyyah sandals[2] and dye his beard yellow with Wars and saffron.” And Ibn 'Umar used to do that. (Hasan)

[1] A white fruit from a type of plant.
Comments:
1. ‘As-Sabtiyyah sandals’: Sandals made out of tanned hide are called so. They have no hair on them. Among the Arabs, there was also a custom of wearing leather sandals having hair upon them. Compared with them, the Sabtiyyah sandals (or shoes) were considered expensive. There is no harm in wearing them.
2. Wars and saffron are colored perfumes. Their use by men upon their bodies is not appropriate, although hair could be tinted with them. So far as the Prophet’s tinting his beard is concerned, its detail could be seen in Hadith 5086, 5089, and 5118. (Wars is a certain plant of yellow color, resembling sesame with which one dyes - Lane p. 2986)

Chapter 67. Adding Extensions To The Hair

5247. It was narrated that Humaid bin ‘Abdur-Rahmân said: “I heard Mu‘âwiyyah say, when he was on the Minbar in Al-Madinah, and he brought out a hairpiece from his sleeve: ‘O people of Al-Madinah, where are your knowledgeable ones? I heard the Messenger of Allah forbid such things as this, and he said: “The Children of Israel were destroyed when their women started to wear things like this.’” (Sahîh)

Comments: ‘Where are your knowledgeable ones?’ Because most of the Companions were gone at that time. See Hadith 5095.
do this except the Jews. The Messenger of Allāh  heard of it and he called it “giving a false impression.” (Ṣaḥīḥ)

Chapter 68. Hair Extensions  
Made Of Cloth

5249. It was narrated that Muʿāwiyyah said: “O people, the Prophet  forbade you to give false impressions. He brought a piece of black cloth and threw it in front of them and said: ‘This is what women are putting on their heads then covering it.’” (Ṣaḥīḥ)

5250. It was narrated from Muʿāwiyyah that the Messenger of Allāh  forbade giving a false impression, and the false impression of a woman when she adds extra hair to her head. (Ṣaḥīḥ)

Comments:  
(See No. 5095).

Chapter 69. Cursing The Woman Who Fixes Hair Extensions

5251. It was narrated from Ibn ‘Umar that the Messenger of Allāh  cursed the woman who affixes
hair extensions. *(Sahih)*

**Comments:**

‘Allah’s Messenger cursed’ means he informed that a person who does this is cursed. See also No. 5098.

**Chapter 70. Cursing The Woman Who Fixes Hair Extensions And The One Who Has That Done**

5252. It was narrated from Asma that a woman came to the Messenger of Allah and said: “O Messenger of Allah, a daughter of mine is going to get married. She got sick and her hair fell out. Is there any sin on me if I give her hair extensions?” He said: “Allah has cursed the woman who affixes hair extensions and the one who has that done.” *(Sahih)*

**Comments:**

(See No. 5097).

**Chapter 71. Cursing The Woman Who Does Tattoos And The One Who Has That Done**

5253. It was narrated that Ibn ‘Umar said: “The Messenger of Allah cursed the woman who affixes hair extensions and the one who has that done, and the woman who does tattoos and the one who has that done.” *(Sahih)*

**Comments:**

(See No. 5098).
Chapter 72. Cursing *Al-Mutanammiṣāt* (The Women That Have Their Eyebrows Plucked)[1][ And Who Have Their Teeth Separated[2]

5254. It was narrated that 'Abdullāh said: “May Allāh curse *Al-Mutanammiṣāt* and who have their teeth separated. Shall I not curse those whom the Messenger of Allāh cursed?” (*Sahih*)

Comments:
(See Hadīth 5102 and 5110)

5255. It was narrated that ‘Abdullāh said: “The Messenger of Allāh cursed the women who do tattoos, those who have their teeth separated and *Al-Mutanammiṣāt* who change the creation of Allāh, the Mighty and Sublime.” (*Sahih*)

5256. It was narrated that ‘Abdullāh said: “May Allāh curse *Al-Mutanammiṣāt* and their teeth separated, who have tattoos done, changing the creation of Allāh.” A woman came to him and said: “Are you the one who said such-and-

---

[1] *Al-Mutanammiṣāt*: Most of them say it refers to women who have the hair on their eyebrows plucked, others say it includes the face, as has preceded, and others say it includes more than that, while some allow removing some of the hair by other means, since *Nāmisah* means similar to plucking.

[2] That is, to make a gap between two of them.
such?” He said: “Why should I not say what the Messenger of Allâh ḥ said?” (Sâhih)

5257. It was narrated that Ibrâhîm said: “Abdullâh used to say: ‘May Allâh curse the women who have tattoos done and Al-Mutânâmînîsât, and have the women who have their teeth separated. Should I not curse those whom the Messenger of Allâh ḥ cursed?’” (Sâhih)

Chapter 73. Using Saffron

5258. It was narrated that Anas said: “The Messenger of Allâh ḥ forbade men to use saffron.” (Sâhih)

Comments:
(See No. 2707).

5259. It was narrated that Anas said: “The Messenger of Allâh ḥ forbade men to use saffron on their skin.” (Hasan)

تخريج: [صحح] وله شواهد، انظر، ح: 6559.

تخريج: [صحح] تقدم، ح: 5103.

تخريج: [صحح] تقدم، ح: 7458.

تخريج: [صحح] تقدم، ح: 7277.

Chapter 74. Perfume

5260. It was narrated that Anas bin Mālik said: "If perfume was brought to the Prophet ﷺ, he would not refuse it." (Sahih)

5261. It was narrated from Abū Hurairah that the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ said: "Whoever is offered perfume, let him not refuse it, for it is easy to carry, and smells good." (Sahih)

Comments:
1. The narration implies that one should not feel any shame in giving or accepting gifts even though they be small. Likewise, no gift should be considered trivial; nor should it be rejected.

2. ‘It has a pleasant smell’, because perfume or fragrance is a thing of Paradise. In one narration, there is elucidation that perfume has come from Paradise.

5262. It was narrated that Zainab, the wife of ‘Abdullāh, said: "The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ said: 'If one of you (women) wants to attend 'Ishā' (prayer). Let her not touch any perfume.'" (Sahih)
Comments:
See No. 5132.

5263. It was narrated from Busr bin Sa'eed that Zainab, the wife of 'Abdullâh, told him that the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said to her:
"If you go out to 'Ishâ' then do not touch any perfume." (Sahîh)

5264. It was narrated from Zainab Ath-Thaqafiyyah that the Prophet ﷺ said: "Any one of you (women) who wants to go out to the Masjid should not go near any perfume." (Sahîh)

Comments:
(See No. 5132).

5265. It was narrated from Abû Hurairah that the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said: "Any woman who has been perfumed with incense should not attend 'Ishâ' the later with us." (Sahîh)

Comments:
(For details, see Hadîth 5131)
Chapter 75. The Best Of Perfume

5266. It was narrated that Abī Sa‘eed said: “The Prophet mentioned a woman who filled her ring with musk and said: ‘That is the best of perfume.’” (Sahih)

Comments:
(See No. 1906).

Chapter 76. Prohibition On Wearing Gold

5267. It was narrated from Abū Mūsā that the Messenger of Allāh said: “Allāh has permitted silk and gold to the females of my Ummah, and has forbidden them to the males.” (Sahih)

Comments:
(See No. 5151).

Chapter 77. Prohibition On Wearing Gold Rings

5268. It was narrated that Ibn ‘Abbās said: “I was forbidden to wear red garments and gold rings, and to recite Qur’ān when bowing.” (Sahih)
Comments:

'Red garments': For men, wearing entirely red clothes is prohibited. If there are only red fringes or borders, then there is no harm. The absolute red is not meant, perhaps what is meant is Mu'asfar or the like, See Hadith 5175.

5269. It was narrated that ‘Ali said: “The Prophet forbade me from wearing gold rings, reciting Qur’ân while I am bowing, and from Al-Qassi, and garments dyed with safflower.” (Sahih)

Comments:

(See Hadith 5168, 5169, 5175)

5270. ‘Ali said: “The Messenger of Allâh forbade me from wearing gold rings, and from garments of Al-Qassi, and garments dyed with safflower, and reciting Qur’ân while bowing.” (Sahih)

5271. It was narrated that ‘Ali said: “The Messenger of Allâh forbade me from reciting Qur’ân while bowing.” (Sahih)
5272. ‘Ali said: “The Messenger of Allâh forbade me from wearing garments dyed with safflower, and from gold rings, and from wearing Al-Qassiyah, and that I recite Qur’ân while I am bowing.” (Sahîh)

5273. It was narrated that ‘Ali said: “The Messenger of Allâh forbade me from four things: Wearing garments dyed with safflower, and from wearing gold rings, and from wearing Al-Qassiyah garments, and reciting Qur’ân while I am bowing.” (Sahîh)

5274. It was narrated from Ibn Hunain, that ‘Ali said that the Messenger of Allâh forbade garments dyed with safflower, and from silk, and reciting Qur’ân while he is bowing, and from gold rings. (Sahîh)
5275. It was narrated from Abû Hurairah that the Prophet forbade gold rings. (Sahîh)

It was narrated from Abû Hurairah that the Prophet forbade gold rings. (Sahîh)

Comments:
(See No. 5175.)

Chapter 78. Description Of The Ring Of The Prophet And Its Inscription

5276. It was narrated that Abû Hurairah said: The Messenger of Allah forbade gold rings. (Sahîh)

It was narrated from Abû Hurairah that the Messenger of Allah forbade gold rings. (Sahîh)

5277. It was narrated that Ibn 'Umar said: “The Messenger of Allah took a ring of gold and put it on, and the people started to wear gold rings too. The Messenger of Allah said: ‘I used to wear this ring, but I will never wear it again.’ Then he threw it away, and the people threw their rings away.” (Sahîh)
5278. It was narrated that Ibn 'Umar said: “The inscription on the ring of the Messenger of Allāh was: ‘Muḥammad Rasūl Allāh (Muḥammad the Messenger of Allāh).’” (Saḥīḥ)

Comments:
(See No. 5167).

5279. It was narrated from Anas that the Prophet put on a silver ring with an Ethiopian stone on which the inscription was: “Muḥammad Rasūl Allāh.” (Saḥīḥ)

Comments:
(Please see Hadīth 5199 for details)

5280. It was narrated that Anas said: “The Messenger of Allāh wanted to write to the Romans, and they (the Companions) said: ‘They do not read any letter unless it has a seal.’ So he took a ring of silver and it is as if I can see its whiteness on his hand, and engraved on it (were the words): ‘Muḥammad Rasūl Allāh.’” (Saḥīḥ)

5281. It was narrated from Anas that the Messenger of Allāh put on a ring of silver with an
5282. It was narrated that Anas said: “The ring of the Prophet was of silver, and its stone was made of silver too.” (Sahih)

Comments:

The detail concerning the stone of the Prophet’s ring has preceded earlier in Hadith 5199.

5283. It was narrated that Anas said: “The Messenger of Allâh said: ‘We have had a ring made with an inscription, and no one else should copy this inscription.’” (Sahih)

Comments:

(See Hadith 5210 to 5220).

Chapter 79. Where The Ring Is To Be Worn

5284. It was narrated from Anas that the Prophet had a ring and he said: “We have had a ring made with an inscription, and no one else should copy this inscription.” It is as if I can see its shining on the
The Book Of Adornment...

little finger of the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ. (Sahîh)

Comments:

‘On the little finger’: That is to say, Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ used to wear the signet ring on the little finger of his left hand.

5285. It was narrated from Anas that the Prophet ﷺ used to wear his ring on his right hand. (Sahîh)

5286. It was narrated that Anas said: “It is as if I can see the whiteness of the Prophet’s ring on his left finger.” (Sahîh)

Comments:

The details pertaining to the right and the left has preceded above. Please turn to Hadîth 5200.

5287. Thâbit narrated that they asked Anas about the ring of the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ and he said: “It is as if I can see the shining of his silver ring, and he raised his right little finger.” (Sahîh)
It was narrated that Abū Burdah said: "I heard 'Alī say: 'The Prophet of Allāh forbade me to wear a ring on the forefinger and middle finger.'" (Sahih)

Comments:
(See No. 5214).

5289. It was narrated that 'Alī said: "The Messenger of Allāh forbade me to wear (a ring) on this finger," and it was on the middle finger and the one next to it. (Sahih)

Comments:
(See No. 5214).

Chapter 80. Where The Stone (Fass) Is To Be Worn

5290. It was narrated that Ibn 'Umar said: "The Prophet wore a ring of gold, then he discarded it and wore a ring of silver on which were engraved (the words) 'Muḥammad Rasūl Allāh.' Then he said: 'No one should copy this inscription of mine.' And he wore the stone (Fass) toward his palm." (Sahih)

Comments:
(See No. 5214).
Chapter 81. Discarding A Ring And Not Wearing It Anymore

5291. It was narrated from Ibn 'Abbás that the Messenger of Allâh took a ring and put it on, then he said: “This distracted me from you all day, shifting my gaze from it to you (and back again).” Then he threw it away. (Sahîh)

Comments:
(See No. 5219).

5292. It was narrated from Ibn 'Umar that the Messenger of Allâh had a ring made of gold and he used to wear it with the stone (Fâsâ) against his palm, and the people did likewise. Then he sat on the Minbar and said: “I used to wear this ring and put its stone (Fâsâ) on the inside.” Then he threw it away and said: “By Allâh, I will never wear it again.” And the people threw their rings away. (Sahîh)

Comments:
It appears it was a gold ring. Its description has preceded above too, because of it, the Prophet's attention was distracted. He, therefore, did not think it proper to continue to wear it. From this, it transpires that one should not wear a ring merely for the sake of adornment. See Hadith 5277.
Comments:
(Please see Hadith 5167)

5293. It was narrated from Anas that he saw a ring of silver on the hand of the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ one day, and the people made and wore similar rings. Then the Prophet ﷺ threw his ring away and the people threw their rings away too. (Ṣaḥīh)

Comments:
From the apparent phrasing of the narration, it seems that a silver ring was thus cast away. But this impression is not correct. In all the other narrations, it comes unequivocally clear that the ring which was thrown away was of gold. The signet ring of silver was made later.

5294. It was narrated from Ibn ‘Umar that the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ put on a ring of gold, and he used to wear its stone (Fass) next to his palm. Then the people started to wear rings of gold too. Then the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ threw it away, and the people threw their rings away too. Then he took a ring of silver and he used to seal letters with it, but he did not wear it. (Ḥasan)

Comments:
‘Did not wear it’ means he did not wear it all the time. He rather wore it when needed. We learn from this that it is not appropriate for men to wear a ring merely for adornment.

5295. It was narrated from Ibn ‘Umar that the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ put on a ring of gold and he used to wear its stone (Fass) next to his palm. Then the people started to wear rings too. Then the
Messenger of Allâh ﷺ threw it away and said: “I will never wear it again.” Then the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ took a ring of silver, and wore it on his hand. Then it was on the hand of Abû Bakr, then on the hand of ‘Umar, then on the hand of ‘Uthmân, until it was lost in the well of Arîs. (Sahîh)

Chapter 82. Mentioning Clothes Which It Is Recommended To Wear, And Those Which Is Disliked To Wear

5296. It was narrated from Abû Al-‘Alâ Al-Ahwâṣ that his father said: “I entered upon the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ and he saw me looking scruffy. I said: ‘Do you have anything?’ He said: ‘Yes, Allâh has given me all kinds of wealth.’ He said: ‘If you have wealth, let it be seen on you.’” (Sahîh)

Chapter 83. Prohibition On Wearing Sirā[1]

5297. It was narrated from ‘Umar bin Al-Khaṭṭâb that he saw a Hullah of Sirā silk being offered for sale at the door of the Masjid. I


(المنجم ١١٠٣) - ذكر اللَّه عَزَّ وَجَلَّ في نَبِيٍّ السيَّارِ (التحفة ٨١)

The Book Of Adornment...

Chapter 84. Concession
Allowing Women To Wear Sirâ'

5298. It was narrated that Anas said: “I saw Zainab, the daughter of the Prophet, wearing a Qamis of Sirâ’.” (Da'if)

5299. It was narrated from Anas bin Mâlik that he saw Umm Kalthûm, the daughter of the Messenger of Allâh, wearing a Burdah of Sirâ’ silk, and Sirâ’ is a

الخطاب: أَنَّهُ رَأَى حَلَّةٍ سَيِّئَةٍ فَبَعَثَ بَيْنَ يَدَيْ بَابٍ المَسْجِدِ، فَقَالَ: يَا رَسُولُ اللَّهِ! أَمَّا الْمَشْرَيْنُ، حَذَا تَپُّومُ الْجَمِيعَةِ وَلَيْلَةَهُ. إِذَا قَامُوا عَلَیْهِ، قَالَ رَسُولُ اللَّهِ: إِنَّمَا يُلْسِنُ هَذِهِ مِنْ لَا حَلَاقٍ لَّهُ فِي الْآخِرَةِ. قَالَ: أَمِنُّ رَسُولُ اللَّهِ بَعْدُ مِنْهَا يَخْلُقُ فَكْسَانِي مِنْهَا حَلَّةً، قَالَ: يَا رَسُولُ اللَّهِ! كَمْ سَوِيَكُمَا وَقَدْ قُلْتُ فِيهَا مَا قُلْتُ حَلَّةً كَمْ أَشَكَّكُمَا، إِنَّمَا كَمْسَكُكُمَا لِتَخْصُوْنَهَا أوُلَّامِعِهَا، فَكِسَّامُهَا عُمْرُ أَحَدٍ لَّهُ مِنْ أَمَّهُ مَشْرِكٍ.

تَحْرِيرُ: أَخْرِجَهُ مُسْلِمٌ، الْلِبَاسُ، بَابٌ: تَحْرِيمُ لِبَسَ السَّيِّئِ وَغَيْرُ ذَلَّلِ لِلرَّجُلِ. حُدُثْتُ أَبِنَ نَمِيرٍ بِهِ.

المعجم (العصر 84) - ذِكرُ الْرَّحْصَةِ لِلْعُسَنَاءِ فِي لِبْسِ السَّيِّءَاءِ (المتحفة 87)

5298 - أَخْرِجَهُ الْعَلَّامُ بْنُ حُرْيَبٍ قَالَ: حَدَّثَنَا يَعْبُسُ بْنُ يُوسُفُ عَنْ مَعْمَرٍ، عَنْ الْرَّهْبِيِّ، عَنْ أَنَسٍ قَالَ: رَأَيْتُ عَلَى رَبْنِبِهِ الْبَنِيَّةَ قَوْيَصَ خَرْيَرَ سَيِّئَاءٍ.

تَحْرِيرِ: [إِسْنَادُ ضَعِيفٍ] أَخْرِجَهُ أَبِنُ مَاِيْهِ، الْلِبَاسُ، بَابٌ لِبَسَ السَّيِّئِ وَالْجَهْدِ لِلْعُسَنَاءِ، حُدُثْتُ أَبِنِ نَمِيرِ بِهِ. 3598 مِنْ حُدُثِ عَيْسِيَ بْنُ يُوسُفُ بِهِ، وَالْزَهْرِيَ عَنْهُ، وَالْمَخْفُوْفُ : "أَمَّ كَلَّوْمٍ بِدَلٍّ رَبْنِبِهِ".

5299 - أَخْرِجَهُ عَمَّرُ بْنُ عُمَيْمَانُ عَنْهُ: حَدَّثَنَا الرَّضِيعُ الْبَنِيَّةُ عَنْ الْرَّهْبِيِّ، عَنْ أَنَسِ بْنِ مَالِكٍ أَنْثَى حَدَّثَنِي: أَنَّهُ رَأَى عَلَى أَمِّ كَلَّوْمٍ رَبْنِبِهِ عَلَى رَسُولِ اللَّهِ، بَرَدَ سِيِّئَاءٍ.
fabric with stripes of silk. *(Sahih)*

Chapter 85. Prohibition Of Wearing Al-Istabraq

5301. Ibn 'Umar narrated that 'Umar went out and saw a *Hullah* of *Al-Istabraq* being offered for sale in the marketplace. He went to the Messenger of Allah and said: "O Messenger of Allah, buy this and wear it on Fridays, and when the delegations come to you." The Messenger of Allah said: "This is only worn by the one who has no share (in the Hereafter)." Then three *Hullahs* (of the same fabric) were brought to the Messenger of Allah and he gave one to 'Umar, one to 'Ali and one to Usâmah. He ('Umar) came to him
and said: “O Messenger of Allâh, you said what you said about it, then you sent one to me!” He said: “Sell it and spend the money on your needs, or cut it into pieces for your womenfolk to use as head covers.” (Saḥîh)

**Comments:**

1. ‘Among your women’: It does not signify only the wives. It rather means all - wives, daughters, sisters, and mothers.

2. *Istabraq*: It is a kind of silk. It happens to be thick and rough. It is called *Istabar* in Persian. If gold threads are thickly interwoven with silk, it is also called *Istabraq* or silk brocade.

**Chapter 86. Description Of Al-Istabraq**


**Comments:**

Sundus: Thin, fine silk is called Sundus or sarcenet. It is also a type of silk.

**Chapter 87. Mentioning The Prohibition Of Wearing Ad-Dibâj**

5303. It was narrated that ‘Abdullâh bin ‘Ukaim said: “Hudhaifah asked for some water
and the chief brought water in a silver vessel. He threw it aside, then he apologized to them for what he had done, and said: 'I told him before not to do that. I heard the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ say: Do not drink from vessels of gold and silver, and do not wear Ad-Dibāj or silk. They are for them in this world, and for you in the Hereafter.' (Saḥīḥ)

Comments:
1. Dibāj or silk brocade is also a type of silk. The objective is to underscore that every type of silk is unlawful for men, whether it is fine, thick, thin, soft, or hard.
2. 'Silver and gold vessels': This command is equal for men and women.

Chapter 88. Wearing Ad-Dibāj Interwoven With Gold

5304. It was narrated that Wāfid bin ‘Amr bin Sa’d bin Mu’ādh said: "I entered upon Anas bin Mālik when he came to Al-Madīnah and greeted him with Salām. He said: ‘Where are you from?’ I said: ‘I am Wāfid bin ‘Amr bin Sa’d bin Mu’ādh.’ He said: ‘Sa’d was the greatest and most virtuous of people.’ Then he wept a great deal; then he said: ‘The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ sent a delegation to Ukaidir the ruler of Dūmāh, who sent him a Jubbah made of Ad-Dibāj interwoven with gold. The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ put it on, then he stood on the Minbar and
sat, without speaking, then he came down and the people started touching it with their hands. He said: ‘Are you admiring this? The handkerchiefs of Sa’d in Paradise are more beautiful than what you see.’” (Hasan)

Comments:
1. ‘When he came’: Anas bin Mâlik was from the Ansâr or Al-Madinah. But he had gone to live in Basra during the period of ‘Umar.
2. ‘Sa’d bin Mu’adh’ was the chieftain of the clan of Aws.
3. ‘Put it on’: This incident belongs to the period before the prohibition of silk.
4. ‘Handkerchiefs’: The Arabic expression used is Manâdîl. A small handkerchief is called Mindîl, which is usually held in hand for cleaning specks of dust, etc. Generally, it is of lesser rank as compared to other garments.

Chapter 89. Mentioning The Abrogation Of That

5305. Jâbir said: “The Prophet put on a Qabâ[1] of Ad-Dîbâj that had been given to him, but he soon took it off and sent it to ‘Umar. It was said to him: ‘How soon you took it off, O Messenger of Allâh.’ He said: ‘Jibrîl, peace be upon him, prohibited me from wearing it.’ Then ‘Umar came weeping and said: ‘O Messenger of Allâh, you disliked something but you gave it to me.’ He said: ‘I did not give it to you to wear it, rather I gave it to you to sell it.’ So ‘Umar sold it for two thousand Dirhams.” (Sahîh)

تخريج: أخرج حجاج بن الشاعر عن ابن جريج به حجاج في سند النسائي، هو ابن محمد الأحور.

Chapter 90. Stern Warning Against Wearing Silk, And That Whoever Wears It In This World Will Not Wear It In The Hereafter

5306. ‘Abdullāh bin Az-Zubair said, while he was on the Minbar delivering a Khutbah: “Muḥammad ﷺ said: ‘Whoever wears silk in this world, will not wear it in the Hereafter.’” (Ṣaḥīḥ)

5307. Khalīfah said: “I heard ‘Abdullāh bin Az-Zubair say: ‘Do not let your womenfolk wear silk, for I heard ‘Umar bin Al-Khaṭṭāb say: The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ said: Whoever wears it in this world will not wear it in the Hereafter.’” (Ṣaḥīḥ)

Comments:

‘Do not dress your women with silk clothes’: In other words, ‘Abdullāh bin Zubair considers this command general.

‘Abū Hafs[1] told me, that the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ said:
"Whoever wears silk in this world will have no share in the Hereafter."
(Sahih)

Comments:
The Companions' sending forth questioners or inquirers to each other was due to their having a good opinion of others in that the other Companion possesses better knowledge than him or her and this good opinion is the evidence of erudition or knowledge. Otherwise, the awareness of one's having been learned often becomes the cause of an erudite person's downfall.

5309. It was narrated from Ibn ‘Umar, that the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ said: "Silk is only worn by one who has no share." (Sahih)

5310. It was narrated that ‘Āli Al-Bāriqi said: "A woman came to me to ask a question, and I said to her: 'There is Ibn ‘Umar.' So she went after him to ask him, and I went after her to hear what he would say. She said: 'Tell me about silk.' He said: 'The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ forbade it.'" (Sahih)

[1] That is ‘Umar, may Allāh be pleased with him.
Comments:

‘Has forbidden it’ means for men; not for women, as has preceded in authentic and explicitly clear narrations.

Chapter 91. Prohibition Of Al-Qassiyah Garments

5311. It was narrated that Al-Barâ’ bin ‘Âzîb said: “The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ enjoined seven things upon us, and forbade seven things for us. He forbade to us gold rings, silver vessels, Al-Mayâthir, Al-Qassiyah, Al-Istabraq, Ad-Dîbâj, and silk.” (Sahîh)

Comments:
See Nos. 5168, 5169, 5301 and 5302.

Chapter 92. Concession For Wearing Silk

5312. It was narrated from Anas that the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ granted a concession to ‘Abdur-Rahmân bin ‘Awf and Az-Zubair bin Al-‘Awwâm allowing them to wear silken shirts because of scabies that they were suffering from. (Sahîh)

Comments:
This incident belongs to a journey. Some jurists stipulate the condition of the state of journeying along with itchiness, because at home, several other remedies are possible for an itch, although during traveling, it might cause hardship. Since silk happens to be soft, it does not inflame the condition of itching. On the contrary, it provides relief and comfort.
The fringes of sheets and shirts are often hemmed with silk straps; for instance, the front collars, sleeves, etc. There is no harm in doing so. Sometimes silk flaps are mounted on shoulders. There is no harm in them as

5314. It was narrated from Jarîr from Sulaimân At-Taimî, from Abû ‘Uthmân An-Nahdî, who said: “We were with ‘Utbah bin Farqad when the letter of ‘Umar came, saying that the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said: ‘No one wears silk except one who has no share of it in the Hereafter, except this much.’” And Abû ‘Uthmân gestured with the two fingers that are next to the thumb. And I saw the two of them pointing to the borders of the Tâyâlisah, so that I could see the Tâyâlisah.\[1\] (Sahîh)

Comments:
I. The fringes of sheets and shirts are often hemmed with silk straps; for instance, the front collars, sleeves, etc. There is no harm in doing so. Sometimes silk flaps are mounted on shoulders. There is no harm in them as

\[1\] That appears to be the statement of Sulaimân. Tâyâlisah is plural of Tâlsân a type of shawl or cloak (Burd) and they say that it is black.
well. But the straps should not be too wide. They ought to be equal to the width of a finger or so, meaning an inch or an inch and a half.

2. 'I at once understood': So to speak, *Taiṣān* (plural *Tāyālisah*) was a shawl-like garment which was worn over shoulders. Its borders used to be hemmed with silk straps. The utterer of this sentence is Sulaimān Taymi, the pupil of Abū Uthman An-Nahdi.

5315. It was narrated from ‘Umar that he did not allow the wearing of silk except (something) the width of four fingers. (*Sahih*)

Comments:
In the previous narration, there is mention of two fingers; in this there is four. The majority of the people of knowledge consider a four finger wide strip is permissible; not more, because no narration has come giving permission for more than this.

Chapter 93. Wearing *Hullahs* (المعجم (التحفة 91) لُبسُ الْحُلْلِ)

5316. It was narrated that Al-Barā’ said: "I saw the Prophet wearing a red *Hullah*, with his hair combed, and I have never seen anyone before or since, who was more handsome than he." (*Sahih*)

Comments:
(See no. 5234).
Chapter 94. Wearing a Hibarah

5317. It was narrated that Anas said: “The most beloved of garments to the Prophet of Allâh ﷺ was the Hibarah.” (Sahîh)

Chapter 95. Mentioning The Prohibition Of Wearing Garments Dyed With Safflower

5318. ‘Abdullâh bin ‘Amr narrated that the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ saw him wearing two garments dyed with safflower and he said: “This is the clothing of the disbelievers; do not wear it.” (Sahîh)

5319. It was narrated from ‘Abdullâh bin ‘Amr that he came to the Prophet ﷺ wearing two garments dyed with safflower. The Prophet ﷺ got angry and said: “Go and take them off.” He said: “Where should I throw them, O

[1] Al-Hibarah: A cotton cloak with red or green stripes
Messenger of Allâh?’ He said: “In the fire.” (Sahîh)

Comments:
‘Into the fire’: And ‘Abdullâh bin Amr actually threw it into an oven and burnt it. May Allâh be pleased with him and he be with Him. It is possible that Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ might have said it out of anger.

5320. ‘Ali said: “The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ forbade me from wearing gold rings, and from wearing Al-Qassîyâh garments, and garments dyed with safflower, and reciting Qur’ân while I am bowing.”’ (Sahîh)

Comments:
When it is forbidden to recite the Glorious Qur’ân in the posture of bowing; it would be first and foremost forbidden in the posture of prostration, because that posture consists of more humility and lowliness than the posture of bowing. See No. 1044.

Chapter 96. Wearing Green Garments

5321. It was narrated that Abû Rimthâh said: “The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ came out to us wearing two green garments.” (Sahîh)

Comments:
(See No. 1573).
Chapter 97. Wearing Burdahs (Cloaks)

5322. It was narrated that Khābāb bin Al-Aratt said: "We complained to the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ when he was reclining on his rolled-up Burdah in the shade of the Ka'bah. We said: 'Will you not pray for victory for us, will you not pray to Allāh for us?" (Sahih)

Comments:
1. The narration is lengthy. The author has mentioned the relevant fragment.
2. The sheet which is placed beneath the head could also be worn or wrapped round the body like an Izār.

5323. It was narrated that Sahl bin Sa'd said: "A woman brought a Burdah" - Sahl said: "Do you know what a Burdah is?" They said: "Yes, it is a cloak with a woven border" - and she said: 'O Messenger of Allāh, I wove this with my own hands for you to wear.' The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ took it as he had need of it, then he came out to us and he was wearing it as his Izār (lower garment)." (Sahih)

Chapter 98. The Command To Wear White Garments

5324. It was narrated from Samurah that the Prophet ﷺ said:
“Wear white garments, for they are purer and better, and shroud your dead in them.” (Sahih)
Chapter 100. Wearing Trousers

(المعجم 100) - لبس السراويل
(التحفة 98)

5327. It was narrated from Ibn ‘Abbās that he heard the Prophet ﷺ say in ‘Arafāt: “Whoever cannot find an İzār (waist wrapper), let him wear trousers, and whoever cannot find sandals, let him wear Khuffs (leather socks).” (Ṣaḥīḥ)

Comments:
See No. 2672.

Chapter 101. Stern Warning Against Dragging One’s İzār

(المعجم 101) - التمليط في جر الإزار
(التحفة 99)

5328. It was narrated from ‘Abdullāh bin ‘Umar that the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ said: “While a man was dragging his İzār out of pride, the earth swallowed him up, and he will continue sinking into it until the Day of Resurrection.” (Ṣaḥīḥ)

Comments:
1. ‘Dragging the İzār’: These narrations mention the punishment and warning when it is done out of pride. Chapter 103 includes what is not done out of pride, but intentionally.
2. No. 5338 addresses the women’s lower garment.

3. ‘Until the Last Hour would come or the Day of Resurrection’ means the punishment would continue to engulf him till the Day of Resurrection. He would not be forgiven.

5329. It was narrated that ‘Abdullāh said: “The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ said: ‘Whoever drags his garment out of pride, Allāh will not look at him on the Day of Resurrection.’” (Sahih)

Comments:
‘His garment’: Meaning any garment.

5330. It was narrated that Muhārīb said: “I heard Ibn ‘Umar narrating that the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ said: ‘Whoever drags his garment out of vanity, Allāh, the Mighty and Sublime, will not look at him on the Day of Resurrection.’” (Sahih)

Chapter 102. Up To Where Should The Izār Come?

5331. It was narrated that Hudhayfah said: “The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ said: ‘The Izār should come to middle of the shins and the calf. If you insist, then a little lower, and if you insist, then a little
The Book of Adornment From...

Further down, but the Izâr has no right to (come to) the ankle.” This is the wordings of Muḥammad. (Ṣaḥīḥ)

Comments:

It is essential to cover the knees with the waist-wrapper or the lower garment. The knees should not be seen, in any condition: while working, bowing, or while performing prostration. The ankles should remain bare in every circumstance. To keep the garment above the mid-shanks is also unlawful, and letting it hang below the ankles is also unlawful. One may, however, keep his lower garments anywhere he may consider it appropriate, between this point (mid-shanks) and the ankles in accord with the season and the customary practice. The trousers or pants also fall under the ruling of the waist-wrapper. Therefore, they should also be kept above the ankles. Handsomeness dwells in obeying Allâh, Most High, and His Messenger only.

Chapter 103. Whatever Of The Izâr Comes Below The Ankles

5332. Abû Hurairah said: “The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said: ‘Whatever of the Izâr comes below the ankles is in the Fire.’” (Ṣaḥīḥ)

Comments:

This punishment is for keeping the lower garment below the ankles, even if it is done without the sense of vain or conceit, except for the waist-wrapper which falls below the ankles once in a while without intent or realization.
5333. It was narrated from Abū Hurairah that the Prophet ﷺ said: "Whatever of the İzâr comes below the ankles is in the Fire." (Sahîh)

5334. It was narrated that Ash'ath said: "I heard Sa'eed bin Jubair narrate from Ibn 'Abbâs that the Prophet ﷺ said: 'Allâh will not look at the Musbih (the one who lets his İzâr come below the ankles).'' (Sahîh)

5335. It was narrated that Abû Dharr said: "The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said: 'There are three to whom Allâh (the Mighty and Sublime) will not speak on the Day of Resurrection, nor will He sanctify them, and theirs will be a painful torment: The one who reminds others of what he has given them (Al-Mannân), the one who lets his İzâr come below his ankles, and the one who sells his product by means of false oaths.'" (Sahîh)
5336. It was narrated that Ibn 'Umar said: “The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ said: ‘Al-Isbil may apply to the Izār, the Qamīṣ and the turban. Whoever drags any one of these out of vanity, Allāh will not look at him on the Day of Resurrection.’” (Hasan)

5337. It was narrated from Sālim, from his father, that the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ said: “Whoever drags his garment out of pride, Allāh will not look at him on the Day of Resurrection.” Abū Bakr said: “O Messenger of Allāh, one side of my Izār slips unless I pay attention to it.” The Prophet ﷺ: “You are not one of those who do that out of pride.” (Saḥīḥ)

Comments:
If someone's lower garment falls below the ankles and they pull it up when realizing it, then there is no harm.

Chapter 105. Women's Hems

5338. It was narrated that Ibn 'Umar said: “The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ said: ‘Whoever drags his garment out of pride, Allāh will not look at him.’ Umm Salamah said: ‘O Messenger of Allāh, what should women do with their hems?’
He said: ‘Let it down a hand span.’

She said: ‘But then their feet will show.’ He said: ‘Let it down a forearm’s length, but no more than that.’” (Sahih)

تَكِيفُ تَصْنَفُ النِّسَاءَ بَيْنَ الْتَّخُّرِينِ؟ قَالَ: ثُمَّ لَتَزَدَّىٰ أَقْدَامَهُنَّ؟

قَالَ: ﴿تَكِيفُ ذِرَاعًا لا تَزَدَّى عَلَيْهِ﴾.


5339. It was narrated from Umm Salamah that she mentioned women’s hems to the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ, and the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said: “Let it down a hand span.” Umm Salamah said: “But that will uncover (her feet).” He said: “Let it down a forearm’s length, but no more than that.” (Sahih)

5340. It was narrated from Umm Salamah that when the Prophet ﷺ said what he said about the Ḥizār, Umm Salamah said: “What about women?” He said: “Let it down a hand span.” She said: “But then their feet will show.” He said: “Then (let it down) a forearm’s length, but no more than that.” (Sahih)

تخريج: [صحيح] انظر، ح: 1541 يأتي بعد حديث واحد.

5341. It was narrated that Umm Salamah said: “The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ was asked how much a
woman should let her hem drag. He said: ‘A hand span.’ She said: ‘But then it will uncover her (feet).’ He said: ‘A forearm’s length, and no more than that.’” (Sahih)

Chapter 106. Prohibition On Ishtimâl Aṣ-Ṣammâ’

5342. It was narrated that Abû Sa‘eed Al-Khudrî said: “The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ forbade Ishtimâl Aṣ-Ṣammâ’ and wrapping oneself in a single garment (that did not cover the private parts).” (Sahih)

Comments:
Lexically, the expression Ishtimâl Aṣ-Ṣammâ’ (the solid-wrap) denotes that a person wraps himself in a garment and puts both edges of it over one side leaving no space for his hands to come out easily from inside it, when required.

5343. It was narrated that Abû Sa‘eed Al-Khudrî said: “The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ forbade Ishtimâl Aṣ-Ṣammâ’ and wrapping oneself in a single garment (that did not cover the private parts).” (Sahih)
Chapter 107. Prohibition Of Al-Iḥtibā’ (Wrapping Oneself In A Single Garment)

It was narrated from Jābir that the Messenger of Allāh forbade “The Messenger of Allāh forbade Ḥisbūmāl ʿAṣ-Sammā’ and wrapping oneself in a single garment (that did not cover the private parts).” (Ṣaḥīḥ)

Chapter 108. Wearing Black Turbans

It was narrated from Ja'far bin 'Amr bin Ḥuraith that his father said: “I saw the Prophet wearing a black turban.” (Ṣaḥīḥ)

Comments:

'Blackish': In Arabic, the expression Ḥarrāḥiyah is used, which is a derivative of the term Ḥaraq, which means burning in fire. In other words, it is such a color which resembles the color of a thing burned by fire. That color was called blackish, because it need not be necessarily jet black.

[1] Al-‘Āmā‘īm; plural of Ṭmāmah. Its definition is broader than what is commonly called "turban."
Chapter 109. Wearing Black Turbans

5346. It was narrated from Jâbir that on the Day of the Conquest of Makkah, the Messenger of Allâh entered (the city) wearing a black turban, and he was not in Ihrâm. (Saḥīḥ)

Comments:
(See No. 2872).

5347. It was narrated that Jâbir said: “The Prophet entered (Makkah) on the Day of the Conquest wearing a black turban.” (Saḥīḥ)

Chapter 110. Letting The End Of The Turban Hang Between The Shoulders

5348. It was narrated from Ja’far bin ‘Amr bin Umayyah that his father said: “It is as if I am looking now at the Messenger of Allâh on the Minbar, wearing a black turban, the end of which he has let hang down between his shoulders.” (Saḥīḥ)

Comments:
The style of wearing or winding a turban is related to customary practices or ethnicity. Whatever mode or style is prevalent concerning the wearing of turbans, it is valid or allowed, because Allâh’s Messenger has not indicated
Chapters

5349. It was narrated from Abū Talḥah that the Prophet said: “The angels do not enter a house in which there is a dog or an image.”

5350. It was narrated from Abū Talḥah that the Prophet said: “The angels do not enter a house in which there is a dog or an image.”

5351. It was narrated from ‘Ubaidullāh bin ‘Abdullāh that he entered upon Abū Talḥah Al-Anṣārī to visit him (when he was sick), and he found Sahl bin Ḥunaif there. Abū Talḥah told someone to remove a blanket from beneath him, and Sahl said to him: “Why do you want to remove it?” He said: “Because there are images on it, and the Messenger of
Allāh said what you know concerning them.” He said: “Did he not say: Except for patterns on fabrics?” He said: “Yes, but this makes me feel more comfortable.” (Sahih)

Comments:
These narrations explain that patterns are allowed, while images of animate objects are not.

5353. It was narrated that ‘Allī said: “I made some food and invited the Prophet (to come and eat). He came and entered, then he saw a curtain on which there were images, so he went out and said: ‘The Angels do not enter a house in which there are images.’” (Sahih)

5352. It was narrated from Ābū Talhā that the Messenger of Allāh said: “The angels do not enter any house in which there is an image.” Busr said: “Then Zaid fell sick and we went to visit him, and on his door there was a curtain on which there was an image. I said to ‘Ubaidullāh Al-Khawlānī: ‘Didn’t Zaid tell us about images yesterday?’ ‘Ubaidullāh said: ‘Didn’t you hear him say: Except for patterns on fabrics?’” (Sahih)
5354. It was narrated that ‘Aīshah said: “The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ went out, then he came in, and I had hung up a curtain on which there were (images of) horses with wings. When he saw it, he said: ‘Get rid of it.’” (Sahih)

5355. It was narrated that ‘Aīshah, the wife of the Prophet ﷺ, said: “We had a curtain on which there were images of birds, at the entrance to the house. The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ said: ‘O ‘Aīshah, remove it, for every time I come in and see it, I remember this world.’” She said: “We had a plush wrap, with a border on it, that we would wear, and it was not cut off.”[1] (Sahih)

5356. It was narrated that ‘Aīshah said: “In my house there was a cloth on which were images, which I put in a niche of the house, and the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ used to

---

[1] The border was silk (see Muslim No. 5521) and Qatfah is a plush or velvet cloth of hair or the like, used as a wrap or blanket.
pray facing it. Then he said: 'O 'Aishah, take it away from me.' So I took it down and made it into pillows.'” (Sahih)

5357. It was narrated from 'Aishah that she put up a curtain on which there were images, then the Messenger of Allâh  came in and took it down, so she cut it up (and made) two pillows. A man in the gathering there whose name was Rabî’ah bin ‘Atâ’ said: “I heard Abû Muḥammad – meaning Al-Qâsim – narrate that ‘Aishah said: ‘The Messenger of Allâh  used to recline on them.’” (Sahih)

Comments:
(See No. 762).

Chapter 112. The People Who Will Be Most Severely Punished

5358. It was narrated that 'Aishah said: “The Messenger of Allâh  came from a journey, and I had hung a curtain on which there were images over a niche. He took it down and said: ‘The people who will be most severely punished on the Day of Resurrection will be those who try to match the creation of Allâh.”’ (Sahih)
5359. It was narrated that `Aïshah, the wife of the Prophet ﷺ, said: "The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ entered upon me, and I had put up a curtain on which there were images. When he saw it, his face changed color, then he tore it down with his hand and said: 'The people who will be most severely punished on the Day of Resurrection will be those who try to imitate the creation of Allâh.'" (Sahîh)

Chapter 113. What The Image-Makers Will Be Commanded To Do On The Day Of Resurrection

5360. It was narrated that An-Nâdîr bin Anas said: "I was sitting with Ibn `Abbâs when a man from among the people of Al-`Irâq came to him and said: 'I make these images; what do you say concerning them?' He said: 'Come closer, come closer. I heard Muhammad ﷺ say: Whoever makes an image in this world will be commanded on the Day of Resurrection to breathe the soul into it, and he will not be able to do so.'" (Sahîh)
5361. It was narrated that Ibn 'Abbás said: "The Messenger of Allah ﷺ said: 'Whoever makes an image will be punished until (he is commanded) to breathe the soul into it, and he will not be able to do so.'" (Sahih)

5362. It was narrated that Abû Hurairah said: "The Messenger of Allah ﷺ said: 'Whoever makes an image will be commanded on the Day of Resurrection to breathe the soul into it but he will not be able to do so.'"

Comments:
In other words, he would not only be commanded to breathe life (into the pictures), but he would also be continuously tortured or punished. He will continue to be punished until he breathes life into them, and he will never be able to do so. Hence, he would spend the entire Judgment Day in punishment; and this would indeed be a most severe punishment.

5363. It was narrated from Ibn 'Umar that the Prophet ﷺ said: "The makers of these images will be punished on the Day of Resurrection, and it will be said to them: 'Breathe life into that which you have created.'" (Sahih)

5364. It was narrated from 'Aishah, the wife of the Prophet
that the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said: “The makers of these images will be punished on the Day of Resurrection, and it will be said to them: ‘Bring to life that which you have created.”” (Sahîh)

5365. It was narrated that ‘Aishah, the wife of the Prophet ﷺ, said: “The people who will be most severely punished on the Day of Resurrection will be those who try to match the creation of Allâh.”” (Sahîh)

Chapter 114. The People Who Will Be Most Severely Punished

5366. It was narrated that ‘Abdullâh said: “The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said: ‘Among the people who will be most severely punished on the Day of Resurrection will be the image-makers.”” (Sahîh)
5367. It was narrated that Abū Hurairah said: “Jibril, peace be upon him, asked permission to enter upon the Prophet ﷺ and he said: ‘Come in.’ He said: ‘How can I come in when there is a curtain in your house on which there are images? You should either cut off their heads or make it into a rug to be stepped on, for we Angels do not enter a house in which there are images.’” (Ṣaḥīḥ)

Comments:
This demonstrates that if the cloth bearing pictures is spread on the ground where it is trod upon, then there is no harm in it. Or the picture should be cut in such a way that the face does not remain.

Chapter 115. Blankets

5368. It was narrated that 'Āishah said: “The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ would not pray in our blankets.”” (Ṣaḥīḥ)

Comments:
Blankets or sheets which are used for one’s bed are not washed or changed as frequently as clothes. It is more difficult to detect impurity on them.
Chapter 116. Description Of The Sandals Of The Messenger Of Allah ﷺ

5369. Anas narrated that the sandals of the Messenger of Allah ﷺ had two straps. (Sahih)

Comments:
The straps of sandals are meant for keeping the feet affixed to the sandals. One or two; or they could be even more than two.

Chapter 117. Prohibition Of Walking In One Sandal

5371. It was narrated from Abû Hurairah that the Prophet ﷺ said:
“If the strap of the sandal of one of you breaks, let him not walk in one sandal until he fixes it.” (Sahih)

Comments:
Scholars have mentioned various views for the reason behind this; shoes
protect from filth, or one is more likely to fall, and, other than that. There is no conducive proof to support the reasoning and claims behind it.

5372. It was narrated that Abū Razīn said: “I saw Abū Hurairah clap his hand to his forehead and say: ‘O people of Al-'Iraq, you claim that I tell lies about the Messenger of Allāh ⁷⁷⁷. I bear witness that I heard the Messenger of Allāh ⁷⁷⁷ say: If the strap of the sandal of one of you breaks, let him not walk in the other until he fixes it.” (Ṣaḥīḥ)

Chapter 118. What Has Been Related About Leather Cloths

5373. It was narrated from Anas bin Mālik that the Prophet ⁷⁷⁹ lay down on a leather mat and sweated. Umm Sulaim got up and collected his sweat and put it in a bottle. The Prophet ⁷⁷⁹ saw her and said: “What are you doing O Umm Sulaim? She said: “I am putting your sweat in my perfume.” And the Prophet ⁷⁷⁹ smiled. (Ṣaḥīḥ)

Comments:
1. ‘Leather mat or rug. (The term used in Arabic is Nata’. It means a leather mat or rug or spread used as a table-cloth, and gaming board): It happens to be superior to a cloth-sheet in every way. The purpose is that it is not
blameworthy to use excellent things.

2. ‘He laid down to rest’: Umm Sulaim and Umm Harâm were related to the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ in a way that they were his unmarriageable kin. On that account (Umm Sulaim and Umm Harâm were sisters, and they had a bond of relationship with the maternal side of the Prophet’s ﷺ grandfather), Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ used to visit them sometimes in their houses and rest there.

3. ‘Collected or scooped out the Prophet’s ﷺ perspiration’: So to say, she took or absorbed the perspiration with some piece of cloth, and then she squeezed the cloth into her perfume or into an empty bottle. And Allâh knows best!

Chapter 119. Keeping Servants And Mounts

5374. It was narrated that Samurah bin Sahm said: “I came to Abû Hàshim bin ‘Utba when he was suffering the plague, and Mu‘âwiyyah came to visit him. Abû Hàshim wept. Mu‘âwiyyah said to him: ‘Why are you weeping? Is it because of some pain that is hurting you, or is it for this world, the best of which has gone?’ He said: ‘Neither; but the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ gave me some advice, which I wish that I had followed. He said: “Perhaps you will live to see wealth that will be distributed among the people when all that would suffice you of that would be a servant and a mount to ride in the cause of Allâh.” I lived to see that, and I accumulated (wealth).”’ (Hasan)

Comments:

1. ‘The best part or portion’ means of the Companionship of the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ, or of his youth.
2. ‘Wealth’ means there would be an abundance of spoils.

3. ‘I have accumulated (it)’: This was his self-effacement or modesty, otherwise, he had left no heritage. May Allâh be pleased with him and he be with Him.

4. The purpose of the chapter is that to have a servant, and to keep ready a mount is not excessive.

Chapter 120. Adornments Of A Sword

5375. It was narrated that Abû Umâmah bin Sahl said: “The pommel of the sword of the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ was of silver.” (Sâhih)

5376. It was narrated that Anas said: “The metallic end of the scabbard of the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ was of silver, the pommel of his sword was silver, and in between were rings of silver.” (Sâhih)

5377. It was narrated that Sa‘eeed bin Abî Al-Hasan said: “The pommel of the sword of the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ was of silver.” (Sâhih)
Chapter 121. Prohibition Of Sitting On Red Al-Mayâthir

5378. It was narrated that ‘Ali said: The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said to me: “Say: O Allâh, make me steadfast and guide me.” And he forbade me to sit on Al-Mayâthir.” Al-Mayâthir: Qassî which the women used to put on the saddles for their husbands, such as red cushions. (Sahîh)

Chapter 122. Sitting On Chairs

5379. It was narrated that Humâid bin Hîlal said: “Abû Râfî’ah said: ‘I came to the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ while he was delivering a Khutbah, and said: “O Messenger of Allâh, a stranger has come to ask about his religion, for he does not know what his religion is.” The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ stopped delivering his Khutbah and turned to me. A chair was brought, and I think its legs were of iron. The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ sat down on it and started to teach me what Allâh has taught him, then he went and completed his Khutbah.” (Sahîh)

Comments:
(See Nos. 5168, 5169, 5187)
1. The purpose of the chapter is that sitting on a chair while other people are seated on the ground is not prohibited, if there is a need to do so. For instance, delivering a discourse or sermon, so people could easily see the sermon-giver while hearing him. Even otherwise, sitting on a chair does not imply pride or vain conceit.

2. This narration proves Allāh’s Messenger’s گرس affection and gracefulness to the zenith of their perfection. He left his place and went forth to reach out to an unknown poor person.

Chapter 123. Using Red Tents

5380. It was narrated that Abū Juḥaihah said: “We were with the Prophet گرس in Al-Batḥa’ and he was in a red tent, and some people were with him, and he was about to set out. Bilāl came and called the Adhān, turning this way and that.” (Ṣaḥīḥ)

Comment: The purpose of the chapter is that sitting on a chair while other people are seated on the ground is not prohibited, if there is a need to do so. For instance, delivering a discourse or sermon, so people could easily see the sermon-giver while hearing him. Even otherwise, sitting on a chair does not imply pride or vain conceit.

1. This narration proves Allāh’s Messenger’s گرس affection and gracefulness to the zenith of their perfection. He left his place and went forth to reach out to an unknown poor person.
Chapter 1. Virtue Of The Judge Who Is Just In Passing Judgment

5381. It was narrated from 'Abdullâh bin 'Amr bin Al-‘Âs that the Prophet said: “Those who are just and fair will be with Allâh, Most High, on thrones of light, at the right hand of the Most Merciful, those who are just in their rulings and in their dealings with their families and those of whom they are in charge.” Muhammad (one of the narrators) said in his Hadîth: “And both of His hands are right hands.” (Sâhih)

Comments:
1. Justice and fairness means to restore the right of every rightful owner, and to behave with people in accordance with their rank and station; whether it is the chair of justice, or the throne of a ruler, whether it is at home or abroad, whether it is a mosque or a school.
2. ‘Thrones of light’: When there could be a throne of wood and stone, then why not of light? angels are absolute luminary or luminous creation. Some researchers have understood it to mean high ranks or stations. But there is no need to negate the notion of throne. Thrones would also be, as it were, ranks or stations.

Chapter 2. The Just Ruler

5382. It was narrated from Abû Hurairah that the Messenger of
Allâh ﷺ said: “There are seven whom Allâh, the Mighty and Sublime, will shade with His shade on the Day of Resurrection, the Day when there will be no shade but His: A just ruler, a young man who grows up worshipping Allâh, the Mighty and Sublime; a man who remembers Allâh when he is alone and his eyes flow (with tears); a man whose heart is attached to the Masjid; two men who love each other for the sake of Allâh, the Mighty and Sublime; a man who is called (to commit sin) by a woman of high status and beauty, but he says: ‘I fear Allâh’; and a man who gives charity and conceals it, so that his left hand does not know what his right hand is doing.” (Saîhîh)

**Comments:**

1. ‘Seven persons’: In other narrations, apart from these seven, some others are also made mention of. These seven do not negate them.

2. ‘The shade of Allâh Most High’: The significance is that no one will be able to procure shade on his own; nor would there be any shade except that shade which would be provided by Allâh, Most High, and to whomever He wills.

3. ‘Young man’, because what else would an old man do, except worship? When death knocks at the door, the wolf turns pious. The real excellence lies in youthful worship.

4. ‘Whose heart is attached to the Masjid’: He finds tranquillity in the mosque. He remains restless outside the mosque, and awaits the next prayer.

5. ‘Two men’: Since the action of both of them is identical, it would be counted as one.

6. They say it means she invites him to illicit relations. They also say, based upon other reported wordings, that it may refer to marriage, and he fears he will not fulfill all of the rights of marriage most of them consider the first view to be the more obvious.
Who is Easier To Be A Judge

Chapter 4: Not Appointing One

Comments:

One Reward (Sahih)

The Book of the Epistle of Judges 196
anyone who asks for that.”’ (Sahih)

Comments:
The one who covets a post or an office, they would not be able to fulfill their obligatory duties with honesty. They would make their office or post a source of achieving eminence and power. Moreover, they would not receive any help or success from Allâh. Therefore, such people should not be appointed on significant posts. If the government asks for applications, one may send in a request. There is no harm in it, and such persons may be given the post. (For further details, please turn to Hadîth 4)

5385. It was narrated from Usaid bin Hudair that a man from among the Ansâr came to the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ and said: “Will you not appoint me as you appointed so-and-so?” He said: “You will encounter selfishness after I am gone, so be patient until you meet me at the cistern (Al-Hawd).” (Sahih)

Comments:
1. Every ordinary person, rather than the people who have special skills or qualities, cannot be appointed to a significant post. Posts do not come aplenty. Other people, therefore, should not pour out their jealousies and rebellion. They should show patience. Otherwise, this would create disorder and anarchy.
2. ‘You will encounter’: Some commentaries explain that it could mean: “You will find that others are given preference over you after me...”

Chapter 5. Prohibition Of Asking For Governorship

5386. It was narrated that ‘Abdur-Rahmân bin Samurah said: “The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said: ‘Do
not ask for governorship. For if it is
given to you because of asking, you
will be left to your own devices, but
if it is given to you without asking,
you will be helped (by Allâh).”
(Sahîh)

Comments:
1. Acting as a governor or commander under the rule of someone else is a large
responsibility; one would be accountable for it. One may even have to
undergo punishment in the event of shortfalls and failures. Therefore, one
should not invite this potential trouble for oneself. But if some responsibility
is bestowed upon someone, or if people are given responsibility, they should
accept it in the name of Allâh. In this event, Allâh’s succor would accompany
them, and people would also cooperate.

2. ‘Would be left to your own devices’ means neither Allâh’s help will
accompany you, nor will people cooperate with you. It is obvious that only
disgrace will follow, and one would encounter defeat.

5387. It was narrated from Abû Hurairah that the Prophet ﷺ said:
“You will be keen for governorship
but it will be regret and loss on the
Day of Resurrection. What a good
position it is when they are alive,
but how miserable their state when
they die (and leave it behind).”
(Sahîh)

Comments:
(See No. 4216.)
Chapter 6. Appointing Poets

5388. ‘Abdullāh bin Az-Zubair narrated that a group from Banu Tamīm came to the Prophet ﷺ. Ābu Bakr said: “Appoint Al-Qa‘qā bin Ma‘bad (as commander or governor),” and ‘Umar said: “No, (appoint) Al-Aqra’ bin Ḥābis.” They argued until they began to raise their voices, then the words were revealed: “O you who believe! Make not (a decision) in advance before Allāh and His Messenger...” until the end of the Verse: “And if they had patience till you could come out to them, it would have been better for them.”[1] (Ṣaḥīḥ)

Comments:
1. This narration does not contain a manifest allusion to the theme of this Chapter. In other narrations, however, there is mention of the poetry of Aqra’ bin Ḥābis that he had recited vainglorious poetic verses before the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ, and Hassān bin Thābit had given him a versified reply on behalf of the Prophet ﷺ.
2. The Noble Qur’ān and the Prophet’s Traditions generally deprecate the poets, because they happen to be habitually accustomed to hyperbolic expressions; rather falsehood, flattery and arrogance. The Divine law considers these characteristics bad. Even otherwise, a ruler ought to be sober and dignified, and the professional poets happen to be bereft of these qualities. What is outwardly understood is that poets should not be given offices of leadership.

Chapter 7. If People Appoint A Man As Judge, And He Passes Judgment Among Them

5389. It was narrated from Shurāh bin Ḥāni’ from his father, that

when he came to the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ and he heard them calling Hānī’ by the nickname of Abū Al-Ḥakam, the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ called him and said to him: “Allāh is Al-Ḥakam (the Judge) and judgment is His. Why are you known as Abū Al-Ḥakam?” He said: “If my people differ concerning something, they come to me, and I pass judgment among them, and both sides accept it.” He said: “How good this is. Do you have any children?” He said: “I have Shuraib, and ‘Abdullāh, and Muslim.” He said: “Who is the eldest of them?” He said: “Shuraib.” He said: “Then you are Abū Shuraib,” and he supplicated for him and his son. (Hasan)

Chapter 8. Prohibition Of Appointing Women For Judgment

5390. It was narrated that Abū Bakrah said: “Allāh protected me[1] with something that I heard from the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ. When Chosroes died, he said: ‘Whom have they appointed as his successor?’ They said: ‘His daughter.’ He said: ‘No people will ever prosper who entrust their leadership to a woman.’” (Sahih)

[1] Allāh protected me: i.e., from joining the “Army of the Camel” which was led by ‘Aishah.
Chapter 9. Passing Judgment
On The Basis Of A
Comparison Or Similarities,
And Mentioning The
Differences Reported From Al-
Walid Bin Muslim In The
Hadith Of Ibn ‘Abbás

5391. It was narrated from Al-Fadl bin ‘Abbás that he was riding behind the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ on the morning of the Day of Sacrifice, when a woman from Khath'ām came to him and said: “O Messenger of Allâh, the command of Allâh, the Mighty and Sublime, to His slaves to perform Hajj has come while my father is an old man and cannot ride unless he is tied crossways on a mount; can I perform Hajj on his behalf?” He said: “Yes, perform Hajj on his behalf, for if he owed a debt you would pay it off for him.” (Sahih)

Comments:
1. This incident happened during the Farewell Pilgrimage.
2. ‘If he owed a debt’: This is an example which Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ employed in order to explain the matter.
5392. It was narrated from Sulaimân bin Yasâr that Ibn 'Abbâs told him: “A woman from Khath’am asked the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ a question when Al-Fâdî was riding behind the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ. She said: ‘O Messenger of Allâh, the command of Allâh, the Mighty and Sublime, to His slaves to perform Hajj has come while my father is an old man, he cannot sit upright in the saddle. Will it suffice if I perform Hajj on his behalf?’ He said: “Yes.” (Sahîh)

Abû ‘Abdur-Rahmân (An-Nasâ‘î) said: Others reported this Hadîth from Az-Zuhrî, and they did not mention in it what Walîd bin Muslim mentioned.
sit firmly in the saddle; can I perform *Hajj* on his behalf?" He said: ‘Yes.’ That was during the Farewell Pilgrimage." (Sahih)

Comments:
(See No. 2636).

5394. It was narrated from Ibn Shiháb that Sulaimán bin Yasár told him that Ibn ‘Abbâs told him that a woman from Khâthi’m said: “O Messenger of Allâh, the command of Allâh, the Mighty and Sublime, to His slaves to perform *Hajj* has come while my father is an old man, and he cannot sit upright in the saddle. Will it discharge his duty if I perform *Hajj* on his behalf?” The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said to her: “Yes.” Al-Fâdîl starting turning toward her, for she was a beautiful woman, and the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ turned Al-Fâdîl’s face to the other side. (Sahih)

Comments:
(See No. 2636.)

Chapter 10. Mentioning The Different Reports From Yahyá Ibn Abî Ishâq

5395. It was narrated from ‘Abdullâh bin ‘Abbâs that a man asked the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ:
“The (command to perform) *Hajj* has come while my father is an old man and cannot sit firmly in the saddle, and if I tie him, I fear that he may die. Can I perform *Hajj* on his behalf?” He said: “Do you think that if he owed a debt you would pay it off for him?” He said: “Yes.” He said: “Then perform *Hajj* on behalf of your father.” (*Sahih*)

5396. It was narrated from Al-Fadl bin ‘Abbâs, that he was riding behind the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ, when a man came and said: “O Messenger of Allâh, my mother is an old woman; if I put her on a mount she cannot sit firmly, and if I tie her, I fear that I may kill her.” He said: “Do you think that if your mother owed a debt you would pay it off for her?” He said: “Yes.” He said: “Then perform *Hajj* on behalf of your mother.” (*Sahih*)

5397. It was narrated from Sulaimân bin Yasîr, who narrated from Al-Fadl bin ‘Abbâs, who said: “A man came to the Prophet ﷺ and said: ‘O Prophet of Allâh, my father is an old man and cannot perform *Hajj*.’ If I put him on a mount he cannot sit firm. Can I perform *Hajj* on his behalf? He said: “Perform *Hajj* on behalf of your father.” (*Sahih*)

Abû ‘Abdur-Rahmân (An-Nasâ’î)
Chapter 11. Ruling According To The Consensus Of The Scholars

5399. It was narrated that ‘Abdurrâḥmân bin Yazîd said: “The people asked ‘Abdullâh too many questions one day, and ‘Abdullâh said: ‘There was a time when we did not pass so many judgments, but now that time is over. Now Allâh, the Mighty and Sublime, has decreed that we reach a time when, as you see, (we are asked to pass many judgments). Whoever among you is asked to pass a judgment after this day, let him pass judgment according to what is in the Book of Allâh. If he is faced with a matter that is not mentioned in the Book of Allâh, let him pass judgment according to the way His Prophet passed judgment. If he is faced with
a matter that is not mentioned in the Book of Allâh and concerning which His Prophet did not pass judgment, then let him pass judgment according to the way the righteous passed judgment. If he is faced with a matter that is not mentioned in the Book of Allâh, and concerning which His Prophet and the righteous did not pass judgment, then let him strive to work it out, and let him not say ‘I am afraid, I am afraid.’ For what which is lawful is clear and that which is unlawful is clear, and between them are matters which are not as clear. Leave that which makes you doubt for that which does not make you doubt.” *(Hasan)*

Abû ‘Abdur-Rahmân (An-Nâsâ’î) said: This Ḥadîth is very good.

**Comments:**

1. The purpose of Imâm An-Nâsâ’î in this chapter is to prove the authority of consensus of opinion or *Ijmâ’*.
2. ‘There was a time’: Before discord, and when more of the Companions were alive.
3. ‘Righteous people’: Meaning, the earlier people of righteousness; the *Salaf*.

5400. It was narrated that ‘Abdullâh bin Mas‘ûd said: “There was a time when we did not pass so many judgments, but now that time is over. Now Allâh, the Mighty and Sublime, has decreed that we reach a time when, as you see, (we are asked to pass many judgments). Whoever among you is asked to pass a judgment after this day, let
him pass judgment according to what is in the Book of Allâh. If he is faced with a matter that is not mentioned in the Book of Allâh, let him pass judgment according to the way His Prophet ﷺ passed judgment. If he is faced with a matter that is not mentioned in the Book of Allâh, and concerning which His Prophet did not pass judgment, then let him pass judgment according to the way the righteous passed judgment. And let him not say 'I am afraid, I am afraid.' For what which is lawful is clear and that which is unlawful is clear, and between them are matters which are not as clear. Leave that which makes you doubt for that which does not make you doubt.” (Hasan)

Comments:
‘That which is lawful is clear’ means the lawfulness of certain things is evident and uncontroversial, and certain things are absolutely unlawful. It is easy to make decisions concerning them, while certain things are confusing to many because of their lack of knowledge about them. Precaution is essential in these things.

5401. It was narrated from Shuraih that he wrote to ‘Umar, to ask him (a question), and ‘Umar wrote back to him telling him: “Judge according to what is in the Book of Allâh. If it is not (mentioned) in the Book of Allâh, then (judge) according to the Sunnah of the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ. If it is not (mentioned) in the Book of Allâh
or the *Sunnah* of the Messenger of Allah ﷺ, then pass judgment according to the way the righteous passed judgment. If it is not (mentioned) in the Book of Allah, or the *Sunnah* of the Messenger of Allah ﷺ, and the righteous did not pass judgment concerning it, then if you wish, go ahead (and try to work it out by yourself) or if you wish, leave it. And I think that leaving it is better for you. And peace be upon you.” *(Sahih)*

Chapter 12. Meaning Of The Verse: “And Whosoever Does Not Judge By What Allah Has Revealed, Such Are The Disbelievers”

5402. It was narrated that Ibn ‘Abbas said: “There were kings after ‘Isa bin Mariam who altered the Tawrâh and the Injîl, but there were among them believers who read the Tawrâh. It was said to their kings: ‘We have never heard of any slander worse than that of those (believers) who slander us and recite: “And whosoever does not judge by what Allah has revealed, such are the disbelievers.”’ In these Verses, they are criticizing us for our deeds

---

when they recite them.' So he called them together and gave them the choice between being put to death, or giving up reading the Tawrîh and Injîl, except for what had been altered. They said: 'Why do you want us to change? Leave us alone.' Some of them said: 'Build us a tower and let us go up there, and give us something to lift up our food and drink so we do not have to mix with you.' Others said: 'Let us go and wander throughout the land, and we will drink as the wild animals drink, and if you capture us in your land, you may kill us.' Others said: 'Build houses for us in the wilderness, and we will dig wells and grow vegetables, and we will not mix with you or pass by you, for there is no one of the tribes among whom we do not have close relatives.' So they did that, and Allâh revealed the words: 'But the monasticism which they invented for themselves, We did not prescribe for them, but (they sought it) only to please Allâh therewith, but that they did not observe it with the right observance.'\[1\] Then others said: 'We will worship as so-and-so worshipped, and we will wander as so-and-so wandered, and we will adopt houses (in the wilderness) as so-and-so did.' But they were still following their Shîrîk with no knowledge of the faith of those

\[1\] Al-\-Hadîd 57:27.
whom they claimed to be following. When Allāh sent the Prophet ﷺ, and there were only a few of them left, a man came down from his cell, and a wanderer came from his travels, and a monk came from his monastery, and they believed in him. And Allāh said: 'O you who believe! Fear Allāh, and believe in His Messenger (Muḥammad), He will give you a double portion of His mercy—meaning, two rewards, because of their having believing in ‘Īsā and in the Tawrāh and Injīl, and for having believing in Muḥammad ﷺ; and He will give you a light by which you shall walk (straight),—meaning, the Qur‘ān, and their following the Prophet ﷺ; and He said: 'So that the people of the Scripture (Jews and Christians) may know that they have no power whatsoever over the Grace of Allāh.'[1] (Da‘f)[2]

Comments:

1. 'We have never heard... worse', because they call us unbelievers.
2. 'Leave us alone': Even so, some people entered the minarets, and continued with their worship residing there. Some people became monks. They used to roam here and there aimlessly in various townships. Some built houses of worship in remote places, and began to stay there. In short, they gradually lost contact with people. And this is what the evildoers desired. They did not have anyone around to censure them.
3. 'Monasticism': The term rahbāniyyah combines the concepts of monastic life with exaggerated asceticism, often amounting to a denial of any value in the life of this world—to the exclusion of married life; mutual transactions, etc.

[2] It was graded Ṣaḥīḥ by both Shaykh Al-Albānī and Muḥammad bin ‘Alī Al-Wallawī.
Then others said... earlier, people were in reality upon their True Religion. But they adopted these practices in order to safeguard their Religion (Dīn). Later, some irreligious people too began to unwittingly imitate them, who were polytheists and irreligious, apart from being ascetics.

Chapter 13. Judgment Based On What Is Apparent

5403. It was narrated from Umm Salamah that the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ said: "You refer your disputes to me, but I am only human, and some of you may be more eloquent in arguing their case than others. If I pass judgment in favor of one of you, against his brother's rights, let him not take it, for it is a piece of fire that I am giving him." (Sahih)

Comments:

1. 'I am a human': Meaning, Allāh does not reveal to him about what you want, but what he wills when people request a judgment from him  on personal disputes, he judges based upon what was already revealed, and after testimony and proof, while that testimony or proof may be corrupt, and that is beyond his  control and understanding of the evidences. "I am not the knower of the unseen that I may reach the root of reality. I return verdicts based on mere evident arguments or proofs."

2. 'He should not take it': So to speak, if a person, with the help of his glib tongue or false evidence, succeeds in getting the decision of the Qādī or judge in his favor, that does not make him a legitimate master of that right.
Chapter 14. Ruling Of A Judge
Based On His Knowledge

5404. Abū Hurairah narrated that the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ said: “There were two women who had two children, and the wolf came and took away the son of one of them. She said to her companion: ‘It took away your son.’ The other one said: ‘No, it took away your son.’ They referred the matter to Dāwūd, peace be upon him, for judgment (about the remaining child) and he ruled in favor of the older one. Then they went out to Sulaimān bin Dāwūd and told him (about that). He said: ‘Give me a knife and I will cut him in half (to be shared) between you.’ The younger one said: ‘Do not do that, may Allāh have mercy on you; he is her son.’ So he ruled that (the child) belonged to the younger woman.” Abū Hurairah said: “By Allāh! I never heard ‘Sikkin’ used until that day. We would only say: ‘Mudyah.’” (Ṣaḥīḥ)

Comments:
1. This is an astonishing incident that a dispute arises over a child; while children have identity of their own. Even if no one is found who could help identify it.
2. ‘In favor of the elder one’: There are no details to clarify why that was the case.
3. Since she would give him up just so he could live, while silent; it was clear that she was his mother.
4. ‘Sikkin’: In the Arabic language, a knife is called Sikkin as well as Al-Mudyah. It might perhaps have been called Al-Mudyah in the province of Abū Hurairah.

تخريج: أخرجه البخاري، أحاديث الأنبياء، ياب قول الله تعالى: "وهبنا لداو سليمان ... إلخ، ح: 3427 من حديث شهاب بن أبي حمزة به، وهو في الكبرى، ح: 6960.

Comments:
1. This is an astonishing incident that a dispute arises over a child; while children have identity of their own. Even if no one is found who could help identify it.
2. ‘In favor of the elder one’: There are no details to clarify why that was the case.
3. Since she would give him up just so he could live, while silent; it was clear that she was his mother.
4. ‘Sikkin’: In the Arabic language, a knife is called Sikkin as well as Al-Mudyah. It might perhaps have been called Al-Mudyah in the province of Abū Hurairah.
Chapter 15. The Judge Is Allowed To Speak Of Something That He Will Not Actually Do In Order To Establish The Truth

5405. It was narrated from Abû Hurairah that the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said: “Two women went out with two children of theirs, and the wolf attacked one of them and took her child. The next day they referred their dispute over the remaining child to Dâwûd, peace be upon him, and he ruled that (the child) belonged to the older woman. Then they passed by Sulaimân and he said: ‘What is your story?’ So they told him. He said: ‘Bring me a knife and I will cut him in half (to be shared) between you.’ The younger one said: ‘Will you cut him in half?’ He said: ‘Yes.’ She said: ‘Do not do that; I will give my share of him to her.’ He said: ‘He is your child, and he ruled that he belonged to her.’” (Sâhih)

Chapter 16. The Judge Undoing A Ruling Passed By Someone Else Of His Caliber Or Greater Than Him

5406. It was narrated from Abû Hurairah that the Prophet ﷺ said: “Two women went out with their two children, and the wolf took one of the children from them. They
referred their dispute to Prophet Dawūd, peace be upon him, and he ruled that (the remaining child) belonged to the older woman. Then they passed by Sulaimān, peace be upon him, and he said: 'How did he judge between you?' She said: 'He ruled that (the child) belongs to the older woman.' Sulaimān said: 'Cut him in half, and give half to one and half to the other.' The older woman said: 'Yes, cut him in half.' The younger woman said: 'Do not cut him, he is her child.' So he ruled that the child belonged to the woman who refused to let him be cut." (Sahih)

Chapter 17. Refuting A Judge If He Passes An Incorrect Judgment

5407. It was narrated from Sālim that his father said: "The Prophet sent Khālid bin Al-Walid to Banu Jadhīmah. He called them to Islam but they could not say Aslamna (we submitted, i.e., became Muslim) so they started to say Saba’na (we changed our religion). Khālid starting killing and taking prisoners, and he gave a prisoner to each man. The next day Khālid bin Al-Walid issued orders that each man among us kill his prisoner." Ibn 'Umar said: 'I said: 'By Allāh, I will not kill my prisoner, and no one (among my
companions) will kill his prisoner.'
We came to the Prophet ﷺ, and
he was told of what Khâlid had
done. The Prophet ﷺ said: ‘I
disavow what Khâlid has done,’
twice.” (Sahîh)

Comments:
1. The disbelievers used to nickname Muslims Sâbi, the one who emerges from
his religion. They used to consider them irreligious. The expression Sabâna is
derived from it. The motive of Bani Jadhîmah was, ‘We have emerged from
our ancestral religion, and have embraced Islam’. But they employed the
expression which the disbelievers sacrosanctly employed against Muslims. This
misled Khalid bin Al-Walid ﷺ. He thought they were still adhering to their
disbelief, and were satirizing the Muslims. It was, however, not the case.
Khalid ﷺ took disciplinary measures. Since it was his deducible error, Allâh’s
Messenger ﷺ merely absolved himself, and did not punish him.

2. The author’s argumentation is upon the course of action adopted by Ibn
‘Umar ﷺ and his Companions that they did not accept the order of the one
in command. In this case, Ibn ‘Umar, the narrator himself, was sure that they
intended that they accept Islam. The Hadîth, recorded by Muslim 4765, Al-
Bukhârî 7257, and others, supports Ibn ‘Umar’s behavior: “There is no
obedience in disobedience.” And Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ also supported them.

Chapter 18. Mentioning What
The Judge Should Avoid

5408. It was narrated that ‘Abdur-
Rahmân bin Abî Bakrah said: “My
father wrote to ‘Ubaidullâh bin Abî
Bakrah — who was the judge of
Sijistân – saying: ‘Do not pass judgment between two people when you are angry, for I heard the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ say: No one should pass judgment between two people when he is angry.” (Sahih)

Comments:
This anger means violent anger, which momentarily halts or blunts man's ability to think and comprehend, and there remains the danger of making the wrong decision, although slight anger, with which one is filled upon hearing the crime of a criminal, is not blameworthy in the process of one’s arriving at a judgment. Apart from anger, anything that creates an impact upon one’s ability of thinking and comprehending it falls under the ruling of rage, for instance, hunger, thirst, distress, sickness, etc. It is better to record the verdict in a separate sitting session, so that momentary emotions do not cast any impact on the verdict.

Chapter 19. Concession
Allowing A Trustworthy Judge To Pass Judgment When He Is Angry

5409. It was narrated from Az-Zubair bin Al-‘Awwâm that he disputed with a man among Ansâr who had been present at Badr with the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ concerning a stream in Al-Harah[1] from which they both used to water their date palm trees. The Ansârî said: “Let the water flow.” But he (Az-Zubair) refused. The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said: “Irrigate (your land), O Zubair! Then let the water flow to your neighbor.” The Ansârî became

angry and said, “O Messenger of Allah, is it because he is your cousin?” The face of the Messenger of Allah changed color (because of anger) and he said: “O Zubair! Irrigate (your land) then block the water, until it flows back to the walls.” So the Messenger of Allah allowed Az-Zubair to take his rights in full, although before that he had suggested to Az-Zubair a middle way that benefited both him and the Ansâr. But when the Ansâr made the Messenger of Allah angry, he gave Az-Zubair his rights in full, as stated clearly in his ruling. Az-Zubair said: “I think that this Verse was revealed concerning this matter: ‘But no, by your Lord, they can have no faith, until they make you (O Muhammad) judge in all disputes between them.’”[1] (Sahîh)

Comments:

The purpose of the chapter is clear; the author intends to say that this narration may be proof that the prohibition of a judge issuing a verdict while angry may be only a prohibition of dislike. Or, there is an exception for those who are known to be trusted. This is the more obvious, since he said: ‘A trustworthy judge’ using the word ‘Al-Amîn’ clearly makes analogy between a trusted judge and Allah’s Messenger while other scholars will consider the prohibition of passing judgment while angry to be general, and this proof deals only with specifics that are specific to Allah’s Messenger.

Chapter 20. The Judge Passing Judgment In His House

5410. It was narrated from ‘Abdullâh bin Ka‘b, from his father, that he asked Ibn Abî Hadrad to pay off a debt that he owed him. Their voices grew so loud that the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ heard them when he was inside his house. He came out to them, drew back the curtain of his room and called out: “O Ka‘b!” He said: “Here I am, O Messenger of Allâh.” He said: “Drop his debt to half.” He said: “I will do that.” He said (to the debtor): “Go and pay it off.” (Sahîh)

Comments:
The purpose of the chapter is that it is not necessary that the verdict could be passed in judicial courtrooms only. But if need arises, the judgment could be passed at home, mosque, marketplace, or wherever occasion arises, although the above-quoted incident is of conciliation, rather than of judgment.

Chapter 21. Seeking Help Against Another Person

5411. It was narrated that ‘Abbâd bin Shurâhbi`l said: “I came to Al-Madinah with my paternal uncles and entered one of its gardens, where I rubbed an ear of grain (to take some grains). The owner of the garden came, took my cloak and hit me. I came to the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ and sought his help against him. He sent for...” (Sahîh)
the man and they brought him. He said: 'What made you do that?' He said: 'O Messenger of Allāh, he entered my garden and took one of the ears of grain and rubbed it.' The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ said: 'You did not teach him if he was ignorant, nor feed him if he was hungry. Give him back his cloak.' And the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ ordered me with a ṭawq or half a ṭawq. (Sahih)

Comments:
1. The objective of the chapter is that seeking another’s help to solve disputes is allowed.
2. ‘Was ignorant’: What is meant is that he was ignorant, a stranger and hungry. You could have explained to him lovingly. ‘Look! My brother, instead of plucking it out, you should have taken permission of the owner.’ Then you should have given him something to eat, so that he could have satisfied his need. Instead, you took something from this poor stranger, and thrashed him.
3. From this, we learn the danger of punishments when there is no education.
4. To take a bite or two, or drink from an orchard, is not a crime upon which the prescribed legal punishment could be passed. This topic preceded.

Chapter 22. Sparing Women
The Need To Attend The Ruling

5412. It was narrated from Abū Hurairah and Zaid bin Khālid Al-Juhaifi that two men referred a dispute to the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ. One of them said: “O Messenger of Allāh, pass judgment between us according to the Book of Allāh.” The other, who was wiser, said: “Yes, O Messenger of Allāh, and allow me to speak.” He said: “My son was a laborer serving...
this man, and he committed Zinā with his wife. They told me that my son was to be stoned to death, but I ransomed him with one hundred sheep and a slave girl of mine. Then I asked the people of knowledge, who told me that my son was to be given one hundred lashes and exiled for a year, and that his (the man’s) wife was to be stoned to death.” The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ said: “By the One in Whose hand is my soul, I will pass judgment between you according to the Book of Allāh. As for your sheep and your slave girl, take them back.” Then he gave his son one hundred lashes, and exiled him for one year, and he ordered Unais to go to the wife of the other man and if she confessed, to stone her to death. She did confess, so he stoned her to death. (Sahih)

Comments:
1. ‘I ransomed him (I gave one hundred goats and a slave girl as ransom or appeasement)’: He thought adultery with someone’s wife is the infringement of her husband’s right. He should, therefore, be appeased. On the contrary, it is the violation of the commandment of the Divine law, which is connected with the society. Hence, this crime would not be pardoned due to the husband forgiving it; rather, after being taken to the court, prescribed legal punishment shall assuredly be given.

2. ‘He was given one hundred lashes’, because he had confessed to it. The crime had been proved.

3. ‘Go to the man’s wife’: The chapter’s argumentation is founded upon these words, that instead of summoning the woman to the judiciary, Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ sent his official to her house. If, however, investigations are not completed at home, women may be summoned to the court of law, although, it is better that the investigations are completed at homes in the case of women.
5413. It was narrated that Abū Hurairah, Zaid bin Khālid and Shibl said: ‘We were with the Prophet when a man stood up and said: ‘I adjure you, by Allāh, pass judgment between us according to the Book of Allāh.’ His opponent, who was wiser than him, stood up and said: ‘He is right, pass judgment between us according to the Book of Allāh.’ He said: ‘Speak.’ He said: ‘My son was a laborer serving this man, and he committed Zīnâ with his wife. I ransomed him with one hundred sheep and a servant.’ It is as if he was told that his son was to be stoned to death but he ransomed him from that. ‘Then I asked some knowledgeable men and they told me that my son was to be given one hundred lashes and exiled for a year.’ The Messenger of Allāh said to him: ‘By the One is Whose hand is my soul, I will pass judgment between you according to the Book of Allāh, the Mighty and Sublime. As for the one hundred sheep and the servant, take them back, and your son is to be given on hundred lashes and exiled for a year. O Unais, go tomorrow to the wife of this man and if she confesses, then stone her to death.’ She did confess, so he stoned her to death.” (Sahih)


Comments:

By Kitābillah or ‘the Book of Allāh’, the Divine law of Allāh, Most High, is meant, whether it is described in the Qur’ān, or the Prophet’s Sunnah.
Chapter 23. The Judge Turning Toward One Who Tells Him That He Has Committed Zina

5414. It was narrated from Abû Ummâmah bin Sahl bin Hunâif that a woman who had committed Zina was brought to the Prophet ﷺ. He said: "With whom?" She said: "With the paralyzed man who lives in the garden of Sa'd." He was brought and placed before the Prophet ﷺ and he confessed. The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ called for a bunch of palm leaves and hit him. He took pity on him because of his disability and was lenient with him. (Sahîh)

Comments:

'Took pity on him': He was not married. Lashes were incumbent for him, because there was the risk of his dying. He was, therefore, whipped with a date palm stalk with its leaves, so as not to cause too much harm to him.

Chapter 24. The Judge Going To His People To Reconcile Between Them

5415. Sahl bin Sa'd Al-Sâ'îdî said: "Words were exchanged between two clans of the Anṣâr, to the point that they began to throw rocks at one another. The Prophet ﷺ went..."
to reconcile between them. The time for prayer came, so Bilâl called Adhân and waited for the Messenger of Allâh عليه السلام, but he was delayed. He said the Iqâmah and Ābu Bakr, may Allâh be pleased with him, went forward (to lead the prayer). Then the Prophet ﷺ came while Ābu Bakr was leading the people in prayer, and when the people saw him they clapped. Ābu Bakr would not turn around when he was praying, but when he heard them clapping, he turned around and saw the Messenger of Allâh عليه السلام. He wanted to step back but (the Prophet ﷺ) gestured to him to stay where he was. Ābu Bakr, may Allâh be pleased with him, raised his hands, then he moved backward and the Messenger of Allâh عليه السلام came forward and led (the rest of) the prayer. When the Messenger of Allâh عليه السلام finished praying, he said: ‘What prevented you from staying where you were?’ He said: ‘I would not like Allâh to see the son of Ābu Quhâfah standing in front of His Prophet. Then he (the Prophet ﷺ) turned to the people and said: ‘If you noticed something while you were praying, why did you clap? That is for women. Whoever notices something while he is praying, let him say: “Subhân Allâh.”’ (Sahîh)
Comments:
The purpose of the chapter is that the ruler should not keep waiting that the people will approach him after fighting among themselves; then he would pass the judgment. He should attempt to see that fighting does not take place at all. People should be made to reach a compromise. Other relevant themes of this narration have been discussed previously.

Chapter 25. The Judge
Advising Disputing Parties To Reconcile

5416. It was narrated from Ka'b bin Mālik that he owed a debt by 'Abdullāh bin Abī Ḥadrād Al-Aslāmī. He met him, and asked him to pay it off. They exchanged words until their voices became loud. The Messenger of Allāh passed by them and said: “O Ka'bi!” and he gestured with his hand to say half. So he took half of what was owed and let him off the other half. (Sahih)

Chapter 26. The Ruler
Suggesting That The Disputant Should Pardon

5417. It was narrated that Wā'il said: “I saw the Messenger of Allāh when a killer was brought by the heir of the victim by a string. The Messenger of Allāh said to the heir of the victim: ‘Will you forgive him?’ He said: ‘No.’ He said: ‘Will you accept the Diyāh?’ He said: ‘No.’ He said: ‘Will you kill him?’ He said: ‘Yes.’ He said: ‘Take him away.’
When he went and turned away from him, he called him back and said: ‘Will you forgive him?’ He said: ‘No.’ He said: ‘Will you accept the Diyah?’ He said: ‘No.’ He said: ‘Will you kill him?’ He said: ‘Yes.’ He said: ‘Take him away.’ When he went and turned away from him, he called him back and said: ‘Will you forgive him?’ He said: ‘No.’ He said: ‘Will you accept the Diyah?’ He said: ‘No.’ He said: ‘Will you kill him?’ He said: ‘Yes.’ He said: ‘Take him away.’ At that point the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said: ‘But if you forgive him, he will carry his own sin and the sin of your companion.’ So he forgave him, and I saw him dragging his string.” (Sahîh)

Comments:
In the case of disputes which are pardonable and could be excused, pardon and excuse in such matters is commendable, because forgiveness and magnanimity end mutual enmity. Love for each other increases. The social environ becomes tranquil. Taking revenge is, however, permissible, but in the case of retaliation, the situation often turns flammable. Mutual displeasure and enmity raise their ugly heads. Therefore, the Divine law considers forgiveness superior to taking revenge, provided the other party admits its fault in humility and asks for forgiveness with sincerity. It is appropriate for the ruler to make efforts for conciliation in the above-quoted legal wrangles. If he is not able to do so, then he should judge between them rightfully and justly, although certain social crimes are such that they are not worthy of forgiveness, for instance, theft, adultery, etc. If such cases reach the court of law, it is compulsory to return a verdict upon them. Murder or killing falls in the category. (For further details pertaining to this narration, please see Hadîth 4726 to 4735).
Chapter 27. The Judge Suggesting Leniency

5418. It was narrated from ‘Urwah that ‘Abdullāh bin Az-Zubair narrated to him that a man among the Anṣār disputed with Az-Zubair concerning a stream in Al-Ḥarrah from which they both used to water their date palm trees. The Anṣārī said: “Let the water flow,” but he (Az-Zubair) refused. They brought their dispute to the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ. The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ said: “Irrigate (your land), O Zubair, then let the water flow to your neighbor.” The Anṣārī became angry and said, “O Messenger of Allāh, is it because he is your cousin?” The face of the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ changed color (because of anger) and he said: “O Zubair, irrigate (your land) then block the water until it flows back to the walls.” Az-Zubair said: “I think that this Verse was revealed concerning this matter: ‘But no, by your Lord, they can have no faith.’”[1] (Sahih)

(please see No. 5409)
Chapter 28. The Judge Seeking To Intercede For One Of The Disputing Parties Before Passing Judgment

5419. It was narrated from Ibn `Abbas that the husband of Barirah was a slave called Mughith. It is as if I can see him walking behind her weeping, with the tears running down onto his beard. The Prophet ﷺ said to Al-`Abbas: “O `Abbas, are you not amazed by the love of Mughith for Barirah and the hatred of Barirah for Mughith?” The Messenger of Allah ﷺ said to her: “Why don’t you take him back, for he is the father of your child?” She said: “O Messenger of Allah, are you commanding me (to do so)?” He said: “I am just interceding.” She said: “I have no need of him.” (Sahih)

Comments:

Earlier it has preceded that if a slave woman is emancipated and her husband is still a slave, then she has the right to keep the marriage intact, or if she so desires, she may break it. Here the problem was the same. So to speak, the ruler need not necessarily return the verdict. He may rather intercede on behalf of one of the two parties for reconciliation. And this is superior, particularly so when there is the possibility of a break up.

Chapter 29. The Ruler Preventing His Flock From Wasting Their Wealth When They Have Need Of It

5420. It was narrated that Jābir bin `Abdullāh said: “A man among the Ansār stated that his slave was to be set free after he died; he was in need, and he owed a debt. The
Messenger of Allah ﷺ sold him (the slave) for eight hundred Dirhams, and he gave (the money) to him and said: 'Pay off your debt and spend on your dependents.'” (Saḥīḥ)

Comments:

*Mudabbar* signifies a slave whom his master says, 'You will be free after my death.' Evidently, had Allah’s Messenger ﷺ not sold the slave, he would have become free only upon the death of his Helper Companion. Allah’s Messenger ﷺ, therefore, sold him. From this, we learn that the appropriate charity is only that which is performed after meeting one’s need, and after repaying one’s debt, etc.

Chapter 30. Passing Judgment In A Dispute Concerning A Little Wealth, Or A Great Deal Of Wealth

5421. It was narrated from Abū Umâmah that the Messenger of Allah ﷺ said: “Whoever seizes the wealth of a Muslim unlawfully by means of his (false) oath, Allah makes the Fire required for him, Paradise unlawful for him.” A man said to him: “O Messenger of Allah, even if it is something small?” He said “Even if it is a twig of an Arāk tree.” (Saḥīḥ)
Chapter 31. The Judge Passing A Judgment On Someone In Absentia, If He Knows Who He Is

5422. It was narrated that 'Āishah said: “Hind came to the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ and said: ‘O Messenger of Allâh, Abû Sufyân is a stingy man who does not spend enough on my child and I. Can I take from his wealth without him realizing?’ He said: ‘Take what is sufficient for you and your child on a reasonable basis.’” (Ṣaḥîh) (المجمع (٣١) - قضاء الحاكم على الجاني إذا عرفه (التحفة (٣٠) ـ الديوان ٧٢٩)

Comments:

‘Take what is sufficient’ means what is in accord with your needs. An-Nasâ’î has argued, from this narration, concerning the permissibility of giving judgment over the person who is absent.

Chapter 32. Prohibition Of Passing Two Judgments On One Issue

5423. It was narrated that ‘Abdullâh bin Abî Bakrah, who was a governor in Sijistan, said: “Abû Bakrah wrote to me, saying: ‘I heard the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ say: No one should pass two judgments on one issue, and no one should pass judgment between two disputing parties while he is angry.’” (Ṣaḥîh) (المجمع (٣٢) - النهي عن أن ي قضي في قضاء قضائين (التحفة (٣١) ـ الديوان ٧٢٩)

Comments:

The judge should not pass two judgments on one issue, or between two disputing parties while he is angry.
Comments:
Passing conflicting verdicts in a single given lawsuit or in two identical lawsuits ruins the credibility of the judge. Besides, this gives rise to more disputes among people, while the main objective of returning verdicts is to end disputes and quarrels.

Chapter 33. What May Cancel A Judgment

5424. It was narrated that Umm Salamah said: “The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said: ‘You refer your disputes to me, but I am only human. And some of you may be more eloquent in arguing their case than others, and I may pass judgment on the basis of what I hear. If I pass judgment in favor of one of you against his brother’s rights, then it is a piece of fire that I am giving him.’” (Sahîh)

Comments:
The judgment of a judge or Qâdi does not make lawful what is unlawful. This is the course of action of the dominant majority of the people of knowledge. For further details, please turn to narration 5403.

Chapter 34. The Most Quarrelsome Of Opponents

5425. It was narrated that ‘Aïshah said: “The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said: ‘The most hated of men to Allâh is the most quarrelsome of opponents.’” (Sahîh)
Chapter 35. Passing Judgment When There Is No Evidence

5426. It was narrated from Abû Mûsâ that two men referred a dispute to the Prophet concerning an animal, and neither of them had any evidence, so he ruled that it be shared equally between them. (Hasan)

Comments:
Evidence: For instance, a witness or any document, etc. Likewise, it was not in anyone's possession, or was under the possession of both of them. The contextual indications also did not point out any priority.

Chapter 36. The Judge Advising Disputants To Take An Oath

5427. It was narrated from Nâfî' bin 'Umar, that Ibn Abî Mulaikah said: "There were two female neighbors who used to do leatherwork (with an awl) in At-

Comments:

Tâ'if. One of them came out with her hand bleeding and claimed that her companion had injured her, but the other one denied it. I wrote to Ibn ‘Abbâs concerning that. He wrote, (saying) that the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ ruled that the person against whom the claim was made should swear an oath. For if people were to be given what they claimed was theirs, then people would make claims against the wealth and blood of others.” So he[1] called her and recited this Verse to her: “Verily, those who purchase a small gain at the cost of Allâh’s Covenant and their oaths, they shall have no portion in the Hereafter...”[2] until the end of the Verse. He called her and recited that to her, and she confessed to that. News of that reached him and he was happy. (ṣâhid)

Comments:

It is absolutely clear that the defendant shall be made to take the oath (if he denies or disowns). If he swears the oath, the plaintiff shall receive nothing. If the defendant refuses to swear the oath, then the thing would be turned over to the plaintiff upon swearing the oath. This is called Yamin al-ghamûs. (A typical form of sinful oath is when a person takes an oath on the truth of something which he knows to be untrue; this is called Yamin al-ghamûs or the engulfing oath).

---

Chapter 37. How The Judge Is To Ask People To Swear For An Oath

5428. It was narrated that Abû Sa'eed Al-Khudrî said: “Mu'âwiyyah, (may Allâh be pleased with him,) said: The Messenger of Allâh went out to a circle - meaning, of his Companions - and said: ‘What are you doing?’ They said: ‘We have come together to pray to Allâh and praise Him for guiding us to His religion, and blessing us with you.’ He said: ‘I ask you, by Allâh, is that the only reason?’ They said: ‘By Allâh, we have not come together for any other reason.’ He said: ‘I am not asking you to swear to an oath because of any suspicion; rather Jibrîl came to me and told me that Allâh, the Mighty and Sublime, is boasting of you to the angels.’” (Sahîh)

Comments:
1. Allâh’s Messenger’s purpose is this, “I asked you to swear an oath in view of the significance of your deed. Not on account of any doubt or aspersion.”
2. This narration demonstrates that an oath should be sworn by the name of Allâh alone; and this much is sufficient. And that asking: “By Allâh?” is sufficient when requesting one to swear an oath.

5429. It was narrated that Abû Hurairah said: “The Messenger of Allâh said: ‘Abû Jâ’far, I saw a man stealing, and said to him: Are you stealing? He said: No, by Allâh besides Whom there is no other
God! 'Isa, peace upon him, said: I believe in Allâh and I disbelieve my eyes.” (Sahîh)

Comments:
1. ‘I disbelieve’: The meaning is if someone is made to take an oath, it should be acknowledged or believed. If someone swears a false oath, he would reap what he has sown. In the mentioned incident, the man might have been collecting his own property, or someone else’s, after having obtained their permission. Or his intention might have been merely to pick up the thing by picking it up. It might not have been his intention to carry it away. Such possibilities could be numerous. So to state, apparently it looked like a case of stealing. But the matter became clear by his taking the oath.

2. To call Prophet 'Isa (as) 'Isa bin Maryam every time and in every place provides the conclusive evidence that he was born without a father, so that he could become a miracle for people, upon his truthfulness.

3. The oath mentioned in the narration is of the variety of Mu’aqqad and Mughallâz (stressed or emphasized). In other words, such an oath could also be sworn. That is because the man did not merely say: “By Allâh” but added: “Whom there is no other god!” stressing his oath.
The Book Of Seeking
Refuge With Allâh

(Chapter 1. What Was Narrated Concerning Al-Mu‘awwadhatain (Two Sûras Seeking Refuge With Allâh)

5430. It was narrated from Mu‘âdh bin ‘Abdullâh that his father said: "It was raining and dark, and we were waiting for the Messenger of Allâh ( ﷺ) to lead us in prayer. Then the Messenger of Allâh ( ﷺ) came out to lead us in prayer and he said: 'Say.' I said: 'What should I say?' He said: 'Say: He is Allâh, (the) One[1] and Al-Mu‘awwadhatain in the evening and in the morning, three times, and that will suffice you against everything." (Hasan)

Comments:
1. Man is a weak created being who cannot spend even a moment in this world without the Help of Allâh, Most High. None is self-sufficiently independent of Allâh. Countless are the occasions when man finds himself utterly helpless, and he becomes impotent and incapable, despite all his energies, capabilities, and resources. At that moment he feels the dire need of help and succor, and that help is only possible from Allâh, Most High. In order to save himself from calamities and afflictions, man seeks refuge of Allâh, Most High, whether the calamities and afflictions are of this mundane world or of the other world, whether they are physical, spiritual, material, or abstract.

1 Al-Ikhlaṣ 112.
2. *Mu'awwidhatain* (the two Surahs of refuge) Surah Al-Falaq and Surah An-Nás, because they begin with the expression *Alláhu.* The meaning is: The two Surahs of seeking refuge.

3. That will suffice you as protection from everything from which protection is possible; otherwise, safeguarding against death, etc., is not possible, although protection against the evil of everything will be secured, for instance, from dying a bad death.

5431. It was narrated from Mu'ádh bin 'Abdulláh bin Khubab that his father said: "I was with the Messenger of Alláh on the road to Makkah when I found myself alone with the Messenger of Alláh. I drew close to him and he said: 'Say.' I said: 'What should I say?' He said: 'Say.' I said: 'What should I say?' He said: 'Say: I seek refuge with Alláh, the Lord of the daybreak..."[1] until he finished (the Súrah), then he said: 'Say: I seek refuge with Alláh, the Lord of mankind..."[2] until he finished it. Then he said: 'The people cannot seek refuge with Alláh by means of anything better than these two.'" (Hasan)

**Comments:**

The meaning is that with regard to seeking refuge or protection, these two Suráhs are the best of all, because they were sent down for this very purpose. For other purposes, some other Suráhs could also be distinctly superior.

5432. It was narrated that 'Uqbah bin 'Ámir Al-Juhání said: "While I was leading the Messenger of Alláh on his mount on a military campaign, he said: 'O 'Uqbah, say!' I listened, then he said: 'O 'Uqbah, say!' I listened, then he said it a
third time. I said: ‘What should I say?’ He said: ‘Say: He is Allâh, (the) One...’[1] and he recited the Surâh to the end. Then he recited: ‘Say: I seek refuge with (Allâh) the Lord of the daybreak...’[2] and I recited it with him until the end. Then he recited: ‘Say: I seek refuge with (Allâh) the Lord of mankind...’[3] and I recited it with him until the end. Then he said: ‘No one ever sought refuge (with Allâh) by means of anything like them.’’’ (Hasan)

Comments:
The meaning is that far from being superior, no other Surâh equals them with regard to seeking protection or refuge.

5433. It was narrated that ‘Uqbah bin ‘Amir Al-Juhani said: “The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said to me: ‘Say.’ I said: ‘What should I say?’ He said: ‘Say: He is Allâh, (the) One,’[4] ‘Say: I seek refuge with (Allâh) the Lord of the daybreak,’ ‘Say: I seek refuge with (Allâh) the Lord of mankind.’[5] The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ recited them, then he said: ‘The people have never recited anything like them, or the people have never sought refuge (with Allâh) by means of anything like them.’” (Hasan)

5334. Abū `Abdullāh narrated that Ibn `Ābis Al-Juhānī told him that the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ said to him: “O Ibn `Ābis, shall I not tell you of the best thing with which those who seek refuge with Allāh may do so?” He said: “Yes, O Messenger of Allāh.” He said: “Say: I seek refuge with (Allāh) the Lord of the daybreak.”[1] “Say: I seek refuge with (Allāh) the Lord of mankind.”[2] – these two Sūrahs.” (Hasan)

5435. It was narrated that `Uqbah bin `Āmir said: “The Prophet ﷺ was given a gray mule which he rode, and `Uqbah led it. The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ said to `Uqbah: ‘Recite.’ He said: ‘What should I recite, O Messenger of Allāh?’ He said: ‘Recite: ‘Say: I seek refuge with (Allāh) the Lord of the daybreak, from the evil of what He has created.’ And he repeated it until I had learned it.” (Hasan)

Comments:
The meaning is that to seek protection, this Surah is the best of all, because it is extremely comprehensive and all-embracing. In it, every type of evil has been alluded to, and Allâh’s protection is sought against it.

5436. It was narrated from ‘Uqbah bin ‘Amir that he asked the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ about Al-Mu‘a‘wîdhatâin. ‘Uqbah said: “The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ recited them when he led us in Salâh Al-Ghadâh (As-Subh).” (Sahîh)

Comments:
In the dawn prayer (Fajr), lengthy recitation of the Glorious Qur’ân was the practice of the Prophet ﷺ. But that day, he recited these two concise Surâh in order to underline their significance, that in spite of their being brief, they are comprehensive and most excellent. So much so that they could suffice in place of lengthy recitation in the Fajr prayer.

5437. It was narrated from ‘Uqbah that the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ recited them in the Subh prayer. (Sahîh)

5438. It was narrated that ‘Uqbah bin ‘Amir said: “I was leading the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ (on his mount) on a journey, and the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said: ‘O ‘Uqbah, shall I not teach you the best two Surâhs that can be recited?’ And he taught me: ‘Say: I seek refuge with (Allâh) the Lord
of the daybreak.”[1] and ‘Say: I seek refuge with (Allâh) the Lord of mankind...’[2] He thought that I did not seem too overjoyed with them, so when he stopped to pray Subh, he recited them when he led the people in the Subh prayer. When the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ finished praying, he turned to me and said: ‘O ‘Uqbah, what do you think?’” (Hasan)

Comments:
‘What do you think?’ means did you realize the importance of these two Sûras?

5439. It was narrated that ‘Uqbah bin ‘Âmir said: “While I was leading the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ (on his mount) in one of these mountain passes, he said: ‘Why don’t you ride, O ‘Uqbah?’ I had too much respect for the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ to ride the mount of the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ. Then he said: ‘Why don’t you ride, O ‘Uqbah?’ I was worried that I might be disobeying him, so he got off, and I rode for a little while, then I got off and the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ rode. Then he said: ‘Shall I not teach you two of the best Sûras that the people recite?’ And he taught me: ‘Say: I seek refuge with (Allâh) the Lord of the daybreak,’ and Say: I seek refuge...
with (Allâh) the Lord of mankind."[1] Then the Iqâmah was said and he went forward and recited them. Then he passed by me and said: ‘What do you think, O ‘Uqbah bin ‘Amir? Recite them every time you go to sleep and get up.’” (Sahîh)

5440. It was narrated that ‘Uqbah bin ‘Amir said: “I was walking with the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ and he said: “O ‘Uqbah, say!” I said: ‘What should I say, O Messenger of Allâh?’ He did not answer me, then he said: ‘O ‘Uqbah, say!’ I said: ‘What should I say, O Messenger of Allâh?’ But he did not answer me. I said: ‘O Allâh, make him answer me.’ He said: ‘O ‘Uqbah, say!’ I said: ‘What should I say, O Messenger of Allâh?’ He said: ‘Say: I seek refuge with (Allâh) the Lord of the Daybreak...’[2] So I recited it until I came to the end. Then he said: ‘Say,’ and I said: ‘What should I say, O Messenger of Allâh?’ He said: ‘Say: I seek refuge with (Allâh) the Lord of mankind...’[3] so I recited it until I came to the end. Then the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said: ‘No one who asks has ever asked by means of anything like them, and no one who seeks refuge has ever sought refuge

with anything like them.”’ (Hasan)

Comments:

‘He did not answer me’: The Prophet’s uttering the same thing and then falling silent was in order to arouse interest and attention in the mind of the interlocutor, so that the significance of the forthcoming facts might become clear to him.

5441. It was narrated that ‘Uqbah bin ‘Amr said: “I came to the Messenger of Allâh while he was riding, and I put my hand on his foot and said: ‘Teach me Sûrah Hûd, teach me Sûrah Yâsîn.” He said: ‘You will never recite anything more precious before Allâh, the Mighty and Sublime, than: ‘Say: I seek refuge with (Allâh) the Lord of the daybreak.”’ (Sahîh)

Comments:

‘More precious’ means in the matter of seeking protection. Otherwise, from other dimension, some other Sûrah could be excellent.

5442. It was narrated from ‘Uqbah bin ‘Amr that the Prophet said: “There have been revealed to me Verses the like of which has never been seen: ‘Say: I seek refuge with (Allâh) the Lord of the daybreak...[1] to the end of the Sûrah, and ‘Say: I seek refuge with (Allâh) the Lord of mankind...[2] to the end of the Sûrah.”’ (Sahîh)

Comments:

5443. It was narrated that Jâbir bin Abdullâh said: “The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said to me: ‘Recite, O Jâbir!’ I said: ‘What should I recite, my father and mother be ransomed for you, O Messenger of Allâh?’ He said: Recite: ‘Say: I seek refuge with (Allâh) the Lord of the daybreak...’, and: ‘Say: I seek refuge with (Allâh) the Lord of mankind...’[1] So I recited them, and he said: ‘Recite them, for you will never recite anything like them.’” (Hasan)

Chapter 2. Seeking Refuge
With Allâh From A Heart That Does Not Feel Humble

5444. It was narrated from 'Abdullâh bin 'Amr that the Prophet ﷺ used to seek refuge with Allâh from four things: From knowledge that is of no benefit, from a heart that does not feel humble, from a supplication that is not heard, and a soul that is never satisfied. (Hasan)

Comments:
1. Beneficial knowledge signifies the action congruous to knowledge, because the first and foremost benefit of knowledge and erudition should reach the erudite himself, then to others, for instance, calling people to Allâh, teaching, etc.

2. ‘From a soul that is never satisfied’: It signifies the inner self’s greediness and avarice, although desire or covetousness for knowledge and recompense is praiseworthy.

Chapter 3. Seeking Refuge
From The Tribulation Of The Heart

5445. It was narrated from ‘Umar that the Prophet used to seek refuge with Allah from cowardice, miserliness, the tribulation of the heart and the torment of the grave. (Hasan)

Chapter 4. Seeking Refuge
From The Evil Of One’s Hearing And Seeing

5446. It was narrated that Shakal bin Humaid said: "I came to the Prophet and said: ‗O Prophet of Allah, teach me words by means of which I may seek refuge with Allah. He took me by the hand and said: ‘Say: A‘dhu bika min sharri sam, wa sharri basari, wa sharri lisani, wa sharri qalbi, wa sharri mani (I seek refuge with You from the evil of my hearing, the evil of my seeing, the evil of my tongue, the evil of my heart, and the evil of my sperm).’" (Hasan)
Comments:
Seeking protection or refuge from these things means their illicit and misplaced utilization, and seeking refuge of Allâh signifies their protection that they may not be wrongly used.

Chapter 5. Seeking Refuge
From Cowardice

5447. It was narrated that 'Abdul-Mâlik bin 'Umair said: "I heard Muṣ'ab bin Sa'd (narrate) about his father: 'He used to teach us five things, which he said that the Messenger of Allâh  used to recite in his supplication: 'Allâhumma innâ aʿūdhu bika minal-bukhlî, wa aʿūdhu bika minal-jubnî, wa aʿūdhu bika an uradda ila ardhal-ʾumuri, wa aʿūdhu bika min fitmatid-dunyâ, wa aʿūdhu bika min ʿadḥābil-qabr (O Allâh, I seek refuge in You from miserliness, and I seek refuge in You from cowardice, and I seek refuge in You from reaching the age of senility, and I seek refuge in You from the trials of this world, and I seek refuge in You from the torment of the grave).'" (Ṣaḥîḥ)

Comments:
Taking refuge means seeking protection or shielding with Allâh; O Allâh! Keep me protected from these things.

Chapter 6. Seeking Refuge
From Miserliness

5448. It was narrated that Ibn Masʿûd said: "The Prophet  used to seek refuge (with Allâh) from
five things: From miserliness, cowardice, reaching the age of second childhood, the tribulation of the heart and the torment of the grave.” *(Sahih)*

5449. It was narrated that ‘Amr bin Maimûn Al-Awdî said: “Sa’d used to teach his children these words as a teacher teaches his students, and he said that the Messenger of Allâh used to seek refuge by means of them at the end of every prayer: ‘Allâhumma innî a’âdhu bika minal-bukhâlî, wa a’âdhu bika minal-jubnî, wa a’âdhu bika an uradda ila ardhalil-ramuri, wa a’âdhu bika min fînatid-dunyâ, wa a’âdhu bika min ‘âdhabil-qabr (O Allâh, I seek refuge with You from miserliness, and I seek refuge in You from cowardice, and I seek refuge in You from the trials of this world, and I seek refuge in You from the torment of the grave.’ So I narrated that to Mu’âsâb and he said that he told the truth.” *(Sahih)*

5450. It was narrated from Anas that the Messenger of Allâh used to say: “Allâhumma innî a’âdhu bika minal-‘ajzi, wal-kasali, wal-bukhâlî, wal-harami, ‘âdhabil-qabr wa fînatil-mahiyya wal-mamât
(O Allâh, I seek refuge in You from incapacity and laziness, and miserliness and old age, and the torment of the grave, and the trials of life and death.)” (Sahîh)

Comments:
Incapacity or ‘ajaza means man’s lack of strength or power or ability to do anything. He might not know how to do it, or he might not have the strength to do it, or he might be too helpless or overwhelmed that despite having power, he is not able to do it.

Chapter 7. Seeking Refuge From Worry

5451. It was narrated that Anas bin Mâlik said: “The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ had supplications that he never omitted to recite. He used to say: ‘Allâhumma innî a’îdhu bika minal-hamni, wal-hazani, wal-‘ajzi, wal-kasali, wal-bukhlî, wal-jubni, wa ghalabatar-rijâl (O Allâh, I seek refuge with You from worry, grief, incapacity, laziness, miserliness, cowardice and being overpowered by (other) men.)’” (Sahîh)

5452. It was narrated that Anas bin Mâlik said: “The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ had supplications that he never neglected. He used to say: ‘Allâhumma innî a’îdhu bika minal-hamni, wal-hazani, wal-‘ajzi, wal-kasali, wal-bukhlî, wal-jubni, wad-daini, wa ghalabatar-rijâl (O Allâh, I seek refuge with You from worry,
grief, incapacity, laziness, miserliness, cowardice, debt, and
being overpowered by (other) men."

Imám Abû 'Abdur-Raḥmân (An-Nasâ') said: This is correct, and
the narration of Ibn Fuḍail[1] is a mistake. (Ṣaḥīḥ)

Comments:

Debt signifies that debt which could not be repaid, but rather increases and
becomes a source of humiliation and disgrace for the debtor. Otherwise, debt
in its absolute sense was often taken by the Prophet ﷺ and there is often no
escape from it.

5453. Anas said: “The Prophet ﷺ used to say in his supplication:
‘Allāhumma inni a'ūdhu bika minal-kasali, wal-harami, wal-jubni, wal-
bukhli, wa fitnatid-dajjâlî, wa 'adḥābil-qabr (O Allâh, I seek
refuge in You from laziness, old age, cowardice, miserliness, the
tribulation of the Dajjâl and the torment of the grave.)’” (Ṣaḥīḥ)

تخريج: [صحيح] أخرجه البخاري، الدعوات، باب الاستعاذة من الجنا وعذاب القدر.
هـ 3719 من حديث عمرو بن أبي عمرو، وهو في الكبيرة، ح: 7886.

5454. It was narrated from Anas that the Prophet ﷺ used to say:
“Allāhumma inni a'ūdhu bika minal-qa'izi, wal-kasali, wal-harami,
wattukhlî, wal-jubni, wa 'aūdhu bika min 'adḥābil-qabrî, wa min
fitnatil-mahyâ wal-mamâti (O Allâh, I seek refuge in You from

[1] That is No. 5451.
incapacity, laziness, old age, miserliness and cowardice, and I seek refuge in You from the torment of the grave, and from the trials of life and death.)” (Ṣaḥīḥ)

Chapter 8. Seeking Refuge From Grief

5455. It was narrated from Anas bin Mālik, that when the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ supplicated, he would say: “Allāhumma inni aʿūdhu bika minal-hammi, wa-hazani, wa-lʿażi, wa-lkasali, wa-l-bukhli, wa-l-jubnī, wa-dalāʾid-daini, wa-ghalabatar-rijāl (O Allāh, I seek refuge with You from worry, grief, incapacity, laziness, miserliness, cowardice, difficult debt and being over powered by men.)” (Ṣaḥīḥ)

Abū ‘Abdur-Raḥmān (An-Nasāʾi) said: Saʿeed bin Salamah is a Shaikh who is weak, we only reported from him because he added in the narration.
Chapter 9. Seeking Refuge From Debt And Sin

5456. It was narrated that ‘Aishah said: “The Messenger of Allâh  used to seek refuge (with Allâh) from debt and sin. I said: ‘O Messenger of Allâh, how often you seek refuge from debt!’ He said: ‘Whoever gets into debt speaks and lies, and makes a promise and breaks it.’” (Sahîh)

Comments:
Such person is overwhelmed. He possesses nothing to repay. He tells lies under duress to save his soul. He is forced to make impossible promises. This demonstrates that debt here does not connote an ordinary debt or the debt in its absolute sense, but heavy back-breaking debt, whose repayment is impossible for him to make. Sin in this narration also denotes that sin which men deliberately and brazenly commit, or it might signify that sin which a debtor commits as has preceded above.

Chapter 10. Seeking Refuge From The Evil Of Hearing And Seeing

5457. It was narrated that Shakal bin Humaid said: “I came to the Prophet  and said: ‘O Prophet of Allâh, teach me words by which I may seek refuge (with Allâh).’ He took me by the hand then said: ‘Say: A‘îdhu bika min sharri samî’, wa sharri baṣârî, wa sharri lisânî, wa sharri qalbî, wa sharri manî (I seek refuge in You from the evil of my
Chapter 11. Seeking Refuge From The Evil Of Seeing

5458. It was narrated from Shatair bin Shakal bin Humaid, that his father said: “I said: ‘O Messenger of Allâh, teach me a supplication from which I may benefit.’ He said: ‘Say: Allâhumma ‘âfînî min shari‘ samî, wa baṣarî, wa lisânî, wa qalbî, wa min shari‘ manî (O Allâh, protect me from the evil of my hearing, my seeing, my tongue and my heart, and from the evil of my sperm.)’” — Meaning sexual organ.

Chapter 12. Seeking Refuge From Laziness

5459. It was narrated that Khâlid said: “Humaid narrated: ‘Anas – bin Mâlik – was asked about the torment of the grave and about the Dajjâl. He said: “The Prophet of Allâh used to say: Allâhumma, inni a‘îdhu bika minal-kasâli, wa-harâmi, wa-jubâni, wa-bukhâli, wa fitnatid-dajjâli, wa ‘adhâbil-qabr (O Allâh, I seek refuge with You from
laziness, old age, cowardice, stinginess, the tribulation of the 
Dajjāl and the torment of the
grave.)" (Hasan)

Comments:
The signification of the answer of Anas is that the Deceiver or the Dajjāl
would surely appear, and that the punishment of the grave is true. The trial of
Dajjāl means following him.

Chapter 13. Seeking Refuge
From Incapacity

5460. It was narrated that Zaid bin Arqam said: “I will not teach you
anything but that which the Messenger of Allāh used to
teach us. He said: ‘Allāhumma inni a'ūdu binka min al-'ajzi wal-kasali,
wal-bukhlī, wal-ju'bni, wal-harami, wa 'adhābil-qabrī, Allāhumma āti
nafsī tawwāhā, wa zakkihā anta khairū min zakkāhā, anta wāliyyuhā
wa mawlāhā. Allāhumma inni a'ūdu binka min qalbin lā
yakhsha'u wa min nafsīn lā tashba'u wa 'ilmin lā yanfa'u wa da'watin lā
yustajābu lahā (O Allāh, I seek refuge in You from incapacity, laziness, miserliness, cowardice, old
age, the torment of the grave. O Allāh, make my soul obedient and
purify it, for You are the best One
to purify it, You are its Guardian
and Lord. O Allāh, I seek refuge in
You from a heart that is not
humble, a soul that is not satisfied,
knowledge that is of no benefit and
a supplication that is not answered.)" (Sahīh)
Comments:
(For detail, please see Hadith 5444)

5461. It was narrated from Anas that the Prophet of Allâh ﷺ said: "Allàhumma inni a'ûdhu bika min al-'ajzi, wal-kasali, wal-bukhî, wal-jubni, wal-harani, wa 'adhâbil-qabri, wa fitnatil-mahyâ wal-mamât (O Allâh, I seek refuge in You from incapacity, laziness, miserliness, cowardice, old age, the torment of the grave and the trials of life and death.)" (Saâhî)
Comments:
Poverty means that poverty which does not entail the danger of disbelief and misguidance, because poverty might become the source of misguidance for common folks.

5463. Abû Hurairah said: “The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said: ‘Seek refuge with Allâh from poverty, want, humiliation and wronging others or being wronged.’” (Sahîh)

5464. It was narrated from Abû Hurairah, from the Prophet ﷺ, that he used to say: “Allâhumma inni a‘îdhu bika minal-qillati wal-waqqi, wadhih-diillati wa a‘îdhu bika min azliima aw uzlam (O Allâh, I seek refuge with You from want, poverty and humiliation, and I seek refuge with You from wronging others or being wronged.).” (Sahîh)

Chapter 15. Seeking Refuge From Want

5465. Abû Hurairah said: “The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said: ‘Seek refuge with Allâh from poverty, want and humiliation, and from wronging others or being wronged.’” (Sahîh)
Chapter 16. Seeking Refuge
From Poverty

5466. Abū Hurairah narrated that the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ said: “Seek refuge with Allāh from poverty, want and humiliation, and from wronging others or being wronged.” (Ṣaḥīḥ)

5467. Muslim – meaning bin Abī Bakrah – narrated that he heard his father say following the prayer: “Allāhumma innī aʿdhu bika minal-kifr wal-faqri, wa ʿadhâbil-qabri (O Allāh, I seek refuge with You from Kufr, poverty and the torment of the grave.)” I started to recite them and he said: “O my son, where did you learn these words?” I said: “O my father, I heard you saying this supplication at the end of the prayer, and I learned them from you.” He said: “Continue to recite them, O my son, for the Prophet of Allāh ﷺ used to say this supplication at the end of the prayer.” (Ḥasan)
Comments:

‘At the end of...’: The expression used in Arabic is *Dubur*. It means ‘after’ and also ‘at the end’. Therefore, another translation could be ‘after the prayer.’

Chapter 17. Seeking Refuge
From The Evils Of The Trials
Of The Grave

5468. It was narrated that ‘Aishah said: “The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ often used to say these words in his supplication: ‘Allāhu umma, inni a‘ūduhu bika min fitnatin-nāri, wa ‘adhābin-nāri, wa fitnatil-qabrī, wa ‘adhābil-qabrī, wa sharri fitnatiilmasihid-dajjāli, wa sharri fitnatiil-faqri, wa sharri fitnatiil-ghina. Allāhumma misbihka min ‘iththalji wal-baradī wa anqi qalbi minal-khaṭāyi kamā anqaitath-thawbal-abyaqa min ad-danasi, wa bā’id bainī wa baina khaṭāyi kamā bā’adta bainal-mashriqi wal-maghibrib. Allāhumma inni a‘ūduhu bika min al-kasali wal harami, wa ma’thami wal-maghram (O Allāh, I seek refuge with You from the tribulation of the Fire and the torment of the Fire, from the tribulation of the grave and the torment of the grave, from the evil of the tribulation of the Al-Masīhid-Dajjāl, from the evils of the tribulation of poverty and from the evil of the tribulation of richness. O Allāh, I seek refuge in
You from laziness, old age, sin and debt." (Sahih)

Comments:
1. The Arabic word Fitna, of which Fitan is the plural form, covers a wide range of meaning. By extension of the basic concept of 'the melting of gold and silver in the fire in order to separate, or distinguish the bad from the good', it comes to signify 'a trial, a temptation, an affliction, by which a person is tried, proved, or tested'. Man is tried or tested with various things; for instance, poverty, wealth, etc. so that his Faith or disbelief becomes clear. Likewise, people would be tested with the trial of Ad-Dajjāl or the Deceiver. Questioning in the grave would also reveal Faith or disbelief. That is why these things were called a trial or Fitna.

2. Trial of the grave signifies interrogation or questioning, which occurs between the angels and the one buried or interred. And the evil of these trials means at the time of being tested by these trials, man might fail, and instead of Faith, disbelief comes to the fore.

3. For the signification of 'the washing of sins', please turn to Hadith 61 and 896.

Chapter 18. Seeking Refuge
From A Soul That Is Not Satisfied

5469. Abū Hurairah said: "The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ used to say: 'Allāhumma inni a‘ūdhu bika min al-arba': min 'ilmīn lā yahfa‘u, wa min walbin lā yakhsha‘u, wa min nafsīn lā tashba‘u, wa min du‘ā‘in lā yusma (O Allāh, I seek refuge in You from four: From knowledge that is of no benefit, from a heart that is not humble, from a soul that is not satisfied and from a supplication that is not answered.)" (Hasan)

Comments:
(See Hadith 5444)
Chapter 19. Seeking Refuge From Hunger

5470. It was narrated that Abū Hurairah said: “The Messenger of Allah ﷺ said: ‘Allâhumma inni a‘udhu bika minal-jû‘i, fa innahu bi’sad-daji‘u, wa a‘udhu bika minal-khiyânati, fa innahu bi’satîl-biţânah (O Allâh, I seek refuge in You from hunger, for it is a bad companion, and I seek refuge with You from treachery, for it is a bad thing to hide in one’s heart.)”’ (Da‘if)

Comments:
1. Hunger is inherent in man. There is no escaping from it. Hence, hunger in this Tradition does not mean ‘absolute hunger’. It rather means serial or continuous hunger or appetite which is described by the expression Faqr or poverty in the narration 5462; in that man fails to obtain so much to eat and drink that he could satisfy his hunger.

2. Treachery is blameworthy, whether it is in the rights of Allâh, or the rights of bondsmen. It is a sign of hypocrisy. May Allâh keep us safe from these both.

Chapter 20. Seeking Refuge From Treachery

5471. It was narrated that Abû Hurairah said: “The Messenger of Allah ﷺ used to say: ‘Allâhumma inni a‘udhu bika minal-jû‘i, fa innahu bi’sad-daji‘u, wa a‘udhu bika minal-khiyânati, fa innahu bi’satîl-biţânah (O Allâh, I seek refuge in You from hunger, for it is a bad companion, and I seek refuge with You from treachery, for it is a bad thing to hide in one’s heart.)”’ (Hasan)

تخريج: [إسناده ضعيف] أخرجه أبو داود، ح: 1547، (انظر الحديث السابق) عن محمد بن العلاء به، وهو في الكبرى، ح: 793 = ابن عجلان عن من.

تخريج: [حسن] انظر الحديث السابق، وهو في الكبرى، ح: 7904.
Chapter 21. Seeking Refuge From Opposing The Truth, Hypocrisy And Bad Manners

5472. It was narrated from Anas that the Prophet used to say these supplications: “Allâhumma inni a’udhu bika min ‘ilmin lâ yarsa’u, wa qalbin lâ yakhsha’u, wa du’â in lâ yasma’u, wa nafsîn lâ tashba’u. (O Allâh, I seek refuge with You from knowledge that is of no benefit, a heart that is not humble, a supplication that is not heard and a soul that is not satisfied.)” Then he would say: ‘Allâhumma inni a’udhu bika min hâ’ulâ’il-arba’ (O Allâh, I seek refuge with You from these four.)’’ (Sahîh)

5473. Abû Hurairah said: “The Messenger of Allâh used to say in his supplication: ‘Allâhumma inni a’udhu bika minash-shiqâqi wan-mifâqi, wa suw’il-akhlâq (O Allâh, I seek refuge with You from opposing the truth, hypocrisy and bad manners.)’’ (Da’if)

Comments:

‘Opposing the truth’: The term Shiqâq signifies dissension, disunity, discord, or opposition, which is based on mere obduracy, bigotry, racism, and stubbornness, and which contains no dimension of justice. Obviously, such opposition could only be against truth. Hence, it is abominable.
Chapter 22. Seeking Refuge From Debt

5474. It was narrated that ‘Aishah said: “The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ often used to seek refuge (with Allâh) from debt and sin. It was said to him: ‘O Messenger of Allâh! You often seek refuge from debt and sin?’ He said: ‘If a man gets into debt, he speaks and lies, and he makes a promise and breaks it.”’ (Sahîh)

Comments:
(Please see Hadîth 5456)

Chapter 23. Seeking Refuge From Debt


Comments:
In this chapter, the term Dayn is used, which also means debt or pecuniary obligation in general. Dayn signifies every right which is to be fulfilled
obligatorily, whether it is a debt or something else. Seeking refuge from *Dayn* means death might not befall me in a state when I owe rights to others, because this obligation would also become a barrier in one's entering into Paradise, as death upon disbelief prohibits entrance into Paradise. This is the reason why refuge from both these things is collectively sought, though disbelief permanently prohibits entry into Paradise.

5476. It was narrated from Abû Sa'eed that the Prophet ﷺ said: “*A'ūdhu billâhi minal-kufri waddain* (I seek refuge with Allâh from Kufr and debt.)” A man said: “Are you equating debt with Kufr?” He said: “Yes.” (Da‘îf)

Chapter 24. Seeking Refuge From Being Overwhelmed With Debt

5477. It was narrated from 'Abdullâh bin 'Amr bin Al-Âs that the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ used to say these words in his supplication: “*Allâhumma innî a'ūdhu bika min ghalabatid-dain, wa ghalabatil-'adwuwî, wa shamátatil-a'dâ*. (O Allâh, I seek refuge with You from being overwhelmed with debt, from being overpowered by the enemy and from the enemy rejoicing over my misfortunes.)” (Hasan)
Chapter 25. Seeking Refuge
From Difficult Debt

5478. It was narrated that Anas bin Mālik said: “The Prophet ﷺ used to say: ‘Allāhumma inni a’ūduhū bika minal-hamāni wal hazzani, wal-kasali, wal-bukhāli, wal-jubnī, wa dala’id-dain, wa ghulabatir-rijāl (O Allāh, I seek refuge with You from worry, grief, laziness, miserliness, cowardice, difficult debt and being overpowered by men.)’” (Sahih)

Comments:
(Please see narrations 5451 to 5452)

Chapter 26. Seeking Refuge
With Allāh From The Evil Of
The Trials Of Richness

5479. It was narrated that ‘Aishah said: “The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ used to say: ‘Allāhumma inni a’ūduhū bika min ’adhābil-qabr, wa fitnatin-nār, wa fitnatin-qabr, wa ’adhābil-qabr, wa sharri fitnatin-mashhād-dajjalī wa sharri fitnatin-ghanī, wa sharri fitnatin-faqri. Allāhummaghisl katāyāya kama naqqaitath-thawbal-abyada minad-danas. Allāhumma inni a’ūduhū bika minal-kasali walharami wal-maghrami wal-math’ham (O Allāh, I seek refuge with You from the torment of the grave, the tribulation of the Fire, the tribulation of the grave and the torment of the grave, the evil of the tribulation of Masihid-Dajjāl, the evil of the tribulation of richness and
The Book Of Seeking...

the evil of the tribulation of poverty.
O Allâh, wash away my sins with
water of snow and hail, and cleanse
my heart of sin as a white garment is
cleansed of filth. O Allâh, I seek
refuge with You from laziness, old
age, debt and sin.)" (Sahîh)

Comments:

(Please see Hadîth 5468)

Chapter 27. Seeking Refuge
From The Trials Of This
World

5480. Muṣ'âb bin Sa'd said that
Sa'd used to teach him these words,
narrating from the Prophet ﷺ:
"Allâhumma innî a'îdhu bika minal-
bukhârî, wa a'îdhu bika minal-jubnî,
wa a'îdhu bika an uradda ila
ardhalil-'umuri, wa a'îdhu bika min
fitnatid-dunyâ, wa 'adhabil-qabr (O
Allâh, I seek refuge with You from
miserliness, and I seek refuge with
You from cowardice, and I seek
refuge with You from reaching the
age of senility, and I seek refuge in
You from the trials of this world and
the torment of the grave.)" (Sahîh)

5481. It was narrated that Muṣ'âb
bin Sa'd and 'Amr bin Maimûn Al-
Awdî said: "Sa'd used to teach his
children these words as a teacher
teaches his students, and he would
say that the Messenger of Allâh
used to seek refuge (with Allâh) with
these words at the end of every prayer: ‘Allāhumma innī aʿādhu bika minal-bukhli, wa aʿādhu bika minal-jubni, wa aʿādhu bika an uradda ila ardhalil-ʿumuri, wa aʿādhu bika min fitnaid-dunyā, wa min ʿadḥābil-qabr (O Allāh, I seek refuge with You from miserliness, and I seek refuge with You from cowardice, and I seek refuge with You from reaching the age of senility, and I seek refuge with You from the trials of this life and the torment of the grave.”’ (Sahih)

5482. It was narrated from 'Umar that the Prophet ﷺ used to seek refuge with Allāh from cowardice, miserliness, reaching the age of second childhood, the trials of the heart and the torment of the grave.

(Sahih)

Comments:
(Please see narrations 5445, 5447)

5483. It was narrated that 'Urwah bin Maimūn said: "I heard 'Umar bin Al-Khaṭṭāb say: 'The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ used to seek refuge with Allāh from five things and say: Allāhumma innī aʿādhu bika minal-jubni, wa suw'il-ʿumuri, wa fitnatis-sadri wa ʿadḥābil-qabr (O Allāh, I seek refuge with You from cowardice, miserliness, reaching the age of second childhood, the trials of the heart and the torment of the grave.)’" (Sahih)
5484. It was narrated that 'Amr bin Maimūn said: “The Companions of Muhammad told me that the Messenger of Allāh used to seek refuge with Allāh from stinginess, cowardice, the trials of the heart and the torment of the grave.” (Sāhiḥ)

5485. It was narrated that 'Amr bin Maimūn said: “The Prophet used to seek refuge.” Mursal. (Sāhiḥ)

Comments:

Mursal means that the transmitter did not mention the name of any of the Prophet’s Companions.

Chapter 28. Seeking Refuge From The Evils Of One’s Sexual Organ

(المعجم 28) - الإشعاذة بن شارِ الذَّكرِ (المجلة 28) - النَّافِئة بن شَرِّي وَكَبِيعُ قُلُّهُ

5486. It was narrated from Shutair bin Shakal bin Ḥumaid, that his father said: “I said: ‘O Messenger of Allāh, teach me a supplication from which I may benefit.’ He said: ‘Say: Allāhumma ‘āfinī min shari samā’, wa baṣari, wa lisānī, wa qalbī, wa shari manī (O Allāh, protect me from the evil of my hearing, my seeing, my tongue and my heart, and the evil of my sperm.)’” – Meaning his sexual organ. (Hasan)

Chapter 29. Seeking Refuge
From The Evil Of Kufr

5487. It was narrated from Abū Sa'eed Al-Khudrī that the Messenger of Allāh used to say: "Aʿūdhu billāhi minal-kufri wal-faqr. (O Allāh, I seek refuge with You from Kufr and poverty.)" A man said: "Are they equal?" He said: "Yes." (Dā'f)

Comments: (Please see to narration 5446)

Chapter 30. Seeking Refuge
From Misguidance

5488. It was narrated from Umm Salamah that when the Prophet went out of his house, he said: "Bismillāhi Rabbi ʿAūdhu bika min azilla aw aṣīla aw aẓīma aw uzlama, aw ajhala aw yuḥala ʿalayya (In the name of Allāh my, Lord, I seek refuge in You from falling into error or going astray, or wrongdoing (others) or being wronged, and from behaving or being treated in an ignorant manner.)" (Dā'f)

Comments: (Please see narrations 5462, 5475)
Chapter 31. Seeking Refuge
From Being Overpowered By
The Enemy

5489. It was narrated from 'Abdullâh bin 'Amr bin Al-Âş that the Messenger of Allâh used to say supplication in these words:

"Allâhumma in-nî a'âdhu bika min ghalabatid-dain, wa ghalabatil-'aduwî, wa shâmâtatil-a'dâ." (O Allâh, I seek refuge with You from being overwhelmed by debt and from being overpowered by the enemy, and from the enemy rejoicing at my misfortune.)"

(Hasan)

Comments:
(Please see narration 5477)

Chapter 32. Seeking Refuge
From The Enemy Rejoicing In
One's Misfortune

5490. It was narrated from 'Abdullâh bin 'Amr that the Messenger of Allâh used to say supplication in these words:

"Allâhumma in-nî a'âdhu bika min ghalabatid-dain, wa ghalabatil-'aduwî, wa shâmâtatil-a'dâ." (O Allâh, I seek refuge with You from being overwhelmed by debt and from being overpowered by the enemy, and from the enemy rejoicing at my misfortune.)"

(Hasan)


Chapter 33. Seeking Refuge From Old Age

5491. It was narrated from ‘Uthmān bin Abī Al-‘Āṣ that the Prophet ﷺ used to say supplication in these words: “Allāhumma innī a‘ūdhu bika mīnall-kasāli, wathārami, wa-jubnī, wa‘ajzi, wa min fitnati-mahyā walmamāt. (O Allāh, I seek refuge in You from laziness, old age, cowardice, and incapacity, and from the trials of life and death.)” (Hasan)

5492. It was narrated from ‘Amr bin Shu‘aib, from his father, that his grandfather said: “I heard the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ say: ‘Allāhumma innī a‘ūdhu bika mīnall-kasāli, wathārami, wa-maghrami, walmārthami, wa a‘ūdhu bika min sharril-masāhīd-dajjalī, wa a‘ūdhu bika min ‘adāhīn-nār (O Allāh, I seek refuge in You from laziness, old age, debt and sin, and I seek refuge in You from the evil of the Al-Masāhīd-Dajjal, and I seek refuge in You from the torment of the grave, and I seek refuge in You from the punishment of the Fire.)’” (Hasan)

Chapter 34. Seeking Refuge From Being Destined To An Evil End

5493. It was narrated that Abū Hurairah said: “The Prophet ﷺ used to seek refuge from these
three: From being overtaken by destruction, from his enemies rejoicing in his misfortune, from being destined to an evil end, and from the difficult moment of a calamity.” Sufyān (one of the narrators) said: “There were three, and I mentioned four because I do not remember which one was not one of them.” (Sahih)

Chapter 35. Seeking Refuge
From Being Overtaken By Destruction

5494. It was narrated from Abū Hurairah that the Prophet ﷺ used to seek refuge from being destined to an evil end, from his enemies rejoicing in his misfortune, from being overtaken by destruction and from the difficult moment of a calamity. (Sahih)

Chapter 36. Seeking Refuge
From Madness

5495. It was narrated from Anas that the Prophet ﷺ used to say: “Allāhumma inni 'a'ūdhu bika minal-junūnī wal-jadhāmī, wal-barāsi wa sayy'il-asgām (O Allāh, I seek refuge in You from possession, leprosy, leukoderma and bad sickness (that may lead to visible deformity)).” (Da'īf)
Chapter 37. Seeking Refuge
From The Evil Eye Of The Jinn

5496. It was narrated that Abû Sa’ead said: “The Messenger of Allah used to seek refuge from the evil eye of the Jinn and the evil eye of humans. When Al-Mu’awwadhatân were revealed, he started to recite them and stopped reciting anything else.” (Da’if)

Chapter 38. Seeking Refuge
From Having A Bad Old Age

5497. It was narrated that Anas said: “The Messenger of Allah used to seek refuge by saying these words: ‘Allâhumma inni a’ûduh bika minal-kasali, wal-harami, wal-jubni, wal-bukhli, wa suwil-kibari, wa fitnatid-dajjâli wa ‘adhabîl-qabr (O Allâh, I seek refuge with You from laziness, old age, cowardice, miserliness, a bad old age, the tribulation of the Dajjâl and the torment of the grave.)’” (Sâhih)

Comments:
In Arabic, the term used is Kabar (Kabr). If it is read Kibr, it would signify pride or vain conceit. If it is read Kibar, it would mean old age. In the case of
the signification of vain conceit or pride, *Sā'il kābr* would mean the bad habit of arrogance or priding.

Chapter 39. Seeking Refuge From Reaching The Age Of Senility

5498. It was narrated that ‘Abdul-Mālik bin ‘Umar said: “I heard Muṣ’ab bin Sa’d say, concerning his father: ‘He used to teach us five things that the Messenger of Allāh (may peace and blessings of Allāh be upon him) used to recite in his supplication, and say: “*Allāhumma inni a‘ūdhu bika minal-bukhlī, wa a‘ūdhu bika minal-jubnī, wa a‘ūdhu bika an uradda ila ardhalil-‘umuri, wa a‘ūdhu bika min ‘adhābil-qabr* (O Allāh, I seek refuge in You from miserliness, and I seek refuge in You from cowardice, and I seek refuge in You from reaching the age of senility, and I seek refuge in You from the torment of the grave.)” (Sahih)”

Chapter 40. Seeking Refuge From Reaching The Age Of Second Childhood

5499. It was narrated that ‘Amr bin Maimūn said: “I went for *Hajj* with ‘Umar, and in Muzdalifah, I heard him say that the Prophet (peace and blessings of Allāh be upon him) used to seek refuge from five things: ‘*Allāhumma inni a‘ūdhu bika minal-bukhlī, wa-l-jubnī, wa a‘ūdhu bika min su‘il-‘umuri, wa a‘ūdhu bika min fitnatis-ṣadri, wa a‘ūdhu bika min ‘adhābil-qabr* (O Allāh, I seek refuge with You from *Sā'il kābr* (the muǧamm (the tajdīf) (the muǧamm (the tajdīf) (the muǧamm (the tajdīf) (the muǧamm (the tajdīf) (the muǧamm (the tajdīf) (the muǧamm (the tajdīf) (the muǧamm (the tajdīf) (the muǧamm (the tajdīf) (the muǧamm (the tajdīf) (the muǧamm (the tajdīf) (the muǧamm (the tajdīf) (the muǧamm (the tajdīf) (the muǧamm (the tajdīf) (the muǧamm (the tajdīf) (the muǧamm (the tajdīf) (the muǧamm (the tajdīf) (the muǧamm (the tajdīf) (the muǧamm (the tajdīf).
miserliness and cowardice, and I seek refuge with You from reaching the age of second childhood, and I seek refuge in You from the ills of the heart, and I seek refuge in You from the torment of the grave.”’ (Ṣaḥīḥ)

Comments:

(See narrations 5445, 5447, and 5448)

Chapter 41. Seeking Refuge
From Loss After Plenty

5500. It was narrated from ‘Abdullāh bin Sarjīs that when the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ traveled, he would say: “Allāhumma innī a‘ūdhu bika min wa‘thā‘is-safari, wa kābatil-munqalabī, wa-hawrī ba‘dāl-kawrī, wa da‘watil-mazlūmī, wa suw’il-munzārī fil-ahlī wal-māl (O Allāh, I seek refuge with You from the hardships of travel and the sorrows of return, from loss after plenty, from the supplication of the one who has been wronged, and seeing some calamity befall my family or wealth.)” (Ṣaḥīḥ)

Comments:

1. ‘Grief of return’: This means ‘that I return grief-stricken after having failed in my objective’.

2. ‘Loss after plenty (or decrease or recession after increase or addition)’: These are comprehensive all-embracing words, which cover in their range every gain and loss, good and evil, for instance, disbelief after Faith, illness after health, poverty after wealth or abundance, etc.
Chapter 42. Seeking Refuge
From The Prayer Of One Who Has Been Wronged

5502. It was narrated that ‘Abdullāh bin Sarjis said: "When the Messenger of Allāh (saw) traveled, he would seek refuge with Allāh from the hardships of travel, and the sorrows of return, from loss after plenty, from the supplication of the one who has been wronged, and from seeing some calamity befall." (Ṣaḥīḥ)
narrators) stretched out his finger – and said: 'Allâhumma, antaṣ-sâhibu fis-safari wal-khalîfatu fil-ahlî wal-mâl. Allâhumma, inni a'âdhu bika min wa'thâ'is-safari, wa kâbatil-munqalabi (O Allâh, You are our help when we are traveling and the One Who takes care of our families and wealth (in our absence). O Allâh, I seek refuge in You from the hardships of travel and the sorrows of return.)'" (Hasan)

تَحَرِّيف: [إِسْتَهَادَهُ حُسَنٍ] أَخْرِجَهُ الرَّجُمِيُّ، الدَّعُواتُ، بَابُ ما يَقُولُ إِذَا خَرَجَ مَسْافَرًا، حُسَنٌ غَرِيبٌ وَهُوَ فِي الْكَبْرَىٰ حُسَنٌ غَرِيبٌ. ١٩٣٨٨.

Chapter 44. Seeking Refuge From A Bad Neighbor

٥٥٠٤. اِتَّبَعْنَا عَمَّرُ بْنُ عَلِيٍّ قَالَ: "أَمْضِى تَحْكُمًا، تَحْكُمًا مَّعْدُودًا بْنُ عَجِلَانٍ عَنْ سَعِيدَ بْنَ أَبِي سَعِيدِ الْمَطْرِي، عَنْ أَبِي هُرَيْرَةَ قَالَ: قَالَ رَسُولُ اللَّهِ ﷺ: "إِنَّ اللَّهَ يَكْفَرُ مَعَكَ بَلَاغًا مِّنَ الْمَخَافَةِ فِي دُرْعِي، فَإِنَّ دُرْعَيْنِ الْبَلَادِ يَكْفُوُّنَ عَنْكَ"." (هَاضِن)

تَحَرِّيف: [حُسَنٍ] أَخْرِجَهُ البَخَارِيُّ فِي الأَدْبِ الْمَفْرَدِ، حُسَنٌ غَرِيبٌ وَهُوَ فِي الْكَبْرَىٰ حُسَنٌ غَرِيبٌ. ١٩٣٩٨.

Comments:
A place of long continuance, residence, abode, or absolute abode means a city, township, or habitation, where houses are built, which last for centuries.

Chapter 45. Seeking Refuge From Being Overpowered By Men

٥٥٠٥. أَنَّسَ بْنُ مَالِكَ قَالَ: "الَّذِي قَالَ الرَّجُلُ: "هَدَّئْنَا إِسْمَاعِيلًا قَالَ: حَدَّثَنَا عُمَرُو بْنُ أَبِي
serve me.' Abû Talhah brought me out, riding behind him, and I served the Prophet محمد ﷺ every time he stopped (on his journey). And I often heard him say: 'Allâhumma, innî a‘ūdhu bika min al-harami, wal-huzni, wal-ajzi, wal-kasali, wal-bukhlî, wal-jabnî, wa qala‘id-dain, wa ghalabatir-rijâl (O Allâh, I seek refuge in You from old age, grief, incapacity, laziness, miserliness, cowardice, the burden of debt and being overpowered by men.)' (Sahîh)

Comments:
(See no. 5452.)

Chapter 46. Seeking Refuge From The Tribulation Of The Dajjâl

5506. It was narrated from 'Aîshah that the Prophet محمد ﷺ used to seek refuge with Allâh from the torment of the grave and the tribulation of the Dajjâl, and he said: "You will be tried in your graves." (Sahîh)

Comments:
(See No. 2067.)

Chapter 47. Seeking Refuge From The Torment Of Hell And The Evils Of Al-Masihid-Dajjâl

5507. It was narrated that Abû Hurairah said: "The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said: 'A‘ūdhu billâhi min
The Book Of Seeking...

276

‘adḥābī jahannama, wa a‘ūdhu billāhī min ‘adḥābīl-qabri, wa a‘ūdhu billāhī min sharrīl-masihīd-dajjālī, wa a‘ūdhu billāhī min sharīfīn-mahyā wál-mamāt (I seek refuge with Allāh from the torment of Hell, and I seek refuge with Allāh from the torment of the grave, and I seek refuge with Allāh from the evil of the Dajjāl, and I seek refuge with Allāh from the evil of the trials of life and death.)” (Ṣaḥīḥ)

Comments:

For details, please see narrations 5453, 5492.

5508. It was narrated from Abū Hurairah that the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ used to say: “Allāhumma inni a‘ūdhu bīka min ‘adḥābīl-qabri, wa a‘ūdhu bīka min ‘adḥābīn-nāri, wa a‘ūdhu bīka min fitnātīn-mahyā wál-mamāt wa a‘ūdhu bīka min sharrīl-masihīd-dajjālī (O Allāh, I seek refuge with You from the torment of the grave, and I seek refuge with You from the torment of the Fire, and I seek refuge with You from the trials of life and death, and I seek refuge with You from the evil of the Al-Masihīd-Dajjāl.)” (Ṣaḥīḥ)
Chapter 48. Seeking Refuge From The Evil Of Devils Among Mankind

5509. It was narrated that Abû Dharr said: “I entered the Masjid and the Messenger of Allâh was there, so I came and sat before him and he said: ‘O Abû Dharr, seek refuge with Allâh from the evils of the devils among the Jinn and mankind.’ I said: ‘Are there devils among mankind?’ He said: ‘Yes.’” (Da’îf)

Chapter 49. Seeking Refuge From The Trials Of Life

5510. It was narrated from Abû Hurairah that the Prophet said: “Seek refuge with Allâh from the torment of the grave, seek refuge with Allâh from the trials of life and death, and seek refuge with Allâh from the tribulation of Al-Masâhid-Dajjâl.” (Sahîh)

5511. It was narrated from Abû Hurairah that the Messenger of Allâh used to seek refuge with Allâh from five things, saying: “Seek refuge with Allâh from the
torment of the grave, and from the torment of Hell, and from the trials of life and death, and from the evil of Al-Masihid-Dajjāl.” (Ṣaḥīḥ)

5512. Abū Hurairah said: “I heard the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ say: ‘Whoever obeys me has obeyed Allāh and whoever disobeys me has disobeyed Allāh.’ And he used to seek refuge from the torment of the grave, the torment of Hell, the trials that may befall the living and the dead, and the tribulation of Al-Masihid-Dajjāl.” (Ṣaḥīḥ)

5513. Abū Hurairah said: “He (meaning the Prophet ﷺ) said: ‘Seek refuge with Allāh from five things: From the torment of Hell, the torment of the grave, the trials of life and death, and the tribulation of Al-Masihid-Dajjāl.’” (Ṣaḥīḥ)
Chapter 50. Seeking Refuge From The Trials Of Death

5514. It was narrated from 'Abdullāh bin 'Abbās that the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ used to teach them this supplication as he would teach them a Sūrah of the Qurʾān: “Say: ‘Allāhumma, innā na‘uwḍhu bika min ‘adḥābi jahannama, wa a‘ḍhū bika min ‘adḥābil-qabri, wa a‘ḍhū bika min fitmatil-masihid-dajjālī, wa a‘ḍhū bika min fitmatil-malihā wal-mamāt (O Allāh, we seek refuge with You from the torment of Hell, and I seek refuge with You from the torment of the grave, and I seek refuge with You from the trials of life and death.)’” (Ṣaḥīḥ)

5515. It was narrated from Abū Hurairah that the Prophet ﷺ said: “Seek refuge with Allāh from the punishment of Allāh, seek refuge with Allāh from the trials of life and death, from the torment of the grave and from the tribulation of Al-Masihid-Dajjāl.” (Ṣaḥīḥ)


Chapter 51. Seeking Refuge From The Torment Of The Grave

5516. It was narrated from Abū Hurairah that the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ used to say in his supplication: "Allāhumma, inni aʿūdhu bika min ʿadhābi jahannama, wa aʿūdhu bika min ʿadhābil-qabri, wa aʿūdhu bika min fitnati-masīḥid-dajjāli, wa aʿūdhu bika min fitnati-mahyā wal-mamāt (O Allāh, I seek refuge with You from the torment of Hell, and I seek refuge in You from the torment of the grave, and I seek refuge in You from the trials of life and death.)" (Sahih)

Chapter 52. Seeking Refuge From The Trial Of The Grave

5517. It was narrated from Sulaimān bin Yasār that he heard Abū Hurairah say: "I heard the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ say in his supplication: ʿAllāhumma, inni aʿūdhu bika min fitnati-qabri, wa fitnati-dajjāli, wa fitnati-mahyā wal-mamāt (O Allāh, I seek refuge with You from the trial of the grave, and the tribulation of the Dajjāl, and the trials of life and death.)" (Sahih)

Abū ʿAbdūr-Rahmān (An-Nasāʾi) said: This is a mistake, and what is correct is “Sulaimān bin Sinān.”
Comments:
If the punishment of the grave is separate from the trial of the grave, then the trial of the grave would be the questions of the angels, and the punishment of the grave means that punishment, which is meted out to the disbelievers and the hypocrites, after their interrogation by the angels. We seek refuge in Allāh from it. Taking refuge from the questioning of the angels means 'I might be able to answer them rightly and might emerge triumphant from this test'.

Chapter 53. Seeking Refuge
From The Punishment of Allāh

5518. It was narrated from Abū Hurairah that the Prophet ﷺ said: “Seek refuge with Allāh from the punishment of Allāh, seek refuge with Allāh from the torment of the grave, seek refuge with Allāh from the trials of life and death, and seek refuge with Allāh from the tribulation of Al-Masīhīd-Dajjāl.” (Ṣaḥīḥ)

Chapter 54. Seeking Refuge
From The Torment Of Hell

5519. It was narrated that Abū Hurairah said: “The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ used to seek refuge (with Allāh) from the torment of Hell, the torment of the grave, and Al-Masīhīd-Dajjāl.” (Ṣaḥīḥ)
Chapter 55. Seeking Refuge
From The Torment Of The Fire

5520. Abû Hurairah said: The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said: “Seek refuge with Allâh from the torment of the Fire and the torment of the grave, from the trials of life and death, and from the evil of Al-Masihîd-Dajjâl.” (Sâhîh)

Chapter 56. Seeking Refuge
From The Heat Of The Fire

5521. It was narrated that 'Âishah said: “The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said: ‘Allâhummah, rabba jibra’îla, wa mikâ’îla wa rabba isrâfîla, a’âdhu bika min harrin-nâri wa (min) ‘adhâbil-qabr (O Allâh, Lord of Jibra’il and Mika’il and Lord of Israfil, I seek refuge in You from the heat of the Fire and (from) the torment of the grave.)”” (Hasan)

Comments:
Jibril, Mîkail, and Israfil are superbly high-ranking Angels of Allâh. Apart from a lofty station, they possess mighty powers. They are the leaders of angels.
5522. It was narrated from Sulaimān bin Sinān Al-Muzani that he heard Abū Hurairah say: "I heard Abū Al-Qāsim say, during his prayer: 'Allāhumma, innī aʿādu bika min fatnāt-qabri, wa fitnāt-dajjālī, wa min fitnāt-mahyā wal-mamātī, wa min harī jahannam (O Allāh, I seek refuge with You from the trial of the grave, and from the tribulation of the Dajjāl, and from the trials of life and death, and from the heat of Hell.)'" (Ṣaḥīḥ)

5523. It was narrated that Anas bin Mālik said: "The Messenger of Allāh said: ‘Whoever asks Allāh for Paradise three times, Paradise will say: ‘O Allāh, admit him to Paradise.' And whoever seeks protection from Hell three times, Hell will say: ‘O Allāh, protect him from the Fire.'" (Ṣaḥīḥ)

Chapter 57. Seeking Refuge From The Evil Of What One Has Done, And Mentioning The Differences Reported from ʿAbdullāh Bin Buraidah About That

5524. It was narrated from Shaddād bin Aws that the Prophet said: "The best of prayers for
forgiveness is for a person to say:  ‘Allâhumma, anta râbbî, lâ ilâha illâ anta, khalaqtanî wa anâ ‘abduka, wâ anâ ‘ala ‘ahdika wa wa‘dika mâtata’tu, a‘îdhu bika min sharrî mî ‘sana’tu, abuw’u laka bid’hanbî, wa abuw’u laka bini‘matika alayyâ fâqhirî, fa innahu lâ yaghfiruh-dhumaba illâ anta (O Allâh, You are my Lord, there is no god but You. You have created me and I am Your slave and I am keeping my promise and covenant to You as much as I can. I seek refuge with You from the evil of what I do. I acknowledge Your blessing and I acknowledge my sin, so forgive me, for there is none who can forgive sin except You.’) If he says this in the morning, believing in it firmly, and dies on that day before evening comes, he will enter Paradise, and if he says it in the evening, believing firmly in it, and dies before morning comes, he will enter Paradise.” Al-Wâld bin Tha‘labah contradicted him. (Sahîh)

Chapter 58. Seeking Refuge From The Evil Of One’s Actions, And Mentioning the Differences Reported From Hilâl

5525. It was narrated from ʿAbdah bin Abî Lubâbah that Ibn Yasâf told him that he asked ʿÂishah, the wife of the Prophet ﷺ, what supplication did the Messenger of
Allāh say the most before he died? She said: "The supplication that he said the most was: 'Allāhumma, innī aʿūdhu bika min sharrī mà 'amīlū wa min sharrī mà lam aʿmal baʿd.' (O Allāh, I seek refuge with You from the evil of what I have done, and from the evil of what I have not done yet.)"

(Sahīh)

5526. Ibn Yasaľ said: "I asked 'Aishah, what was the supplication that the Prophet said the most? She said: 'The supplication that he said the most was: 'Allāhumma, innī aʿūdhu bika min sharrī mà 'amīlū wa min sharrī mà lam aʿmal baʿd.' (O Allāh, I seek refuge with You from the evil of what I have done, and from the evil of what I have not done yet.)" (Sahīh)

5527. It was narrated that Farwah bin Nawfal said: "I asked the Mother of the Believers 'Aishah about what the Messenger of Allāh used to say in his supplication. She said: 'He used to say: 'Aʿūdhu bika min sharrī mà 'amīlū wa min sharrī mà lam aʿmal baʿd.' (I seek refuge with You from the evil of what I have done and the evil of what I have not done yet.)" (Sahīh)
It was narrated that 'Aishah said: “The Messenger of Allâh used to say: ‘Allâhumma, inni a‘îdhu bika min sharri mā ‘amîlta wa min sharri mā lam a‘mal ba’d (O Allâh, I seek refuge with You from the evil of what I have done and from the evil of what I have not done yet.)’” (Sahîh)

Chapter 59. Seeking Refuge With Allâh From The Evil Of What One Has Not Done

It was narrated that Farwah bin Nawfal said: “I asked ‘Aishah: ‘Tell me of something that the Messenger of Allâh used to say in his supplication.’ She said: ‘The Messenger of Allâh used to say: Allâhumma, inni a‘îdhu bika min sharri mā ‘amîlta wa min sharri mā lam a‘mal ba’d (O Allâh, I seek refuge with You from the evil of what I have done and from the evil of what I have not done.)’” (Sahîh)

It was narrated that Farwah bin Nawfal said: “I said to ‘Aishah: ‘Tell me of a supplication that the Messenger of Allâh used to say.’ She said: ‘He used to say: Allâhumma, inni a‘îdhu bika min sharri mā ‘amîlta wa min sharri mā lam a‘mal ba’d (O Allâh, I seek refuge in You from the evil of what I have done and from the evil of what I have not done.)’” (Sahîh)
Comments:
One could seek refuge from the evil of imminent or upcoming sins, because their ultimate appearance is already fore-destined. And on the Day of Judgment, all the sins would appear in the Book of Deeds in their entirety.

Chapter 60. Seeking Refuge From Being Swallowed Up By The Earth

5531. ‘Umar said: “I heard the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ say: ‘Allāhumma, innī a‘ūdhu bi-‘azmatika an ughtāla min taḥtā (O Allāh, I seek refuge in Your greatness from being swallowed up from beneath me.)’” (Sahih)

5532. It was narrated that Ibn ‘Umar said: “The Prophet ﷺ used to say: ‘Allāhumma (O Allāh,)’ and he mentioned the supplication, and said at the end, ‘A‘ūdhu bika an ughtāla min taḥtā (and I seek refuge with You from being swallowed up from beneath me.)’” (Sahih)
Chapter 61. Seeking Refuge From Being Thrown From A High Place Or Crushed Beneath A Falling Wall

5533. It was narrated that Abū Al-Yasar said: "The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ used to say: 'Allāhumma inni a‘ūdh bika min-taraddī, wal-hadmi, wal-ghammi, wal-‘arqī, wa a‘ūdh bika, an yatakhabbatānīsh-sha‘ītān ‘indal-mawtī, wa a‘ūdh bika an amūtā fi sabītika mudbīrān, wa a‘ūdh bika an amūtā ladīgha (O Allāh, I seek refuge with You from being thrown from a high place or crushed beneath a falling wall, or drowning or being burned, and I seek refuge with You from being led astray by the Shaitān at the time of death, and I seek refuge with You from dying in Your cause while fleeing from the battlefield, and I seek refuge with You from dying of a scorpion sting.)’" (Hasan)


Comments:
1. The majority of these are accidental deaths in which men die all of a sudden. They do not even find the opportunity to utter the formula of the Oneness of Allāh. These types of deaths, therefore, are not good.
2. Fleeing or running away from the battlefield is a major sin. Death in that condition is a sinful death.

5534. It was narrated from Abū Al-Yasar that the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ used to supplicate and say: "Allāhumma inni a‘ūdh bika min al-harami, wat-taraddī, wal-hadmi, wal-ghammi, wal-‘arqī, wa-
gharaqi, wa a'ūdhu bika, an yatakhabbatanīsh-shaiṭānu 'indal-mawti, wa an uqtala fi sabīlika mudbīran, wa a'ūdhu bika wa an amūta ladīgha (O Allāh, I seek refuge with You from old age, being thrown from a high place, being crushed by a falling wall, distress, burning and drowning. I seek refuge with You from being led astray by the Shaitān at the time of death and from being killed in Your cause while fleeing from the battlefield. I seek refuge with You from dying of a scorpion sting)" (Hasan)

5535. It was narrated that Abū Al-Aswad Al-Sulamī said: "The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ used to say: 'Allāhumma inni a'ūdhu bika minal-hadmi, wa a'ūdhu bika minatt-taraddī, wa a'ūdhu bika minal-gharaqi, wa a'ūdhu bika an yatakhabbanîsh-shaiṭānu 'indal-mawti, wa a'ūdhu bika an amūta fi sabīlika mudbīran, wa a'ūdhu bika an amūta ladīgha (O Allāh, I seek refuge in You from being crushed by a falling wall, and I seek refuge with You from drowning or being burned, and I seek refuge with You from being led astray by the Shaitān at the time of death, and I seek refuge with You from being killed for Your sake while fleeing the battlefield, and I seek refuge with You from dying of a scorpion sting.)" (Hasan)
Chapter 62. Seeking Refuge In The Pleasure Of Allâh Most High From His Wrath

5536. It was narrated that 'Aâshâh said: “I looked for the Messenger of Allâh  one night in my bed, and I did not find him. I struck my hand on the head of the bed, and my hand fell on the soles of his feet. He was prostrating and saying: 'A‘ūdhu bi ‘awfiqika min ‘iqâbiqika, wa a‘ūdhu bi ‘idâqa min sakhatika, wa a‘ūdhu bika minka (I seek refuge in Your forgiveness from Your punishment, and I seek refuge in Your pleasure from Your wrath, and I seek refuge in You from You.)” (Hasan) Comments: (See Nos. 169 and 1101.)

Chapter 63. Seeking Refuge From The Difficulty Of The Standing On The Day Of Resurrection

5537. It was narrated that 'Asîm bin Humaid said: “I asked 'Aâshâh with what the Messenger of Allâh  would start Qiyâm Al-Lail. She said: ‘You have asked me about something that no one else has asked me about. He used to say Allâhu Akbar ten times, and Subhân-Allâh ten times, and I斯塔hîr-Allâh (المعجم ۶۲) - الإستغاثة برضاة الله

من سخط الله تعالى (التحفة ۶۲)

5۵۳۶ - أخبرنا إبراهيم بن عنقوب قال: حذّرتني العلاء بن يلال قال: حذرتنا عُبد الله عن رُبِّه، عن عمرو بن مَرْدَة، عن النَّاسِم بن عيد الرحمّن، عن مَسْرَقِي بن الأَجْدَع، عن عائِشةَ قالَت: طَلَبَ رَسُولُ الله ﷺ ذات لبلة في قرَاشِيَ فَلَمْ أصِبْتُ، فَضَرَّبْتُ يَدًا على رأس الفِرَّاسٍ فَوَقَتَهُتْ يَدًا عَلَى أَحْصَم قَلْبِي، فَلِكَأْنَّهُ مَدَّهُ يَجُولُ، «أَعُوذُ بِرَمَيْكَ مِن عَقَبِكَ، وأَعُوذُ بِرَضَاكَ مِن سَخَطِكَ، وَأَعُوذُ بِكَ بَيْكَ!»”

تخريج: [حسن] وهو في الكبرى، ح:۷۷۶۵، وله شاهد عند المؤلف:۱۶۹ (۱۴۰۱)، وغيره يعبد الله هو ابن عمرو الرقي، وزيد هو ابن أمي أنيسة، والقاسم هو ابن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الله بن مصوع.
ten times, and he would say, 

\[\text{Allāhuhammadīrli, wāhdīnī, wāzuqī, wa’afīnī (O Allāh, forgive me, guide me, grant me provision and give me good health,) and he would seek refuge from the difficulty of the standing on the Day of Resurrection."} \] (Hasan)

Chapter 64. Seeking Refuge
From A Supplication That Is Not Heard

5538. It was narrated from Sa‘eed, from Abū Hurairah who said: “The Messenger of Allāh [SAW] said: ‘Allāhumma inni a‘duhu bika min ilmin lā yafṣa‘u, wa min qalbin lā yakhsha‘u, wa min nafsin lā tashba‘u, wa min du‘a‘in lā yusma‘ (O Allāh, I seek refuge with You from knowledge that is of no benefit, a heart that is not humble, a soul that is not satisfied and a supplication that is not heard.)’” (Saḥīḥ)

Abū ‘Abdūr-Rahmān (An-Nasā‘ī) said: Sa‘eed did not hear from Abū Hurairah, rather he heard it from his brother, from Abū Hurairah.

Comments:
(See No. 5444.)

5539. Abū Hurairah said: “The Messenger of Allāh [SAW] used to say: ‘Allāhumma inni a‘duhu bika min ilmin lā yafṣa‘u, wa min qalbin lā
Chapter 65. Seeking Refuge From A Supplication That Is Not Answered

5540. It was narrated that 'Abdullāh bin Al-Ḥārith said: “When it was said to Zaid bin Arqam: ‘Tell us what you heard from the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ, he said: “I will not tell you anything but that which the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ commanded us to say: ‘Allāhumma inni a'udhu binka min al-'ajzi wal-kasali, wal-bugli, wal-jarbi, wa hammi, wa 'aelabil-qabli Allāhumma inni a'fuz binka min nafsin lā tashba'u wa min qalbin lā yakhsha'u wa min ilmin lā yanfa'u wa du'a'in lā yustajāb (O Allāh, I seek refuge in You from incapacity, laziness, miserliness, cowardice, old age, the torment of the grave. O Allāh, make my soul obedient and purify it, for You are the best One to purify it, You are its Guardian and Lord. O Allāh, I seek refuge in You from a soul that is not satisfied, a heart that is not humble, knowledge...” (Hasan)
that is of no benefit and a supplication that is not answered.)”)
(Sahih)

Comments:
(See No. 5460.)

5541. It was narrated from Umm Salamah that when the Prophet \( \text{ﷺ} \) went out of his house, he said: “Bismillahi Rabbi. 'A\(\text{d} \)hu bika min an azilla aw a\(d\)illa aw az\(l\)ima aw uz\(l\)ama, aw ajhala aw yujhala 'alayya (In the name of All\(h\)a my Lord, I seek refuge in You from falling into error or going astray, or wronging (others) or being wronged, and from behaving or being treated in an ignorant manner.)” (Da'if)

Comments:
(See narration 5488)
Chapter 1. Prohibition Of Khamr

Allāh, the Blessed and Most High, says:

"O you who believe! Intoxicants (all kinds of alcoholic drinks), and gambling, and Al-Ansāb (stone altars for sacrifices to idols, Jinn, etc), and Al-Azlām (arrows for seeking luck or decision) are an abomination of Shaitān's (Satan's) handiwork. So avoid (strictly all) that (abomination) in order that you may be successful. Shaitān (Satan) wants only to excite enmity and hatred between you with Khamr (alcoholic drinks) and gambling, and hinder you from the remembrance of Allāh and from As-Salāh (the prayer). So, will you not then abstain?"[2]

5542. It was narrated from ‘Umar that when the prohibition of Khamr was revealed, ‘Umar said: “O Allāh, give us a clear ruling on Khamr,” and the Verse in Al-Baqarah was revealed. ‘Umar was called and it was recited to him. Then ‘Umar said: “O Allāh, give us a clear ruling on Khamr,” and the

---

[1] Khamr: often translated as “wine”, the word Khamr refers to any kind of intoxicant, including all kinds of alcoholic drinks.

Verse in *An-Nisā’* was revealed:

"O you who believe! Approach not *Aṣ-Ṣalāḥ* (the prayer) when you are in a drunken state".[1] And when the *Iqāmah* for prayer was said, the caller of the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ would cry out: "O you who believe! Approach not *Aṣ-Ṣalāḥ* (the prayer) when you are in a drunken state." Umar was called and this was recited to him. Then he said: "O Allāh, give us a clear ruling on *Khamr*." Then the Verse in *Sūrat Al-Mā‘īdah* was revealed, and Umar was called, and it was recited to him. When he reached the words, "So, will you not then abstain?" Umar said: "We have abstained, we have abstained." (Da‘f)

**Comments:**

1. This Tradition is concise. Otherwise the first Verse or the Ayah to descend pertaining to the prohibition of wine was the Verse of *Sūrah Al-Baqarah*: ‘They ask you about alcoholic drinks and gambling. Say: There is great wrong in both of them and also certain benefits for mankind. But wrong in them is greater than benefit.’

2. The passionate feeling for the unlawfulness of wine in the heart of Umar was inspired by Allāh, Most High, making his heart glow before the descent of the absolute commandment.

**Chapter 2. The Drinks Which Were Destroyed When *Khamr* Was Prohibited**

5543. Anas bin Mālik said: "While I

---

was taking care of a group of people, including my paternal uncles, and I was the youngest of them, a man came and said: 'Khamr has been forbidden.' I was taking care of them, and was pouring Fadîkh (datewine) for them. They said: 'Pour it away.' So I poured it away. I (the narrator) said to Anas: "What is that?" He said: "Unripe dates and dried dates." Abû Bakr bin Anas said: "That was their wine in those days." And Anas did not deny that. (Sahiîh)

5544. It was narrated that Anas said: "I was pouring (wine) for Abû Talhah, Ubayy bin Ka'b and Abû Dujânâh among a group of Ansâr when a man came in and said: 'Something new has happened; the prohibition of Khamr has been revealed.' So we poured it away." He said: "The only intoxicant in those days was Fadîkh, a mixture of unripe dates and dried dates." And Anas said: "Khamr was forbidden, and most of their Khamr in those days was Fadîkh." (Sahiîh)

5545. It was narrated that Anas bin Mâlik said: "When Khamr was forbidden, their drink was (made from) unripe dates and dried dates." (Sahiîh)
Chapter 3. *Khamr Is A Drink*
(Made) Of Unripe Dates And Dried Dates

5546. It was narrated that Jābir – meaning bin ‘Abdullāh – said:
"Unripe dates and dried dates are *Khamr.*" *(Sahih)*

5547. Jābir bin ‘Abdullāh said:
"Unripe dates and dried dates are *Khamr.*" Al-A‘mash narrated it in *Marfu‘* form. *(Sahih)*

5548. It was narrated from Jābir that the Prophet ﷺ said: "Raisins and dried dates are *Khamr.*" *(Hasan)*

Comments:
The purpose of this chapter and the relevant Tradition is the repudiation of the viewpoint that wine is made out of grapes only.

5549. It was narrated from Ibn Abī Laila, from one of the Companions of the Prophet ﷺ, that the Prophet ﷺ forbade (mixtures of) *Al-Balh* and dried dates, and of raisins and dried dates. (*Ṣaḥīḥ*)

**Comments:**

1. Some fruit is immersed in water. When it becomes soft, the fruit is given a rub by the hands in the water. Then the water is squeezed out in a piece of cloth in a way that the straw pulp is separated. Thereupon that beverage having the effect of the fruit is drunk. This is called the *Nabidh*. It happens to be delicious and energizing. There is no harm in drinking it. But it should not be kept for a long time, because it ferments quickly, often changing to alcohol. If it turns intoxicating, it is unlawful like wine. If the *Nabidh* is brewed out of two types of fruits, meaning if two types of fruits are immersed into the water, the possibility of its turning intoxicating quickly becomes greater. It is because in it chemical action starts with speed. That is why the *Nabidh* of any two substances is absolutely forbidden. In the event of it not being alcoholic or intoxicating, however, its use would nonetheless be appropriate. But commoners do not happen to be sensible in the matter of intoxication. It was, therefore, absolutely forbidden.

2. Fresh ripe dates and dried dates are mutually quite different from each other. They were, therefore, considered equaling two different fruits.

Chapter 5. Mixing *Al-Balh* And *Az-Zahw*[^2]

5550. It was narrated that Ibn 'Abbās said: "The Messenger of (المعجم 5) - *خليط البلح والزرَٰهُٰ* (التحفة 5)

[^1]: Which they say is the date once it begins to ripen.
[^2]: Unripe dates (*Al-Bur*) that have begun to take on a red or yellow color.
Allāh forbade Ad-Dubbā', Al-Hantam, Al-Muzaffat, and An-Naqqir, and (he forbade) mixing Al-Balḥ with Az-Zahuwa.  

Comments:
1. In the above-quoted vessels, due to their absorbing the contents, intoxication would remain in them. These vessels were, therefore, forbidden for making Nabidh. Or these vessels were probably used for brewing wine. At the time of the prohibition of alcoholic drinks or wine, the use of these vessels was temporarily forbidden so that even the idea of wine does not recur. Later on, permission to make use of these vessels was given, although one should deal cautiously and see that intoxication is not produced, otherwise, the beverage would become unlawful. If it does not intoxicate, then there is no harm in it.
2. Balḥ, Zahr, Busr, Rutab, and Tamr are the various states or conditions of dates.

5551. It was narrated that Ibn ‘Abbās said: "The Messenger of Allāh forbade Ad-Dubbā', Al-Muzaffat," – and on one occasion he added: "An-Naqqir," – "and (he forbade) mixing At-Tamr (dried dates) with raisins, and Az-Zahuwa with At-Tamr." (Sahih)

5552. It was narrated that Abū Sa‘eed Al-Khudrī said: "The Messenger of Allāh forbade (mixing) Az-Zahuwa and At-Tamr, and raisins and dried dates (At-Tamr)." (Sahih)

[1] See Chapter 28 which follows.
Chapter 6. Mixing Az-Zahuw
And Rutab Ripe Dates

5553. ‘Abdullāh bin Abī Qatādah narrated from his father that the Prophet ﷺ said: “Do not combine dried dates with raisins, nor Az-Zahuw with ripe dates.” (Ṣaḥīḥ)

Tafsīr: ﷺ: أَخْبَرْنَا عُبْدُ اللَّهِ عَنِ الْأَوْزَاعِيِّ قَالَ: حَدَّثَنَا يْحَيى بْنُ أَبِي كَثْيَرِ قَالَ: حَدَّثَنَا عُبْدُ اللَّهِ بْنُ أَبِي قَادَرَةَ عَنْ أَبِي عُبْدِ اللَّهِ بْنِ الْبُخَّارِيِّ قَالَ: لَأَنْتَجْعَوْا بَيْنِ النَّمْرَةِ وَالْرُّطَبِ وَلَا بَيْنَ النَّزْهَرِ وَالْرُّطَبِ.

And Rutab Ripe Dates

5554. It was narrated from Abū Qatādah that the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ said: “Do not soak Az-Zahuw and ripe dates together, and do not soak raisins and ripe dates together.” (Ṣaḥīḥ)

Tafsīr: ﷺ: أَخْبَرْنَا مُحَمَّدُ بْنُ الْمَهْدِيِّ قَالَ: أَخْبَرْنَا عُبْدُ اللَّهِ بْنُ عُمَرَ قَالَ: حَدَّثَنَا عَلِيٌّ - وَهُوَ أَبُو الْمَخْرَجِ - عَنْ يَحْيَى، عَنْ أَبِي سَلْمَةَ، عَنْ أَبِي قَادَرَةَ أَنَّ رَسُولَ اللَّهِ ﷺ قَالَ: لَأَنْتَجْعَوْا النَّزْهَرَ وَالْرُّطَبَ جَيْدًا، وَلَا نْتَجْعَوْا الْرُّطَبَ وَالْرُّطَبَ جَيْدًا.

Chapter 7. Mixing Az-Zahuw
And Al-Busr

5555. It was narrated that Abū Sa‘īd Al-Khadrī said: “The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ forbade mixing dried dates and raisins, and

Tafsīr: ﷺ: أَخْبَرْنَا أَحْمَدُ بْنُ حَشَّةِ قَبْطُ عَنْ عُبْدِ اللَّهِ ﷺ قَالَ: حَدَّثَنَا أَبِي قَالَ: حَدَّثَنِي مُجَدَّدُ الْعَلَمِ، ﷺ: أَبُو الْمَخْرَجِ - عَنْ عُمَرَ بْنِ سَعْيدٍ، عَنْ
mixing Az-Zahw and dried dates, and Az-Zahw and Al-Busr.” (Sahih)

Chapter 8. Mixing Al-Busr And Ripe Dates (Ar-Rutab)

5556. ‘Aṭâ’ narrated from Jābir that the Prophet forbade mixing dried dates and raisins, and Al-Busr and ripe dates. (Sahih) 

Chapter 9. Mixing Al-Busr And Dried Dates (At-Tamr)

5557. It was narrated from Jābir, that the Messenger of Allāh said: “Do not mix raisins and dried dates, nor Al-Busr and dried dates.” (Sahih)

5558. It was narrated from Jābir that the Messenger of Allāh forbade soaking raisins and dried dates.
The Book Of Drinks

5560. It was narrated that Ibn ‘Abbās said: “Al-Busr on their own are unlawful and with dried dates they are unlawful.”[1] (Sahih)

Comments:

In the Nabīd or beverage brewed out of the Busr variety of dates, intoxication might probably have been taking place quickly. Ibn Abbas might have been considering it unlawful on that account. In every case, it is unlawful only when it causes intoxication, otherwise not. But the concocted Nabīd or beverage brewed out of Busr and Tamr is invariably unlawful, irrespective of whether it intoxicates or does not intoxicate. This is because Allāh’s Messenger has forbidden it absolutely.

[1] Meaning when soaking them in water to make a drink.
Chapter 10. Mixing Dried Dates And Raisins

5561. It was narrated that Ibn ‘Abbâs said: “The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ forbade mixing dried dates and raisins, and dried dates and Al-Busr.” (Sahîh)

Chapter 11. Mixing Ripe Dates And Raisins

5562. Jâbir bin ‘Abdullâh said: “The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ forbade dried dates and raisins, and he forbade dried dates and Al-Busr, if they are soaked together.” (Sahîh)
Chapter 12. Mixing Al-Busr And Raisins

(المحجر 12) - خليط البسير والرزيب

(التحفة 12)

5564. It was narrated from Jābir that the Messenger of Allāh forbade soaking raisins and Al-Busr together, and he forbade soaking Al-Busr and ripe dates together. (Sahih)

Tahrij: أخرجه مسلم، الأشربة، باب كراهية انتباه النمر والرزيب مخلوطين، ح: 19/1682. عن قتيبة بن، وهو في الكبري، ح: 5071.

Chapter 13. Mentioning The Reason Why These Mixtures Are Forbidden, Which Is That One Of Them Is More Potent Than The Other

(المعجر 13) - ذكر العلة التي من أجلها نهي عن الخليطين وهي ليقوي أخذهما على صاحبه (التحفة 13)

5565. It was narrated that Anas bin Mālik said: "The Messenger of Allāh forbade us to soak two things together when one is more potent than the other. I asked him about Fadīkh (a drink made from fresh dates cut open) and he forbade it. He disliked the extra bit on Al-Busr, fearing that that might make it two things, so we used to cut it off." (Sahih)

Comments:
1. 'Fadīkh': It was a beverage of the kind called Nabidh, which was prepared from full-grown unripe dates without them being touched, i.e. boiled or heated in any degree. Since it used to be intoxicating, it was forbidden.
2. 'Which has ripened from one side': Ripe on one side, unripe on the other. So to state, such type of date is also a fruit consisting of two varieties. Unripe and fully ripe (fresh ripe dates). Therefore, the Nabidh or beverage of this type of dates is also forbidden, except for when both the sides are separated, and the Nabidh is made out of one portion, as has been described in the Tradition itself.
5566. It was narrated that Abū Idrīs said: "I saw Anas bin Mālik when some Busr which had extra bits were brought to him, and he started to cut them off." (Hasan)

5567. Qatādah said: "Anas used to tell us to cut off the extra bits." (Hasan)

5568. It was narrated that Anas would not leave any dates that had become ripe but he would remove them from his Fadīkh. (Hasan)

Chapter 14. Concession
Allowing Soaking Of Al-Busr
On Their Own, And Drinking
It Before It Changes In One's Fadīkh

5569. It was narrated from Abū Qatādah that the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ said: "Do not soak Az-Zahlūw and ripe dates together, nor Al-Busr and raisins together. Soak each one of them on its own." (Hasan)
Chapter 15. Concession
Allowing Soaking (Of These Fruits) In Vessels That Are Tied Shut

5570. Yaḥya narrated that 'Abdullāh bin Abī Qatādah said to him from his father, that the Prophet ﷺ forbade mixing Az-Zahūw and dried dates, and mixing Al-Buzr and dried dates, and he said: “Soak each one of them on its own in vessels that are tied shut.” (Ṣaḥīḥ)

Comments:
The purpose of the chapter is that the Nabūdḥ ought to be made in waterskins instead of pitchers. In pitchers, particularly those which are coated with tar, intoxication takes place quickly and remains after the drink is removed. In skins, intoxication does not occur rapidly. Even if intoxication takes place, it is soon discovered.

Chapter 16. Concession
Allowing Soaking Of Dried Dates On Their Own

5571. It was narrated that Abū Sa‘eed Al-Khudrī said: “The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ forbade mixing Al-Buzr with dried dates, or raisins with dried dates, or raisins with Al-Buzr, and he said: ‘Whoever among you (wants to) drink them, let him drink each one of them on its own: dried dates on their own, or Al-Buzr on their own, or raisins on their own.” (Ṣaḥīḥ)

Comments:
 takeaway: أخْرِجْ مَسْلِمَ، الأَشْرَى، بَابَ كِرَاهِةِ النَّبِيِّ ﷺ وَالزِّبْبِ مُخْلَوْطِينَ، ح: ٢٣/١٩٨٧.

تخريج: [إسناد صحيح] وهو متفق عليه من حديث يحيى بن أبي كثير به، انظر الحديث السابق، وهو في الكبرى، ح: ٥٠٧٧.
من حديث إسماعيل العدي ب، وهو في الكبيرة، ح: 578.

5572. أُبُّ سَعِّيدٍ أَبُو الْخُدْرِ اْنْرَتَّدَ صِبْحَةَ بِنْ حَبْتٍ قَالَ: حَدَّثَنَا عُسْفَانٌ أَبُو الْمُتَوَكَّلِ التَّابِعُ: حَدَّثَنَا إِسْمَاعِيلٌ أَبُو الْمُتَوَكَّلِ النَّافِئُ قَالَ: حَدَّثَنِي أَبُو سَعِيدُ النَّفَعَاءُ أَنَّ النَّبِيَّ ﷺ نَهَى أَنْ يَخْلُطَ بُسْرًا يَقُرُّ أوْ رُياْبًا يَقُرُّ أوْ رُيَاْبًا يَقُرُّ وَقَالَ: فَمَنْ شَرَبَ مِنْهُ فَلَيُخْبَرْ يَكُونَ وَاحِدًا دِينًا ذَكَارًا قَالَ أَبُو عُبْدٍ الرَّحْمَٰنِ هَذَا أُبُو الْمُتَوَكَّلٍ اْسْمُهُ عَلَيْهِمُ دَائِدُ.

تَحْرِيْجٌ: [صحيح] انظر الحديث السابق، وهو في الكبيرة، ح: 579.

Chapter 17. Soaking Raisins On Their Own

5573. أَبُو حُرَيْرَةَ قَالَ: "الْقُبُورُ حُرَيْرَةٌ" (المعجم 17) - أنْبِيَّ الْبَسْرِ وَحَدَّهُ

(التحفة 17)

573 - أَخْبَرَنَا مُحَمَّدٌ بْنُ عُبَيْدِ اللَّهِ قَالَ: أَخْبَرَنَا عَبْدُ اللَّهِ عِنْ عَكْرَمَةَ بْنِ عَمَّاَرٍ قَالَ: أَخْبَرَنَا أَبُو كَيْبَكَ قَالَ: سَمِعْتُ أُبا هُرْيَرَةَ يَقُولُ: "فَنِّي رَسُوْلُ اللَّهِ ﷺ أَنْ يَخْلُطَ الْبَسْرَ وَالْرُيَاْبَ وَالْبَسْرَ وَالْبَسْرَ وَقَالَ: "هَذَا هُدِّيْنَا مِنْهُ وَاِجْرُ التَّحْكِيْمَ عَلَى جَدَّةً.".


Chapter 18. Concession Allowing Soaking Al-Busr On Their Own

5574. أُبُّ سَعِّيدٍ أَبُو الْخُدْرِ اْنْرَتَّدَ صِبْحَةَ بِنْ حَبْتٍ قَالَ: حَدَّثَنَا عُسْفَانٌ أَبُو الْمُتَوَكَّلِ التَّابِعُ: حَدَّثَنَا إِسْمَاعِيلٌ أَبُو الْمُتَوَكَّلِ النَّافِئُ قَالَ: حَدَّثَنِي أَبُو سَعِيدُ النَّفَعَاءُ أَنَّ النَّبِيَّ ﷺ عَنْ إِسْمَاعِيلٍ بْنِ مُسْلِمٍ عَنْ أَبِي الْمُتَوَكَّلِ عَنْ أُبا سَعِيدٍ النَّفَعَاءِ أَنَّ النَّبِيَّ ﷺ

(المعجم 18) - المُرْحَصُةَ في أَنْبِيَّ الْبَسْرِ وَحَدَّهُ (التحفة 18)

574 - أَخْبَرَنَا مُحَمَّدٌ بْنُ عُبَيْدِ اللَّهِ بْنِ عَمَّاَرٍ قَالَ: أَخْبَرَنَا عَكْرَمَةَ قَالَ: أَخْبَرَنَا مُحَمَّدٌ بْنُ عُبَيْدِ اللَّهِ قَالَ: أَخْبَرَنَا إِسْمَاعِيلٍ بْنِ مُسْلِمٍ عَنْ أُبا سَعِيدَ.
their own, and dried dates on their own, and Al-Busr on their own.” (Sahih) [النحل 1667]

Chapter 19. Interpretation Of The Saying Of Allâh The Most High: “And From The Fruits Of Date Palms And Grapes, You Derive Strong Drink And A Goodly Provision”[1]

5575. Abû Hurairah said: “The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said: ‘Khamr comes from these two.’” Suwaid (one of the narrators) said: “From these two trees: The date palm and the grapevine.” (Sahih)

5576. It was narrated that Abû Hurairah said: “The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said: ‘Khamr comes from these two trees: The date palm and the grapevine.”’ (Sahih)

5577. It was narrated from Al-Mughirah that Ibrāhīm and Al-Sha‘bī said: “Strong drink is Khamr.” (Da‘f)

5578. It was narrated that Sa‘eed bin Jubair said: “Strong drink is Khamr.” (Saḥīḥ)

5579. It was narrated that Sa‘eed bin Jubair said: “Strong drink is Khamr.” (Saḥīḥ)

5580. It was narrated that Sa‘eed bin Jubair said: “Strong drink is unlawful, and a ‘goodly provision’ (is lawful).” (Saḥīḥ)

Comments:
By quoting the statements of various followers or the Tābi‘īn, the objective is to underscore the truth that according to the followers residing in the cities of Kūfa, Busra and Makkah, alcoholic drink could be made out of dates also, as it is made from grapes. And this is the course of action adopted by the dominant majority of the people of knowledge, Traditionalists and jurists.
Chapter 20. Kinds Of Things  
From Which Khamr Was Made  
When The Prohibition Of It  
Was Revealed

5581. It was narrated that Ibn ‘Umar said: “I heard ‘Umar, may Allâh be pleased with him, delivering a Khutbah on the Minbar of Al-Madînah and he said: ‘O people, on the day that the prohibition of Khamr was revealed, it was made from five things: From grapes, dates, honey, wheat and barley. Khamr is that which overcomes the mind.’” (Sahih)

Comments:  
By the mention of these five things, negation of the remaining things is not meant. On the contrary, the objective is to show their customary practices. Otherwise from whatever substance the wine is prepared, it is unlawful. Even a drop of it is unlawful.

5582. It was narrated that Ibn ‘Umar said: “I heard ‘Umar bin Al-Khattâb, may Allâh be pleased with him, on the Minbar of the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ, say: ‘The prohibition of Khamr was revealed when it was made from five things: From grapes, wheat, barley, dates and honey.’” (Sahih)

5583. It was narrated that Ibn ‘Umar said: “Khamr is made from
The Book Of Drinks

five things: From dates, wheat, barley, honey and grapes.” *(Sahih)*

Chapter 21. Prohibition Of Intoxicating Drinks Made From Fruits And Grains Of All Types

5584. It was narrated that Ibn Sirin said: “A man came to Ibn ‘Umar and said: ‘Our families make drinks for us by soaking (fruits) at night, and in the morning we drink them.’ He said: ‘I forbid you to drink intoxicants whether in small amounts or large. May Allâh bear witness that I forbid you to drink intoxicants whether in small amounts or large. May Allâh bear witness that the people of Khaibar used to make drinks by soaking such and such, and they called it such and such but it was Khamr. The people of Fadak used to make drinks by soaking such and such, and they called it such and such but it was Khamr.’ And he listed four things, one of which was honey.” *(Sahih)*

Chapter 22. Applying The Name Khamr To All Drinks That Intoxicate

5585. It was narrated from Ibn ‘Umar that the Prophet ﷺ said:
“Every intoxicant is unlawful and every intoxicant is Khamr.” (Sahih)

“أَخْبَرَنَا عِنْدَ اللَّهِ عَنْ حَجَّادٍ بْنِ رَبِيعِيْرَ قَالَ: حَدَّثَنَا أُبُوُّ عَنْ نَافِعٍ، عَنْ أَبِي عُمَرَ عَنِ النَّبِيِّ ﷺ قَالَ: ﴿كُلُّ مُشَكْرٍ خَمَرَ وَكُلُّ مُشَكْرٍ خَمَرَ﴾.” 

تخرج: أخرج مسلم، الأشربة، باب بيان أن كل مسكر خمر وأن كل خمر حرام، ح: ۵۰۹۷.

5586. It was narrated that Ibn ‘Umar said: “The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said: ‘Every intoxicant is unlawful and every intoxicant is Khamr.’” (Sahih)

“It was narrated that Ibn ‘Umar said: “The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said: ‘Every intoxicant is unlawful and every intoxicant is Khamr.’” (Sahih)
Chapter 23. Prohibition Of Every Drink That Intoxicates

5590. It was narrated from Ibn ‘Umar that the Prophet ﷺ said: “Every intoxicant is unlawful.” (Hasan)

5591. It was narrated that Abû Hurairah said: “The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said: ‘Every intoxicant is unlawful.’” (Hasan)

5592. It was narrated from Abû Hurairah that the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ forbade soaking (fruits) in Ad-Dubbâ’, Al-Muzaffât, An-Naqîr, Al-Hantam, and every intoxicant is unlawful. (Hasan)

Comments:
(Please turn to Hadîth 5550)
5593. It was narrated from 'Aishah that the Prophet ﷺ said: "Do not soak (fruits) in Ad-Dubbā’, An-Naqir, Al-Hantam, and every intoxicant is unlawful." (Sahih)

5594. It was narrated that 'Aishah said: "The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said: 'Every drink that intoxicates is unlawful.'" Qutaibah (one of the narrators) said: "From the Prophet ﷺ." (Sahih)

5595. It was narrated from 'Aishah, may Allâh be pleased with her, that the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ was asked about mead[1] and he said: "Every drink that intoxicates is unlawful." This is the wording of Suwaid. (Sahih)

5596. It was narrated that 'Aishah, may Allâh be pleased with her, that the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ was asked about mead and he said: "Every drink that intoxicates is unlawful," and mead is made from honey. (Sahih)

[1] Al-Bit’, its English name is mead, made of fermented honey or honey-combs and water.
5597. It was narrated from ‘Âishah that the Prophet was asked about mead and he said: “Every drink that intoxicates is unlawful.” And mead is a drink made of honey. (Sahîh)

5598. It was narrated that Abû Mûsâ said: “The Messenger of Allâh said: ‘Every intoxicant is unlawful.” (Sahîh)

5599. It was narrated from Abû Burdah that his father said: “The Messenger of Allâh sent Mu’âdh and me to Yemen. Mu’âdh said: ‘You are sending us to a land where the people have many kinds of drinks. What should I drink?’ He said: ‘Drink, but do not drink any intoxicant.’” (Sahîh)
5600. It was narrated that Abū Mūsā said: “The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ said: ‘Every intoxicant is unlawful.’” (Sahih)

5601. Al-Aswad bin Shaibān-As-Sadūsī said: “I heard ‘Atā’ being asked by a man: ‘We travel and drinks are offered to us in the marketplaces, and we do not know what kind of vessels they were prepared in.’ He said: ‘Every intoxicant is unlawful.’ He repeated the question and he said: ‘Every intoxicant is unlawful.’ He repeated the question and he said: ‘It is as I have told you.’” (Sahih)

Comments:
The objective of ‘Atā’ was that a vessel does not render anything lawful or unlawful. If the beverage is intoxicating, in whichever vessel it is made, it would be unlawful. If it does not contain intoxication, then it is lawful, irrespective of which vessel it is made in.

5602. It was narrated that Ibn Sirīn said: “Every intoxicant is unlawful.” (Sahih)

5603. It was narrated that ‘Abdul-Mālik bin At-Tufail Al-Jazārī said: “Umar bin ‘Abdul-Azīz wrote to us, saying: ‘Do not drink the
thickened juice of grapes (obtained by boiling it down) until two-thirds of it has gone and one-third is left. And every intoxicant is unlawful.'"

(Daʿf)
He said: ‘What are mead and beer?’ I said: ‘Mead is a drink made from honey and beer is a drink made from grains.’ The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said: ‘Do not drink any intoxicant, for I have forbidden all intoxicants.’” (Hasan)

Comments:
1. Abû Mûsâ Al-Ash’ari was from Yemen. He, therefore, was very familiar with the drinks of that region.
2. Every province has its own different foods and drinks. The people of other provinces are often not familiar with them. That is why Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ had to ask him concerning Al-Bit’ and Al-Mizr, because every province or region has its own definitions. And there is nothing objectionable about it.
3. Grain: Dhurah is a species of food grain like millet. Some have taken it to denote maize also.
4. ‘I have forbidden’ means by the Commandment of Allâh, Most High, because the authority of lawfulness and unlawfulness rests with Him; He reveals it by means of Wahy or Revelation.

5607. It was narrated from Abû Burdah that his father said: “The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ sent me to Yemen and I said: ‘O Messenger of Allâh ﷺ, there are drinks there which they call Al-Bit’ (mead) and Al-Mizr (beer).’ He said: ‘What is mead (and beer)?’ I said: ‘A drink made from honey, and beer is made from barley.’ He said: ‘Every intoxicant is unlawful.’” (Sahîh)

Comments:
Al-Mizr is a certain kind of beverage or Nabîdîh which was made of millet, barley, wheat, and even of other grains. Hence, there is no conflict. It was a kind of Nabîdîh.
5608. It was narrated that Ibn 'Umar said: “The Messenger of Allah delivered a Khutbah and quoted the Verse about Khanūr. A man said: ‘O Messenger of Allah, what do you think about Al-Mizr (beer)?’ He said: ‘What is beer?’ He said: ‘A (drink) from grains that is made in Yemen.’ He said: ‘Does it intoxicate?’ He said: ‘Yes.’ He said: ‘Every intoxicant is unlawful.’” (Sahih)

5609. It was narrated that Abū Al-Juwairiyah said: “I heard Ibn 'Abbās when he was asked: ‘Advise us about Bādhīq (a drink made from the juice of grapes slightly boiled).’ He said: ‘Muḥammad came before Bādhīq (i.e., it was not known during his time), but everything that intoxicates is unlawful.’” (Sahih)

Comments:
1. Bādhīq was also a kind of wine, which was prevalent among the non-Arabs. The Persians. They used to call it Baiḍah. The Arabs made it Bādhiq.
2. These add up to nearly 35 narrations, from which it transpires clearly, and the purpose of the author is also very much the same, that the cause of the prohibition of wine is intoxication. Therefore, in whichever substance intoxication is found, it is absolutely unlawful like wine, in small quantity as well as large. And this matter is extremely manifest by common knowledge, intellectually, and canonically. And this is the very course of action adopted and adhered to by the dominant majority of the people of knowledge, the Prophet’s Companions, and the followers.
Chapter 25. Prohibition Of Every Drink That Intoxicates In Large Amounts

5610. ‘Amr bin Shu‘aib narrated from his father, from his grandfather, that the Prophet said: “What intoxicates in large amounts, a small amount of it is unlawful.” (Hasan)

5611. It was narrated from ‘Amir bin Sa‘d, from his father, that the Prophet said: “I forbid to you small amounts of whatever intoxicates in large amounts.” (Hasan)

5612. It was narrated from ‘Amir bin Sa‘d, from his father, that the Prophet forbade a small amount of whatever intoxicates in large amounts. (Hasan)

5613. It was narrated that Abu Hurairah said: “I know that the
Messenger of Allâh ﷺ was fasting, so I prepared some Nabîdîh for him to break his fast that I had prepared for him in a gourd. I brought it to him and he said: ‘Bring it here.’ So I brought it closer and it was bubbling. He said: “Throw it against the wall (throw it away), for this is the drink of one who does not believe in Allâh or the Last Day.” (Sahîh)

Abû ‘Abdur-Rahmân (An-Nasâ‘î) said: This is evidence that intoxicants are forbidden in both small and large amounts, and that it is not as those who try to deceive themselves say, that what is forbidden is the last part of the drink and that what is drunk before that is permissible. There is no dispute among the scholars that reaching the stage of intoxication does not happen only with the last sip and not with the first or second. And with Allâh is the facilitation to do what is right.

Comments:
1. ‘It was bubbling’ means it contained signs of intoxication.
2. ‘Those who do not believe’ means this is the drink of the disbelievers, not of Muslims. It does not signify that the one who drinks it would become a disbeliever.

Chapter 26. Prohibition Of Nabîdîh Al-Jî’âh Which Is A Drink Made From Barley

5614. It was narrated that ‘Ali - may Allâh honor his face – said:
“The Prophet forbade me to use gold rings, Al-Qassî, Al-Mitharah and Al-Ji‘ah (a barley drink).” (Saḥîḥ)


Comments:
(See No. 5171).

5615. Sa‘sa‘ah said to ‘Alî bin Abî Tâlib – may Allâh honor his face – "Forbid to us, O Commander of the Believers! What the Messenger of Allâh forbade to you." He said: "The Messenger of Allâh forbade me from using Ad-Dubbâ’ and Al-Hantam." (Saḥîḥ)

"5615 - أخبرنا عائشة ﷺ قالت: حذّرتنا عبد الواجد عَن إسماعيل - وهو ابن مَعْنَى - قال: حذّرتنا مَالك بن غمّر قال: كَانٌ عَمّار بن رقیة غني أبي إسحاق، عُلّمَ الله في غرفة أبا صخمان، عُلّم عليّ - كرم الله وجهه - انَّهَا يا أبî المؤمنين! عَن حَقَّ الْذَّنْبِ، لَن نَّحْفِقَيْنَ عَن رسول الله ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ ﷺ 


Comments:
(See No. 5174.)

Chapter 27. In What (Fruits) Were Soaked For The Prophet

5616. It was narrated from Jâbir that (fruits) would be soaked for the Prophet in a small vessel made of stone. (Saḥîḥ)

Mentioning vessels in which it was forbidden to soak dates. Some are prohibited and others are not because when dates are soaked in the others, the drink does not become strong.

تخريج: أخرجه مسلم، الأشربة، باب النبي عن الانتباه في المزفت والذبابة والحنم والفبر.
Comments:
The *Nabidh* or beverage could be prepared in any vessel, provided it does not produce intoxication, although such vessels ought to be discarded which might produce intoxication rapidly. It is quite possible that one might not feel or sense intoxication.

Chapter 28. Prohibition Of Soaking (Making *Nabidh*) In Earthenware Jars

5617. It was narrated that Tāwūs said: “A man said to Ibn 'Umar: ‘Did the Messenger of Allāh forbid soaking (fruits) in earthenware jars?’ He said: ‘Yes.’ Tāwūs said: ‘By Allāh, I heard that from him.’” *(Sahih)*

Comments:
(See Nos. 5550, 5615, and 5616.)

5618. It was narrated that Sulaimān At-Taimī and Ibrāhīm bin Maisarah said: “We heard Tāwūs say: ‘A man came to Ibn ‘Umar and said: Did the Messenger of Allāh forbid soaking (fruits) in earthenware jars? He said: ‘Yes.’ Ibrāhīm added in his *Hadīth*: “And *Ad-Dubbāt* (gourds).”’ *(Sahih)*

Comments:
[See Nos. 5617, 5619, and 5620.]

5620. It was narrated that Ibn 'Umar said: "The Messenger of Allah forbid Al-Hantam. I (the narrator) said: "What is Al-Hantam?" He said: "The earthenware jar." (Sahih)

5621. It was narrated that Abû Maslamah said: "I heard 'Abdul-Azîz - that is, bin Asîd At-Tâhî from Al-Basrah - say: 'Ibn Az-Zubair was asked about soaking (fruits) in earthenware jar and he said: "The Messenger of Allah forbid us from that."" (Hasan)

5622. It was narrated that Sa'eed bin Jubair said: "We asked Ibn 'Umar about Nabîd made in an earthenware jar and he said: 'The Messenger of Allah forbid that.' So I went to Ibn 'Abbâs and said to him: 'Today I heard something that surprised me.' He said: 'What was it?' I said: 'I asked Ibn 'Umar about Nabîd made in an earthenware jar and he said: The Messenger of Allah forbid it.' He said: 'Ibn 'Umar spoke the truth.' I said: 'What is an earthenware jar?' He said: 'Anything that is made of clay.'" (Sahih)
5623. It was narrated that Sa’eed bin Jubair said: “I was with Ibn ‘Umar when he was asked about Nabīdhi made in an earthenware jar. He said: ‘The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ forbade it.’ I got upset when I heard that, so I went to Ibn ‘Abbās and said: ‘Ibn ‘Umar was asked about something, and I found it difficult.’ He said: ‘What was it?’ I said: ‘He was asked about Nabīdhi made in an earthenware jar.’ He said: ‘He spoke the truth; the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ forbade it.’ I said: ‘What is an earthenware jar?’ He said: ‘Anything that is made of clay.’” (Sāhih)

Chapter 29. Green Earthenware Jars

5624. It was narrated that Ash-Shaibānī said: “I heard Ibn Abī Awfā say: ‘The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ forbade Nabīdhi made in green earthenware jars.’ I said: ‘And white ones?’ He said: ‘I do not know.’” (Sāhih)

تخريج: [صحيح] وهو في الكبیر، ح: 5130، وانظر الحديث السابق.

(المعجم 29) - (الجُرُّ الأخضَرُ)

(التحفة 29)

تخريج: [أخرجه البخاري، الأشْرُقة، باب ترخيص النبي ﷺ في الأروة والظروف بعد النهي، ح: 5596 من حديث أبي إسحاق سلمان الشباني، وهو في الكبیر، ج: 5131، قوله: "لا أدری" وفيه مدرج، والله أعلم.]
white earthenware jars.”’ (Sahih)

5626. It was narrated that Abū Rajā’ said: “I asked Al-Hasan about Nabīḍh made in earthenware jars – is it unlawful? He said: ‘(It is) unlawful. One who would not lie narrated to us that the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ forbade Nabīḍh made in Al-Ḥantam, Ad-Dubbâ’ (gourds), Al-Muzāffat and An-Naqqīr.”[1] (Sahih)

Chapter 30. Prohibition Of Nabīḍh Made In Ad-Dubbâ’ (Gourds)

5627. It was narrated from Ibn ‘Umar that the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ forbade Ad-Dubbâ’ (gourds). (Sahih)

Comments:
When the gourd dries up, it is cleaned from inside. Its skin turns extremely hard, and it becomes like a vessel. The people of Ignorance used to brew wine in it. When the wine was forbidden, Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ forbade the vessels of wine also, but later on he permitted them, although it ought not to intoxicate. The caution demands that such vessels should not be used for beverage or Nabīḍh.

[1] An-Naqqīr is something that was hollowed out, like the stump or a large cut of a date palm tree.
5628. It was narrated from Ibn ‘Umar that the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ forbade Ad-Dubbâ’ (gourds). (Sahîh)

5629. It was narrated that ‘Âishah said: “The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ forbade Ad-Dubbâ’ (gourds) and Al-Muzaffat.” (Sahîh)

5630. It was narrated from ‘Alî – may Allâh honor his face – that the Prophet ﷺ forbade Ad-Dubbâ’ (gourds) and Al-Muzaffat. (Sahîh)

Chapter 31. Prohibition Of Nabîdh Made In Ad-Dubbâ’ (Gourds) And Al-Muzaffat[1]

(المعجمه) 31 - النهي عن تَبْيِد الدِّبْاَبٍ والْمُزَفِّفَ (التحفة)

[1] Al-Muzaffat is that which is coated with pitch or tar.
5631. It was narrated from ‘Abdur-Rahmān bin Ya’mar that the Prophet forbade Ad-Dubbā’ and Al-Muzaffat. (Sāhīh)

5632. It was narrated from Anas bin Mālik that the Messenger of Allāh forbade soaking (fruits) in Ad-Dubbā’ (gourds) and Al-Muzaffat. (Sāhīh)

5633. Abū Hurairah said: “The Messenger of Allāh forbade soaking (fruits) in Ad-Dubbā’ (gourds) and Al-Muzaffat” (Sāhīh)

5634. It was narrated from Ibn ‘Umar that the Messenger of Allāh forbade Al-Muzaffat and squashes. (Sāhīh)
Chapter 32. Mentioning The Prohibition Of Nabīdh Made In Ad-Dubbâ' (Gourds), Al-Ḥantam And An-Naqîr

5635. It was narrated from Ibn ‘Umar that the Messenger of Allāh forbid Ad-Dubbâ' (gourds), Al-Ḥantam and An-Naqîr. (Ṣaḥīḥ)

Comments:
The root or the lower part of the palm tree was hollowed out or excavated in order to give it the form of a vessel. It was called An-Naqîr. This vessel was also used for making wine. See No. 5550)

5636. It was narrated that Abū Sa‘eed Al-Khudrî said: The Messenger of Allāh forbid drinking from green pitchers, gourds and vessels carved from wood. (Ṣaḥīḥ)

Chapter 33. Prohibition Of Nabīdh Made In Ad-Dubbâ’ (Gourds), Al-Ḥantam And Al-Muzaffat

Abû Hurairah said: “The Messenger of Allâh forbid earthenware jars, Ad-Dubbâ‘ (gourds), Al-Muzaffat containers.” (Sahih)

5638. Abû Hurairah said: “The Messenger of Allâh forbade drinks made in Dubbâ‘ (gourds), An-Naqir, Hantam or Muzaffat, that were not oil or vinegar.” (Sahih)

Comments:
‘Apart from oil’: It means oil (of olive or any other commodity) could be made use of, irrespective of whether it might be in any vessel. Likewise, vinegar, etc. This is because the reason of prohibition is intoxication.

Chapter 34. Mentioning The Prohibition Of Nabîd Made In Ad-Dubbâ‘ (Gourds), An-Naqîr, Al-Muqayyar[1] And Al-Hantam

5640. Abû Hurairah said: “The Messenger of Allâh forbade Ad-Dubbâ‘ (gourds), Al-Hantam, An-

[1] Al-Muqayyar is similar, or the same as Al-Muzaffat from Al-Qâr or, “tar.”
The Book Of Drinks

Naqīr, and Al-Muzaffat.” (Sahih)

The Book Of Drinks

Comments:

This is the first arrival of the delegation of Abdul-Qais, which took place toward the end of the year 3 H., or in the beginning of the year 4 H., because it contains the allusion to the barrier created by the Quraish. The second arrival had taken place in the year 9 H. By the time Makkah had already been conquered and the obstacle of the Quraish had ended. The first arrival had taken place during the early period of time, following the Battle of Uhud, and the period was fresh when wine had just been forbidden. During this period of time, along with wine or alcoholic drinks, the vessels of wine were also forbidden, so that minds do not turn toward alcoholic drinks. Later, when wine became a forgotten matter of the past, permission to make use of these vessels was given, although because these vessels are supportive and helpful in producing intoxication due to their having been without pores, it is superior to eschew them in making Nabīdīh or beverage. But as long as intoxication is not produced, beverage would not become unlawful in those vessels, because vessels cannot render anything lawful or unlawful.
5642. It was narrated that ‘Aishah, may Allâh be pleased with her, said: “He forbade Ad-Dubbâ‘ (gourds) specifically.” (Saḥîh)

5643. It was narrated from Ishâq – he is Ibn Suwaid – that he said: “Mu‘âdh叙述ord to me from ‘Aishah, that the Messenger of Allâh forbade Nabîd made in An-Naqîr, Al-Mugayyar, Ad-Dubbâ‘, and Al-Hantam.” And in the narration of Ibn ‘Ulayyah, Ishâq said: “And Hunaidah mentioned from ‘Aishah similar to the narration of Mu‘âdh, and she named earthenware containers. I said to Hunaidah: ‘Did you hear her say earthenware containers?’ She said: ‘Yes.’” (Saḥîh)

5644. It was narrated that Hunaidah bint Sharîk bin Abân said: “I met ‘Aishah, may Allâh be pleased with her, in Al-Khuraibah,[1] and I asked her about the dregs[2] and she forbade them to me and she said: ‘Soak (the fruit) at night and drink it in the morning, and tie the vessel closed.’ And she forbade me from using Ad-Dubbâ‘ (gourds), An-Naqîr, Al-Muzaffat, and Al-Hantam.” (Da‘îf)

[2] That is, the sludge at the bottom of Nabîd or Khamr.
Comments:
1. Khuraibah is a locality of the city of Basra, which was also called Busra Sughra or the Tiny Basra.
2. ‘Drink it in the morning’ means Nabidh should not be kept for a long time. There is possibility of its turning intoxicating.
3. ‘Fasten its mouth or head’ means the vessel containing Nabidh should be kept covered. Tightly closed, which delays fermentation. So far as the detail concerning the vessel remains, it could be seen in the narration 5641.

Chapter 35. Al-Muzaffat

5445. It was narrated that Anas said: “The Messenger of Allah forbade Al-Muzaffat.” (Sahih)

Chapter 36. Mentioning The Evidence That The Prohibition Of The Vessels Mentioned Above Was General In Application And Did Not Refer To An Isolated Incident

5646. Sa’eed bin Jubair narrated that he heard Ibn ‘Umar and Ibn ‘Abbâs testify that the Messenger of Allah forbade Ad-Dubbâ (gourds), Al-Hantam, Al-Muzaffat, and An-Naqîr. Then the Messenger of Allah recited this Verse: “And whatsoever the Messenger (Muhammad) gives you, take it; and whatsoever he forbids you, abstain (from it).”[1] (Sahih)

5647. It was narrated from Asmā' bint Yazīd that a paternal uncle of hers whose name was Anas said: "Ibn 'Abbās said: Does not Allāh say: "And whatsoever the Messenger (Muhammad) gives you, take it; and whatsoever he forbids you, abstain (from it).'"[1] He said: 'Yes.' He said: 'Does not Allāh say: 'It is not for a believer, man or woman, when Allāh and His Messenger have decreed a matter that they should have any option in their decision?'[2] I said: 'Yes.' He said: 'I bear witness that the Prophet of Allāh forbade An-Naqîr, Al-Muqayyar, Ad-Dubbâ', and Al-Hantam."' (Sahīh)

Chapter 37. Explanation Of The Vessels Mentioned

5648. Zādān said: "I asked 'Abdullāh bin ‘Umar: ‘Tell me of something that you heard from the Messenger of Allāh concerning vessels and explain it.’ He said: ‘The Messenger of Allāh forbade Al-Hantam, which are what you call earthenware jars. And he forbade Ad-Dubbâ’ which are what

[1] Al-Hasr 59:7,
you call squash. And he forbade *An-Naqīr*, which are hollowed-out date palm wood. And he forbade *Al-Muzaffat* which are (*Al-Muqayyar*) vessels daubed with tar.

" (Ṣaḥīḥ)

Permission Allowing Soaking (Fruits to Make *Nabīdḥ*) In Some Of The Vessels Mentioned Above

Chapter 38. The Permission Concerning Whatever Of These Drinks Is Made In A Water Skin

5649. It was narrated that Abū Hurairah said: “The Messenger of Allāh forbade the delegation of ‘Abdul-Qais, when they came to him, *Ad-Dubbā’, *An-Naqīr*, *Al-Muzaffat*, and large water-skins that are cut from the top and can no longer be closed. He said: ‘Make *Nabīdḥ* in your water-skins, and close them and drink it sweet.’ One of them said: ‘O Messenger of Allāh, give me permission concerning something like this. He said: ‘If you make it like this,’ and he gestured with his hand, showing him how.” (Ṣaḥīḥ)

find a water-skin in which to make *Nabīdāh*, it would be made for him in a small vessel of stone.” (*Sahih*)

5651. It was narrated that Jābir said: “(Fruit) would be soaked for the Messenger of Allāh in a water skin, and if he did not have a water skin, it would be made for him in a small vessel of stone. And the Messenger of Allāh forbade *Ad-Dubbā* (gourds), *An-Naqīr*, and *Al-Muzaffat.*” (*Sahih*)

5652. It was narrated from Jābir that the Messenger of Allāh forbade *Ad-Dubbā* (gourds), *An-Naqīr*, earthenware jars, and *Al-Muzaffat.* (*Sahih*)

Chapter 39. Permission For Earthenware Jars Only

5653. It was narrated from ‘Abdullāh that the Prophet granted a concession allowing earthenware jars that are not coated with pitch. (*Sahih*)
Chapter 40. Permission For Some Of Them

5654. It was narrated from Ibn Buraidah that his father said: "The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said: 'I used to forbid you (to store) the sacrificial meat, but now eat it and store it; and whoever wants to visit graves (may do so), for they are a reminder of the Hereafter; and drink but avoid all intoxicants.'" (Sahîh)

5655. It was narrated from 'Abdullâh bin Buraidah that his father said: "The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said: 'I used to forbid you to visit graves, but (now) visit them. And I forbade you (to keep) the sacrificial meat for three days, but now keep whatever you wish. And I forbade Nabîd to you, unless it was (made) in a water skin, but now drink from all kinds of vessels but do not drink any intoxicant.'" (Sahîh)

Comments:

This narration is more explicit than the previous one, and this narration is quite plain in the issue that the prohibition of Nabîd was given in the beginning. Afterward, this command was abrogated. There is consensus among the people of knowledge over it. Likewise, the prohibition of the vessels has already been abrogated. The course of action of the dominant majority of the people of knowledge is very much the same, and it is most
appropriate. Details have preceded above. Please See Hadith 5646. Moreover, this is the best form of proof for abrogation, that Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ himself offered clarification pertaining to the abrogation of his previous command, and stipulated a new ruling. In such an abrogation, no grain of doubt remains. From the point of view of the chain of transmitters also, this narration is of the highly authentic grade, because this Hadith occurs in Sahih Muslim.

5656. It was narrated from Ibn Buraidah that his father said: “The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ said: ‘I used to forbid three things to you: Visiting graves, but now visit them, and may visiting them increase you in goodness; and I forbade you (to store) the sacrificial meat for more than three days, but now eat whatever you wish of it. And I forbade to you drinks in (certain kinds of) vessels, but now drink from whatever vessel you wish, but do not drink any intoxicant.’” (Sahih)

5657. It was narrated from ‘Abdullāh bin Buraidah that his father said: “The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ said: ‘I used to forbid certain kinds of vessels to you. Now soak (fruits) in whatever you wish, but beware of any intoxicant.’” (Sahih)

5658. ‘Abdullāh bin Buraidah (narrated) from his father that while the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ was walking, he approached some people and heard a confused noise
The Book Of Drinks

The Messenger of Allah, they have a drink that they drink. He sent for those people and said: “In what do you soak (fruit - to make that drink)?” They said: “We soak (fruits) in vessels carved from wood and gourds, and we have no water skins (that can be closed).” He said: “Do not drink except from a vessel that can be tied closed.”

Then as much time as Allah willed passed, then he went back to them and they had fallen sick and become pallid. He said: “Why do you look so ill?” They said: “O Messenger of Allah, our land is unhealthy and you forbade to us everything except that which was in a vessel that could be tied closed.” He said: “Drink, but every intoxicant is unlawful.” (Hasan)

Comments:
‘Tied closed, means prepare it in a leather water bag, because only such containers could be fastened shut. For the specific reason for making Nabidha or beverage, please see No. 5649.

5659. It was narrated from Jâbir that when the Messenger of Allah forbade large water skins that are cut from the top and can no longer be closed, Anšâr complained and said: “O Messenger of Allah, we do not have any vessels.” The Prophet said: “Then there is no harm.” (Sahih)

Khayrân Muhmud bin 'Uyân said: “Abû Dâwûd the accredited and Abû Ahmad bin 'Amir bin Shu'ayb, and Said bin 'Abdul Malik, and Jâbir said: “And the Messenger of Allah forbade the vessels, so the Prophet said: ‘If you don’t have any vessels, you can drink from the vessels that are tied closed.’”

Then as much time as Allah willed passed, then he went back to them and they had fallen sick and become pallid. He said: “Why do you look so ill?” They said: “O Messenger of Allah, our land is unhealthy and you forbade to us everything except that which was in a vessel that could be tied closed.” He said: “Drink, but every intoxicant is unlawful.” (Hasan)

Comments:
‘Tied closed, means prepare it in a leather water bag, because only such containers could be fastened shut. For the specific reason for making Nabidha or beverage, please see No. 5649.

5659. It was narrated from Jâbir that when the Messenger of Allah forbade large water skins that are cut from the top and can no longer be closed, Anšâr complained and said: “O Messenger of Allah, we do not have any vessels.” The Prophet said: “Then there is no harm.” (Sahih)
Comments:
So to say, the restriction remained for some period of time. When Allah’s Messenger ﷺ saw that people encountered hardships, he lifted the ban.

Chapter 41. Status Of Khamr

5660. It was narrated that Abu Hurairah said: “On the night on which he was taken on the Night Journey (Al-Isra’), two cups, of wine and milk, were brought to the Messenger of Allah ﷺ. He looked at them and chose the milk. Jibril, peace be upon him, said to him: ‘Praise be to Allah Who has guided you to the Fitrah. If you have chosen the wine, your Ummah would have gone astray.’” (Sahih)

Comments:
1. ‘The night’: This incident was during the last period of the Prophet’s Makkan life. In other words, at the time of the Ascension itself, an indication was made that wine would be made unlawful, although the command of prohibition descended later during the third year of Hijrah.
2. ‘I took the milk’: So to speak, from the beginning, Allah’s Messenger ﷺ detested wine.
3. ‘The Fitrah, because milk is a natural food for man.

5661. Ibn Muhaiz narrated from a man among the Companions of the Prophet ﷺ that the Prophet ﷺ said: “People among my Ummah will drink Khamr, calling it by another name.” (Sahih)
Chapter 42. Stern Warnings About Drinking Khamr

5662. It was narrated that Abū Hurairah said: "The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said: 'The adulterer is not a believer at the moment when he is committing adultery, and the wine drinker is not a believer at the moment when he is drinking wine, and the thief is not a believer at the moment when he is stealing, and the robber is not a believer at the moment when he is robbing and people are looking on.'" (Sahîh)

Comments:
1. The purpose of the Tradition is that these actions are the repudiation of faith. Faith cannot tolerate these things. It stops one from them. It does not mean that he becomes an unbeliever. For details, please see narration 4873.
2. This narration proves the enormity of drinking wine, because it is shown to be the negation of Faith or Iman. Even otherwise, drinking wine obligates the prescribed legal punishment, and the action which calls for the implementation of the prescribed legal punishment happens to be an enormity; adultery, theft, and highway robbery are all included among enormities.

5663. It was narrated from Abû Hurairah that the Prophet ﷺ said: "The adulterer is not a believer at the moment when he is committing adultery, and the thief is not a
believer at the moment when he is stealing, and the wine drinker is not a believer at the moment when he is drinking wine, and the robber is not a believer at the moment when he is robbing and taking something valuable by force while the Muslims are looking at it.” (Sahih)

5664. It was narrated that Ibn 'Umar and a number of the Companions of Muḥammad said: “The Messenger of Allāh said: ‘Whoever drinks Khamr, whip him; then if he drinks (again), whip him; then if he drinks (again), whip him; then if he drinks (again), kill him.’” (Sahih)

5665. It was narrated from Abū Hurairah that the Messenger of Allāh said: "If he becomes drunk, whip him; then if he becomes drunk, whip him; then if he becomes drunk, whip him.” Then he said concerning the fourth time, "Strike his neck (i.e., kill him)." (Sahih)
5666. It was narrated from Abū Burdah bin Abī Mūsâ, that his father used to say: “I do not see any difference between drinking Khamr and worshipping this column instead of Allâh the Mighty and Sublime.” (Saḥîḥ)

Chapter 43. Mentioning The Reports Concerning The Ṣalāḥ Of The One Who Drinks Khamr

5667. ‘Urwah bin Ruwaim narrated that Ibn Ad-Dailamî rode looking for ‘Abdullâh bin ‘Amr bin Al-‘Âs. Ibn Ad-Dailamî said: “I entered upon him and said: ‘O ‘Abdullâh bin ‘Amr, did you hear the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ say anything concerning Khamr?’ He said: ‘Yes, I heard the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ say: If a man among my Ummah drinks Khamr, Allâh will not accept his Ṣalāḥ for forty days.’” (Saḥîḥ)

Comments:
Acceptance of prayer (ritual prayer) means gaining the recompense or the reward of prayer. So to speak, the wine drinker would not gain the recompense of his performed prayers for up to 40 days, although he will have to pray still, and their restitution would not be obligated upon him.
5668. It was narrated that Masrūq said: "If a judge accepts a gift he has consumed something unlawful, and if he accepts a bribe, that takes him to the level of Kufr." Masrūq said: "Whoever drinks Khamr, he has committed (an act of) Kufr, and his Kufr is that his Salāh does not count." (Da‘if)

Chapter 44. Sins Generated By Drinking Khamr, Such As Forsaking Salāh, Murder And Committing Zinā

5669. It was narrated from Abū Bakr bin 'Abdūr-Rahmān bin Al-Hārith that his father said: "I heard 'Uthmān, may Allāh be pleased with him, say: 'Avoid Khamr for it is the mother of all evils. There was a man among those who came before you who was a devoted worshipper. An immoral woman fell in love with him. She sent her slave girl to him, saying: We are calling you to bear witness. So he set out with her slave girl, and every time he entered a door, she locked it behind him, until he reached a beautiful woman who has with her a boy and a vessel of wine. She said: 'By Allāh, I did not call you to bear witness, rather I
called you to have intercourse with me, or to drink a cup of this wine, or to kill this boy.' He said: 'Pour me a cup of this wine.' So she poured him a cup. He said: 'Give me more.' And soon he had intercourse with her and killed the boy. So avoid *Khamr*, for by Allâh faith and addiction to *Khamr* cannot coexist but, one of them will soon expel the other." (Sahîh)

5670. Abû Bakr bin 'Abdur-Rahmân bin Al-Hârîth narrated that his father said: 'I heard 'Uthmân say: 'Avoid *Khamr* for it is the mother of all evils. There was a man among those who came before you who was a devoted worshipper and used to stay away from people.'" And he mentioned something similar. He said: "Avoid *Khamr* for, by Allâh, it can never coexist with Faith, but soon one of them will expel the other." (Sahîh)

5671. It was narrated that Ibn 'Umar said: "Whoever drinks *Khamr* and does not get intoxicated, his *Salâh* will not be accepted so long as any trace of it remains in his belly or his veins, and if he dies he will die a *Kafir*. If he becomes intoxicated his *Salâh* will not be accepted for 40 nights,
and if he dies during them, he will die a Kafir.” (Saḥīḥ Mawqūf)

Yazīd bin Abī Ziyād contradicted him.

5672 It was narrated from ‘Abdullāh bin ‘Amr that the Prophet ﷺ said: “Whoever drinks Ḳhamr and puts it in his belly, Allāh will not accept his Ṣalāh for seven (days), if he dies during them” – Muhammad bin Ḥādī (One of the narrators) said:[1] “he will die a Kafir. If he was too intoxicated to offer any of the obligatory” – Ibn Ḥādī said: “or recite Qur’ān, his Ṣalāh will not be accepted for 40 days, and if he dies during them,” And Ibn Ḥādī said: “He will die a Kafir.” (Ḍa’if)

Chapter 45. Repentance Of The One Who Has Drunk Ḳhamr

5673. It was narrated that ‘Abdullāh bin Ad-Dailamī said: “I entered upon ‘Abdullāh bin ‘Amr bin Al-‘Āṣ when he was in a garden of his in At-Tā‘if called Al-Waht. He was walking and holding hands

[1] That is, the author reported it through two chains, one of them from Ibn Ḥādī with the discrepancies in wordings noted.
with a young man of Quraisheh who was suspected of drinking Khamr. He said: ‘I heard the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ say: Whoever drinks Khamr once, his repentance will not be accepted for 40 days, then if he repents, Allāh will accept his repentance. If he does it again, his repentance will not be accepted for 40 days, then if he repents, Allāh will accept his repentance. If he does it again, his repentance will not be accepted for 40 days, then if he repents, Allāh will accept his repentance. If he does it again (a fourth time), then it is a right upon Allāh to make him drink from the mud of Khibāl[1] on the Day of Resurrection.” This is the wording of ‘Amr. (Sahih)

Comments:

‘Al-Walzl’: This was his large and extensive orchard, which he had inherited from his revered father. Its expanse is said to be immense. It mostly had grapevines.

5674. It was narrated from Ibn ‘Umar that the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ said: “Whoever drinks Khamr in this world and does not repent from that, will be denied it in the Hereafter.” (Sahih)

5675 - أخبرنا قتيبة عن مالك

٥٩٧٤ - أخبرنا قتيبة عن مالك

والخرجت بن يشكين قراءة عليه وآنا أسمع

والخرجت بن يشكين قراءة عليه وآنا أسمع

- وللغط له - عني ابن الأقباس قال: حدثني

ماليك عن نافع، عني ابن عمر: أن رسول الله ﷺ قال: “من شرب الخمر في الدنيا لم يُمْبَنَّ بنها حريصا في الآخرة.”

تخريج: أخرجه البخاري، الأشری، باب قول الله تعالى: “إِنَّمَا الخمر والميسر والانصاف والأزلام وَرَجُسٌ حَرَصَهَا فِي الْآخِرَةِ”، ح: ٥٥٧٥، ومسلم، الأشری، باب عقوبة من شرب الخمر إذا لم يلب منها

[1] Meaning, the juice or sweat of the people of Hell
Chapter 46. Reports Concerning Drunkards

5675. It was narrated from ‘Abdullāh bin ‘Amr that the Prophet ﷺ said: “No one who reminds others of his favors, no one who is disobedient to his parents and no drunkard, will enter Paradise.” (Hasan)

5676. It was narrated from Ibn ‘Umar that the Prophet ﷺ said: “Whoever drinks Ḳamr in this world and dies addicted to it, and not having repented, will not drink it in the Hereafter.” (Sahih)

5677. It was narrated that Ibn ‘Umar said: “The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ said: ‘Whoever drinks Ḳamr in this world and dies addicted to it, will not drink it in the Hereafter.” (Sahih)

Comments:
Meaning these are barriers preventing entrance to Paradise; while after punishment or repentance, the barrier may be lifted.

Comments:
(See No. 5674).
5678. It was narrated that Aď-Dăhîk said: "Whoever dies addicted to Khamr will have boiling water thrown in his face when he departs this world." (Sahîh)

Chapter 47. Banishing The Drinker Of Khamr

5679. It was narrated that Sa‘eđ bin Al-Musayyab said: “Umar, may Allah be pleased with him, banished Rabî‘ah bin Umaiyah to Khaibar for drinking Khamr, and he went and joined Heraclius and became a Christian. ‘Umar, may Allah be pleased with him, said: ‘I will never expel any Muslim after this.” (Da‘îf)

Chapter 48. Reports Used By Those Who Permit The Drinking Of Intoxicants

5680. It was narrated that Abû Burdah bin Nîyâr said: “The Messenger of Allah said: ‘Drink from vessels but do not become addicted to Khamr.”
intoxicated.” (Da`if)
Abū ‘Abdur-Raḥmān (An-Nasā’ī) said: This is a Munkar Ḥadīth in which Abū Al-Abwās Sulām bin Sulām was mistaken. We do not know of any corroborating report from the companions of Simāk bin Ḥarb, and Simāk is not strong. Ahmad bin Ḥanbal said: “Abū Al-Abwās made a mistake in this Ḥadīth. Sharīk contradicted him in the chain and the wording. (Da`if)

5681. It was narrated from Ibn Buraidah, from his father, that the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ forbade Ad-Dubbā‘, Al-Hantam, An-Naqūr, and Al-Muẓaffat. (Ṣaḥīh)
Abū ‘Awānāh contradicted him.

Comments:
So to speak, the original narration is thus.

5682. It was narrated from Simāk, from Qirsāfah, one of their womenfolk, that ‘Āishah said: “Drink but do not become intoxicated.” (Da`if)
Abū ‘Abdur-Raḥamān (An-Nasā’ī) said: This too is not confirmed. We do not know who this Qirsāfah is, and the well-known view of ‘Āishah is different from what Qirsāfah narrated from her.
It was narrated from Qudāmah Al-ʿĀmirī that Jasrah bint Dījājah Al-ʿĀmirīyah told him: “I heard ʿĀishah when some people asked her about Nabī, saying we soak dates in the morning and drink it in the evening, or we soak them in the evening and drink them in the morning. She said: ‘I do not permit any intoxicant even if it were bread or even if it were water.’ She said that three times.” (Hasan)

Comments:
It transpires from this Hadīth that ʿĀishah did not consider permissible the substance containing even slight intoxication. It is significant to realize that intoxication does not occur in the Nabī brewed in the evening or in the morning with the passage of one night or day. Even then, she sounded a word of caution that intoxication should not occur. Hence, the unknown narration transmitted upon her authority previously is not appropriate from any aspect.

It was narrated that ʿAlī bin Al-Mubārak said: “Karīmah bint Hammām told me that she heard ʿĀishah, the Mother of the Believers, say: ‘You have been forbidden Ad-Dubbā’ (gourds), you have been forbidden Al-Hantam, you have been forbidden Al-Muzaffat.’ Then she turned to women and said: ‘Beware of green earthenware jars, and if the water in your clay vessels intoxicates you, do not drink it.’” (Daʿīf)
5685. It was narrated that 'Aishah was asked about drinks and she said: “The Messenger of Allâh used to forbid all intoxicants.” And they use the narration of 'Abdullâh bin Shaddâd from 'Abdullâh bin 'Abbâs. (Sahîh)

5686. It was narrated from Ibn Shubrumah who mentioned it from 'Abdullâh bin Shaddâd bin Al-Hâd, from Ibn 'Abbâs, who said: “Khamr was forbidden in small or large amounts, as was every kind of intoxicating drink.” (Sahîh)

Ibn Shubrumah did not hear from 'Abdullâh bin Shaddâd.

5687. It was narrated that Ibn 'Abbâs said: “Khamr was forbidden in and of itself in small or large amounts, as was every kind of intoxicating drink.” (Sahîh)

Abû 'Awn Muhammad bin 'Ubaidullâh Ath-Thaqafi contradicted him.

5688. It was narrated that Ibn 'Abbâs said: “Khamr was forbidden in and of itself, in small or large amounts, as was every kind of
intoxicating drink.” (Saḥīḥ)

While Ibn Al-Ḥakam did not mention: “in small or large amounts.”

5689. It was narrated that Ibn ‘Abbās said: “ Khámîr was forbidden in small or large amounts, as was every kind of drink that intoxicates.” (Saḥīḥ)

Abū ‘Abdur-Rahmān (An-Nasāʾ) said: This is more worthy of being correct than the narration of Ibn Shubrumah. Hushaim bin Bushair would commit Ṭadlis and in his narration there is no mention of him hearing from Ibn Shubrumah. And the narration of Abū ‘Awān is more like what the trustworthy reported from Ibn ‘Abbās.

5690. It was narrated that Abū Al-Juwairiyah Al-Jarmī said: “I asked Ibn ‘Abbās, when he was leaning back against the Kaʾbah, about Bâdhāq (a drink made from the juice of grapes slightly boiled). He said: ‘Muḥammad came before Bâdhāq (i.e., it was not known during his time), but everything
354

كتاب الأشيئة

that intoxicates is unlawful.” He said: “I was the first of the ‘Arabs to ask him.” (Sahih)


Comments:
(See Hadith 5609)

5691. Ibn ‘Abbas said: “Whoever would like to regard as forbidden that which Allâh and His Messenger regard as forbidden, let him regard Nabîdh as forbidden.” (Sahih Mawqûf)


Comments:
What clarification could be more distinct than this one that Ibn Abbas deems the intoxicating Nabîdh unlawful by Allâh and His Messenger? How could he permit the little quantity of the intoxicating beverage?

5692. It was narrated from ‘Uyainah bin ‘Abdur-Rahmân that his father said: “A man said to Ibn ‘Abbas: ‘I am a man from Khurasân, and our land is a cold land. We have a drink that is made from raisins and grapes and other things, and I am confused about it.’ He mentioned different kinds of drinks to him and mentioned many, until I thought that he had not understood him. Ibn ‘Abbas said to him: ‘You have told me too many. Avoid whatever intoxicates, whether it is made of dates, raisins or anything else.’” (Sahih)

تخريج: [إسناده صحيح] وهو في الكبرى، ح: 5199.
Comments:
In his response, Ibn Abbas has commanded avoidance of every type of intoxicating substance, irrespective of whether it is prepared out of anything.

5693. It was narrated that Ibn ‘Abbás said: “Nabídîh made from Al-Busr is forbidden and is not permissible.” (Sahih)

Comments:
Since the beverage of exclusively unripe dates quickly gets intoxicating, the need for stipulating restriction was not felt. From this edict or ruling also, the course of action of Ibn Abbâs becomes pronounced.

5694. It was narrated that Abú Hamzah said: “I used to interpret between Ibn ‘Abbás and the people. A woman came to him and asked him about Nabídîh made in earthenware jars, and he forbade it. I said: ‘O Abû ‘Abbás, I make a sweet Nabídîh in a green earthenware jar; when I drink it, my stomach makes noises.’ He said: ‘Do not drink it even if it is sweeter than honey.’” (Sahih)

Comments:
1. The objective of the question is that no sourness in its taste is felt. On the contrary, it happens to be very sweet, and this is symbolic of it not being intoxicating. But the rumbling in the stomach creates doubts that it probably contains intoxication, because this tartness is its evidence. The gist of the answer is that one should not consume such a spurious beverage, irrespective of whether its taste is wholesome and apparently it does not seem to be intoxicating. Just consider it that Ibn Abbas is not prepared to give permission for doubtful Nabídîh.

2. ‘Abú Abbas’: This is also the agnomen of Ibn Abbas.
Abū Ḥamzah Naṣr said: “I said to Ibn ‘Abbās that my grandmother makes Nabīdā in an earthenware jar and it is sweet. If I drink a lot of it and sit with people, I am worried that they will find out. He said: ‘The delegation of ’Abdul-Qais came to the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ and he said: Welcome to a delegation that is not disgraced or filled with regret. They said: O Messenger of Allāh, the idolaters are between us and you, and we can only reach you during the sacred months. Tell us of something which, if we do it, we will enter Paradise, and we can tell it to those whom we left behind. He said: I will enjoin three things upon you, and forbid four things to you. I order you to have faith in Allāh, and do you know what faith in Allāh is? They said: Allāh and His Messenger know best. He said: (It means) testifying that there is none worthy of worship except Allāh, establishing Salāh, paying Zakāh and giving one-fifth (the Khums) of the spoils of war. And I forbid four things to you: That which is soaked in Ad-Dābāb, An-Naqīr, Al-Hantam and Al-Muzaffat.” (Sahih)

Comments:
1. See Hadīth No. 5641.

It was narrated that Qais bin Wahān said: “I asked Ibn ‘Abbās: ‘I have a small jar in which I make Nabīdā and when it has bubbled...
and settled down again, I drink it.' He said: 'For how long you have been drinking that?' He said: 'For twenty years' — or he said: 'for forty years.' He said: 'For a long time you have been quenching your thirst with something forbidden.'”

(Da‘if)

Comments:
The occurrence of fermentation in Nabidh is a sign that it contains intoxication. That is why Ibn Abbas ruled it as being polluted and unlawful. So to state, according to Ibn Abbas, intoxicating beverage is polluted and unlawful, whether it is little or much. Therefore, the narration transmitted from him, concerning the permission of drinking intoxicating drinks in less quantity than what intoxicates, is not correct.

5697. Ibn ‘Umar said: “While he was at the Rukn,[1] I saw a man bring a cup to the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ in which there was Nabidh. He gave the cup to him and he raised it to his mouth, but he found it to be strong, so he gave it back to him and a man among the people said: ‘O Messenger of Allâh, is it unlawful?’ He said: ‘Bring the man to me.’ So he was brought to him. He took the cup from him and called for water. He poured it into the cup, which he raised to his mouth and frowned. Then he called for more water and poured it into it. Then he said: ‘When these vessels become strong in taste, pour water on them to

Weaken them.” (Da'if)

5698. A similar report was narrated from ‘Abdul-Mâlik bin Nâfi’ from Ibn ‘Umar, from the Prophet (P.B.U.H.). (Da'if)

Abû ‘Abdur-Rahmân (An-Nasâ'i) said: ‘Abdul-Mâlik bin Nâfi’ is not well-known, and his narrations are not used as proof, and what is well-known from Ibn ‘Umar is the opposite of what he mentioned.

5699. It was narrated from Ibn ‘Umar that a man asked about drinks and he said: “Avoid everything that intoxicates.” (Sahih)

5700. It was narrated that Zaid bin Jubair said: “I asked Ibn ‘Umar about drinks and he said: ‘Avoid everything that intoxicates.’” (Sahih)

5701. It was narrated that Ibn ‘Umar said: “Intoxicants are unlawful in small or large amounts.” (Sahih)
5702. It was narrated that Ibn 'Umar said: “Every intoxicant is Kharr and every intoxicant is unlawful.” (Sahih)

5703. It was narrated from Sâlim bin 'Abdullâh, from his father, that the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said: “Allâh has forbidden Kharr, and every intoxicant is unlawful.” (Hasan)

5704. It was narrated that Ibn 'Umar said: “The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said: ‘Every intoxicant is unlawful and every intoxicant is Kharr.’” (Hasan)

Abû 'Abdur-Rahmân (An-Nasâ’î) said: These people (narrators) are the people who are confirmed, and trustworthy and well-known for their correctness in reporting. And 'Abdu-Mâlik does not hold the status of any one of them even if a group of the likes of him aided him. And with Allâh is the facilitation to what is right.
5705. Ruqaiyah bint ‘Amr bin Sa’d said: “I was under the care of Ibn ‘Umar, and raisins would be soaked for him and he would drink them in the morning, then the raisins would be left to dry, and other raisins would be added to them, and water would be poured on top of them, and he would drink that in morning. Then the day after he would throw them away.” (DaTf)

And they use the narration of Abî Mas‘ûd and ‘Uqbah bin ‘Amr as proof.

Comments:
If a fruit remains immersed in water for a day or half a day as much, its effect is transferred to water to a great extent. The water becomes sweet. This is called Nabîd. If, however, it is kept too long, it begins to ferment and turns intoxicating. That is why Ibn ‘Umar used to throw it away after a day or half a day, so that no trace of intoxication remains.

5706. It was narrated that Abî Mas‘ûd said: “The Prophet became thirsty around the Ka‘bah so he called for a drink. Some Nabîd was brought in a water skin and he smelled it and frowned. He said: ‘Bring me a bucket of Zamzam (water).’ He poured it over it and drank some. A man said: ‘Is it unlawful, O Messenger of Allâh?’ He said: ‘No.’” (DaTf)

He said: This narration is weak; because Yahya bin Yamân is alone among the companions of Sufyân reporting it. And Yahya bin Yamân’s narrations are not used for proof due to his bad memory and many errors.
Abû Hurairah said: “I knew that the Messenger of Allâh was fasting on certain days, so I prepared some Nabîth for him to break his fast, and made it in a gourd. When evening came I brought it to him, and said: ‘O Messenger of Allâh, I knew that you were fasting today, so I prepared this Nabîth for you to break your fast.’ He said: ‘Bring it to me, O Abû Hurairah.’ I brought it to him, and it turned out to be something bubbling. He said: ‘Take this and throw it against the wall (throw it away), for this is the drink of one who does not believe in Allâh or the Last Day.’” (Sahîh)

And among what they use as proof, is what was done by ‘Umar bin Al-Khaṭṭâb, may Allâh be pleased with him.

Comments:
(See Hadîth 5613.)

It was narrated from Abû Râfî’ that ‘Umar bin Al-Khaṭṭâb, may Allâh be pleased with him, said: “If you fear that Nabîth may be too strong, then weaken it with water.” ‘Abdullâh (one of the narrators) said: “Before it gets strong.” (Da’îf)
5709. It was narrated from Yahya bin Sa‘eed who heard Sa‘eed bin Al-Musayyab say: “Thaqîf welcomed ‘Umar with a drink. He called for it, but when he brought it close to his mouth, he did not like it. He called for water to weaken it, and said: ‘Do like this.’” (Da‘if)

5710. It was narrated that ‘Utbah bin Farqad said: “The Nabî that ‘Umar bin Al-Khaṭṭâb used to drink had turned to vinegar.” (Da‘if)

One of the things that points to the soundness of this is the Ḥadîth narrated by As-Sâ‘îb.

5711. It was narrated from As-Sâ‘îb that ‘Umar bin Al-Khaṭṭâb went out to them and said: “I noticed the smell of drink on so-and-so, and he said that he had drunk Al-Tîlî (thickened juice of grapes). I am asking about what he drank. If it was an intoxicant I will flog him.” So ‘Umar bin Al-Khaṭṭâb, may Allâh be pleased with him, flogged him, carrying out the Ḥadd punishment in full. (Saḥîh)
Chapter 49. Humiliation And Painful Torment That Alläh, The Mighty And Sublime, Has Prepared For The One Who Drinks Intoxicants

5712. It was narrated from Jâbir that a man from (the tribe of) Jaishân, who are from Yemen, came and asked the Messenger of Alläh about a drink that they drank in his homeland that was made of corn and called Al-Mîzr (beer). The Prophet said to him: “Is it an intoxicant?” He said: “Yes.” The Messenger of Alläh said: “Every intoxicant is unlawful. Alläh, the Mighty and Sublime, has promised the one who drinks intoxicants that He will give him to drink from the mud of Khibâl.” They said: “O Messenger of Alläh, what is the mud of Khibâl?” He said: “The sweat of the people of Hell,” or he said: “The juice of the people of Hell.” (Sâhîh)

Comments:
(For details, please see narration 5673.)

Chapter 50. Encouragement To Avoid Doubtful Matters

5713. It was narrated that An-Nu’mân bin Bashîr said: “I heard the Messenger of Alläh say: ‘That which is lawful is clear and that which is unlawful is clear, but between them there are matters
which are doubtful.’’ And sometimes he said: ‘‘But between them are matters that are not as clear. I will describe the likeness of that for you. Allâh, the Mighty and Sublime, has a sanctuary and the sanctuary of Allâh is that which He has forbidden. Whoever grazes around the sanctuary will soon transgress into the sanctuary. And whoever approaches a matter that is unclear, he will soon wind up in the sanctuary.’’ And sometimes he said: ‘‘He will soon transgress, and indeed whoever mixes in doubt, he will soon cross into it.’’ (Sahîh)

Comments:

This narration has preceded. For details, see Hadîth 4458.

5714. It was narrated that Abû Al-Ḥawrâ’ As-Sa’dî said: ‘‘I said to Al-Ḥasan bin ‘Alî, may Allâh be pleased with him: ‘What did you memorize from the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ?’ He said: I memorized from him: ‘Leave that which makes you doubt for that which does not make you doubt.’’ (Sahîh)

Chapter 51. It Is Disliked To Sell Raisins To One Who Will Use Them To Make Nabidh

5715. It was narrated from Ibn Ṭâwûs, from his father, that he
disliked to sell raisins to one who would use them to make *Nabūdhi*. (Sahīh)

Chapter 52. It Is Disliked To Sell Juice

5716. It was narrated that Muṣʿab bin Saʿd said: “Saʿd had many grapevines and he had someone looking after them for him. (The vines) bore many grapes, and that man wrote to him (saying): ‘I am afraid that the grapes will be wasted; what do you think if I squeeze them to make juice?’ Saʿd wrote to him (saying): ‘When this letter of mine reaches you, leave my land, for by Allāh I cannot trust you with anything ever again.’ So he made him leave his land.” (Sahīh)

5717. It was narrated that Ibn Sīrīn said: “Sell it as juice to one who will make *Af-Tīla* (thickened grape juice) with it, and not *Khamr* (wine) with it.” (Sahīh)
Chapter 53. What Kind Of Thickened Grape Juice Is Permissible To Drink And What Kind Is Not Permitted

5718. It was narrated that Suwiad bin Ghafalah said: “Umar bin Al-Khaṭṭāb wrote to some of his workers saying: ‘Give to the Muslims thickened grape juice when two thirds of it have gone and one-third is left.’” (Da’if)

5719. It was narrated that ‘Āmir bin ‘Abdullāh said: “I saw the letter of Umar bin Al-Khaṭṭāb to Abū Mūsā (in which he said): ‘A caravan came to me from Ash-Shām carrying a thick black paint like the pitch that is daubed on camels. I asked them how long they cooked it, and they told me that they cooked it until it was reduced by two-third. So the bad two-third had gone, one-third to take away evil and one-third to take away the bad smell. So let those who are with you drink it.’” (Da’īf)

5720. It was narrated that ‘Abdullāh bin Yazīd Al-Khatmī said: “Umar bin Al-Khaṭṭāb, may
Allāh be pleased with him, wrote to us (saying): ‘Cook your drinks until the share of the Shaijān is gone, for he has two (shares) and you have one.’” (Dā'f)

5721. It was narrated that Ash-Sha'bī said: “Allāh, may Allāh be pleased with him, used to give the people thickened grape juice into which flies would fall and not be able to get out again.” (Dā'f)

Comments:
The purpose is that it used to be very thick. The thicker the more protected from intoxication. Anything that contains intoxication is unlawful.

5722. It was narrated that Dāwūd said: “I asked Sa'eed: ‘What is the drink that 'Umar bin Al-Khattāb, may Allāh be pleased with him, regarded as permissible?’ He said: ‘That which has been cooked until two-third has gone and one-third is left.’” (Ṣāḥīḥ)

5723. It was narrated from Sa'eed bin Al-Musayyab that Abū Ad-Dardā' used to drink that of which two-third had gone and one-third was left. (Ṣāḥīḥ)
5724. It was narrated from Abû Mûsâ Al-'Ash'ârî that he used to drink thickened grape juice that of which two-third had gone and one-third was left. (Sahîh)

5725. It was narrated that Ya'la bin 'Atâ' said: “I heard Sa'eed bin Al-Musayyab say, when a Bedouin asked him about a drink that had been cooked and reduced by half: ‘No, not until two-third has gone and one-third is left.”’ (Sahîh)

5726. It was narrated that Sa'eed bin Al-Musayyab said: “When At-Tilâ’ (thickened grape juice) has been cooked and reduced to one-third, then there is nothing wrong with it.” (Sahîh)

5727. Abû Rajâ’ said: “I asked Al-Hasan about At-Tilâ’ (thickened grape juice) that has been reduced to half. He said: ‘Do not drink it.’” (Sahîh)

5728. It was narrated that Bushair bin Al-Muhâjir said: “I asked Al-Hasan about juice that has been cooked. He said: ‘That which has been cooked until two-third of it
has gone and one-third is left.” (Hasan)

5729. It was narrated that Anas bin Sirin said: “I heard Anas bin Malik say: ‘The Shaitān disputed with Nūh, peace be upon him, concerning the grapevine. One said: “This is for me,” and the other said: “This is for me.” Then they agreed that Nūh would have one-third and the Shaitān would have two-thirds.” (Hasan)

5730. It was narrated that ‘Abdul-Malik bin Ṭufail Al-Jazari said: “Umar bin ‘Abdul-‘Azīz wrote to us (saying): ‘Do not drink At-Tīlā’ (thickened grape juice) until two-third of it are gone and one-third remains, and every intoxicant is unlawful.’” (Da‘īf)

5731. It was narrated that Makhūl said: “Every intoxicant is unlawful.” (Saḥīḥ)

Chapter 54. What Kind Of Juices Are Permissible To Drink And What Kinds Are Not

5732. It was narrated that Abū Thābit Ath-Tha’lābī said: “I was with Ibn ‘Abbās when a man came to him and asked him about juice.
He said: ‘Drink that which is fresh.’ He said: ‘I cooked a drink on the fire and I am not sure about it.’ He said: ‘Did you drink it before you cooked it?’ He said: ‘No.’ He said: ‘Fire does not make permissible something that is forbidden.’” (Sahih Mawqif)

Comments:
When the grape-juice is fresh, it is free from intoxication. It, therefore, could be drunk. But if it becomes old, then there is in it the possibility of intoxication.

5733. ‘Atâ’ said: “I heard Ibn ‘Abbâs say: ‘By Allah, fire does not make anything permissible or forbidden.’” He said: “Then he explained what he meant by ‘it does not make permissible’ as referring to what they said about ʿAṣ-Ṭilâ’ (thickened grape juice), and he explained what he said about ‘it does not make forbidden’ as referring to performing Wūdâ’ after eating something that has been touched by fire.” (Sahih)

Comments:
(See Nos. 171-185.)

5734. It was narrated that Sa’eeed bin Al-Musayyab said: “Drink juice so long as it does not have any foam.” (Sahih)
Comments:
Appearance of froth evidences change or alteration, and it is the sign of intoxication.

5735. It was narrated that Ḥishām bin ‘Ā’idh Al-Asadī said: “I asked Ibrāhīm about juice and he said: ‘Drink it, unless it bubbles, so long as it doesn’t change.” (Ḥasan)

Comments:
This ruling is not specific to grape-juice only; for every type of juice the same ruling is applied.

5736. It was narrated from ‘Atā’ that he said, concerning juice: “Drink it unless it is bubbling.” (Ḥasan)

5737. It was narrated that Ash-Sha’bī said: “Drink it for three days unless it bubbles.” (Ṣahih)

Chapter 56. Kinds Of Nabīdih That Are Permissible To Drink And The Kinds That Are Not

5738. It was narrated from ‘Abdullāh Ad-Dailamī that his father Fairūz said: “I came to the Messenger of Allāh and said: ‘O Messenger of Allāh, we have grapevines and Allāh, the Mighty and Sublime, has revealed that Khāmr (wine) is forbidden, so what
should we do?' He said: 'Make raisins.' I said: 'What should we do with the raisins?' He said: 'Soak them in the morning and drink them in the evening, and soak them in the evening and drink them in the morning.' I said: 'Can we leave it until it gets stronger?' He said: 'Do not put it in clay vessels, rather put it in skins, for if it stays there for a long time, it will turn into vinegar.'" (Sahih)

5739. It was narrated from Ibn Al-Dailamî that his father said: "We said: 'O Messenger of Allâh, we have grapevines; what should we do with them?' He said: 'Make raisins.' We said: 'What should we do with the raisins?' He said: 'Soak them in the morning and drink them in the evening, and soak them in the evening and drink them in the morning.' I said: 'Can we leave it until it gets stronger?' He said: 'Do not put it in clay vessels, rather put it in skins, for if it stays there for a long time, it will turn into vinegar.'" (Sahih)

5740. It was narrated that Ibn 'Abbâs said: "Nabîdîh would be made for the Messenger of Allâh and he would drink it in the morning, and on the following
morning. Then on the evening before the third day, if there was anything left in the vessel, they would not drink it and it would be thrown away.” (Sahih)

Comments:
In the narration of the Mother of the Believers, Ai’shah, there is mention of one day and one night. It is possible that during summertime when there was the danger of the occurrence of intoxication, one day and one night was thought enough, and during the wintertime, etc., he might have been drinking it until two or three days. Moreover, this Nabîdh was made in a leather water bag (as is elucidated in the report of Ai’shah). There was, therefore, no danger of intoxication, even if it was kept for long. At the most it could turn sour. Hence, both the narrations are correct. The objective is protection against intoxication.

5742. It was narrated that Ibn ‘Abbâs said: “Nabîdh of raisins would be made for the Messenger of Allâh at night, and he would put it in a water skin and drink it during the next day, the day after, and the day after that. At the end of the third day, he would give it to

Comments:
'(He) used to drink it' provided the danger of intoxication had not had occurred. When there was danger of intoxication, it was poured out.
others to drink, or drink it himself, and if anything was left the following morning, he would pour it away.” (Sahih)

5743. It was narrated from Ibn ‘Umar that Nabīd of raisins would be made for him in a water skin in the morning, and he would drink it that night, and it would be made for him in the evening, and he would drink it in the morning. He would wash out the water skins and not leave any pieces or anything in them. Nāfi’ said: “We used to drink it like honey.” (Sahih)

Comments:

‘Like honey’ means it used to be pure sweet. It contained no sourness. It is obvious that in one night or one day, there is absolutely no possibility of it turning sour. Though, if there is no intoxication, absolute sourness does not render Nabīd unlawful. After all, vinegar also happens to be sour. And vinegar is lawful and permissible.

5744. It was narrated that Bassām said: “I asked Abū Ja’far about Nabīd and he said: “‘Alī bin Ḥusain, may Allāh be pleased with him, would have Nabīd made for him at night, and he would drink it in the morning, and he would have Nabīd made in the morning and he would drink it at night.”’” (Sahih)

5745. ‘Abdullāh said: “I heard Sufyān being asked about Nabīd.”
He said: ‘Make Nabīḍh at night and drink it in the morning.’”
(Sahih)

5746. It was narrated from Abū 'Uthmān, who was not Al-Hindī, that Umm Al-Fadl sent word to Anas bin Mālik, asking him about Nabīḍh made in an earthenware jar. He told her about his son An-Nadr, who used to make Nabīḍh in an earthenware jar in the morning and drink it in the evening. (Da'if)

Comments:
(Please turn to Ḥadīth 5655)

5747. It was narrated from Sa'eed bin Al-Musayyib that he disliked putting the dregs of Nabīḍh into (new) Nabīḍh lest it become strong because of the dregs. (Sahih)

Comments:
The details concerning this matter preceded above in the narration 5743.

5748. It was narrated that Sa'eed bin Al-Musayyib said concerning Nabīḍh: “The dregs are what intoxicates.” (Hasan)

Comments:
Meaning intoxication is produced in it and its ruling becomes that of wine. It becomes unlawful to drink it, because from the dimension of the Divine law, the ruling for intoxicating drink and wine is one and the same.
5749. It was narrated that Sa’eed bin Al-Musayyab said: “Khamr is so called because it is left until the good parts are gone and the dregs remain.” And he disliked everything that was made by using dregs (by adding new materials to the dregs). (Sahih)

Chapter 57. Different Reports
From Ibrāhīm Concerning Nabīdh

5750. It was narrated that Ibrāhīm said: “They used to think that whoever drank something and became intoxicated from it, it was not befitting for him to go back and drink more of the same.” (Sahih)

Comments:
In other words, Ibrahim An-Nakhai did not consider permissible any intoxicating drink. Neither a little nor a lot. And he has transmitted this course of action from the Salaf or the predecessors. Salaf signifies the Prophet’s Companions and prominent followers.

5751. It was narrated that Ibrāhīm said: “There is nothing wrong with Nabīdh Al-Bukhtij.”[1] (Qa‘if)

Comments:
Please see narrations 5718 through 5730.

[1] Nabīdh that is cooked.
5752. It was narrated that Abû Al-Miskîn said: “I asked Ibrâhim: ‘We take the dregs of Khamr or Tîlâ’ (thickened grape juice) and clean them, then we soak it with raisins for three days, then we strain it and leave it until it matures, then we drink it.’ He said: ‘That is Makrûh.” (Da‘îf)

5753. It was narrated that Ibn Shubrumah said: “May Allâh have mercy on Ibrâhim. Other scholars had strict views on Nabîdh but he was lenient.” (Sa‘îdî)

5754. Ibn Al-Mubârak said: “I have never found any sound report, giving a concession on intoxicants, except the report narrated from Ibrâhim.” (Sa‘îdî)

Comments:
So to speak, Ibrahim An-Nakhaii is solitary or alone in this matter. All the Companions and the successors or the Tâbî‘în consider an intoxicating beverage forbidden, while Ibrahim An-Nakhaii has been reported to condone it in small quantity. Opposition of the consensus of the Prophet’s Companions is not an ordinary matter.

5755. ‘Ubaidullâh bin Sa’eed said: “I heard Abû Usâmah say: ‘I never saw any man more assiduous in seeking knowledge than ‘Abdullâh bin Al-Mubârak, not in Ash-Shâm, Egypt, Yemen or the Hijâz.”’ (Sa‘îdî)
Chapter 58. Mentioning The Permissible Drinks

5756. It was narrated that Anas said: Umm Sulaim had a wooden cup and she said: “I gave the Messenger of Allah all kinds of things to drink in it: Water, honey, milk and Nabīdḥ.” (Sahīh)

Comments:
1. It has been described previously that Allah’s Messenger often paid visits to the houses of Umm Sulaym and her sister Umm Harâm, on account of his having relationship with them. In this way, they used to get opportunities of serving and honoring the Messenger of Allah.

2. It should be borne in mind that here Nabīdḥ signifies fresh Nabīdḥ.

5757. It was narrated from Sa‘eed bin ‘Abdur-Rahmān bin Abza that his father said: “I asked Ubayy bin Ka‘b about Nabīdḥ, and he said: ‘Drink water, drink honey, drink Sawāq (barley gruel) and drink milk that you have been nourished with since childhood.’ I repeated the question and he said: ‘Is it wine you want? Is it wine you want?’” (Da‘f)

Comments:
The objective of Ubayy bin Ka‘b was that the Nabīdḥ comes of all sorts; intoxicating as well as plain. If I tell you that you should drink Nabīdḥ, then I am afraid lest you end up drinking intoxicating Nabīdḥ, because slight intoxication is often not felt.
5758. It was narrated that Ibn Mas'ūd said: “The people have invented new drinks and I do not know what they are. I have not drunk anything for 20 years (or he said: 40 years) except water and Sawīq (barley gruel), and he did not mention Nabīḍh.” (ṣaḥīḥ)

5759. It was narrated that ‘Abīdah said: “The people have invented drinks and I do not know what they are. I have not drunk anything for 20 years except water, milk and honey.” (ṣaḥīḥ)

5760. It was narrated that Ibn Shubrumah said: “Ṭalḥah said to the people of Al-Kūfah concerning Nabīḍh: ‘It is a test whereby a young man may benefit but an old man may be harmed.’ If there was a wedding among them, Ṭalḥah and Zubaid would offer milk and honey to drink. It was said to Ṭalḥah: ‘Why don’t you offer Nabīḍh?’ He said: ‘I would not like a Muslim to become intoxicated because of me.’” (ṣaḥīḥ)

Comments:
1. ‘Is a trial or test’: The purpose is that the people of Kūfah have a great
fixation on Nabidh. Everyone drinks it, the little ones, the young and the old alike.

2. ‘Become intoxicated’: This is because Nabidh could cause intoxication. One might probably not come to realize about its being intoxicating prior to drinking. One might realize after drinking that intoxication had already occurred in it. In this way, one could end up drinking an intoxicating beverage unknowingly.

5761. Jarîr said: “Ibn Shubrumah would not drink anything except water and milk.” (Sahîh)

This is the end of Kitâb Al-Mujtaba of An-Nasâ’î. Praise be to Allâh, the Lord of the worlds. May Allâh send blessings and peace upon our master Muhammâd, the Seal of the Prophets, and upon his good and pure family. May Allâh be pleased with all the Companions, and those who follow them in truth until the Day of Judgment.
**TRANSLITERATION**

In transliterating Arabic words, the following system of symbols has been used:

1. **Consonants**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arabic script</th>
<th>English symbol</th>
<th>English words having similar sounds</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>A'</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>bless</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>true</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>th</td>
<td>th</td>
<td>think</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>j</td>
<td>j</td>
<td>judge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h **</td>
<td>h **</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kh</td>
<td>kh</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>dear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dh</td>
<td>dh</td>
<td>this</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r</td>
<td>r</td>
<td>road</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>z</td>
<td>z</td>
<td>is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>safe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sh</td>
<td>sh</td>
<td>show</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s **</td>
<td>s **</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d **</td>
<td>d **</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t **</td>
<td>t **</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>z **</td>
<td>z **</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a ***</td>
<td>a ***</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gh</td>
<td>gh</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>free</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>q **</td>
<td>q **</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k</td>
<td>k</td>
<td>care</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l</td>
<td>l</td>
<td>light</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>moon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>nice</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Arabic script

English symbol

English words having similar sounds

*h

health

wealth

youth

* This symbol represents a glottal stop (transliterated medially and finally and not represented in transliteration when initial).

** These sounds have no equivalent sounds in English.

Native speakers of English usually identify them with familiar English sounds in the following manner:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ح</th>
<th>h</th>
<th>ñ</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ص</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>ñ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ض</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>ñ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ط</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>ñ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ظ</td>
<td>z</td>
<td>ñ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ق</td>
<td>q</td>
<td>ñ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*** The Arabic sounds represented by the symbols (’ / ’) and the ones mentioned in the previous note are to be learned by imitating the native speakers of Arabic, if one wants to be exact in their pronunciation.

2. Vowels

There are only six vowels in Arabic; three of them are short and the other three are long. They are symbolized in the following way:

a  approximately as in ‘bad’
i  as in ‘bid’
u  as in ‘pull’
á  as in ‘father’
i  as in ‘bread’
ú  as in ‘pool’
Glossary Of Islamic Terms

‘Abd: (العبد) Literally meaning ‘a male slave’. Also used as a prefix in many Muslim male names in conjunction with a Divine Attribute of Allāh, meaning servant or slave. Examples include Abdullah (‘Abd-Allāh—servant of Allāh), Abdur-Rahmān (‘Abd Ar-Rahmān—servant of the Most Merciful), and Abdul-Khāliq (‘Abd Al-Khāliq—servant of the Creator).

‘Abid: (العابد) One who preoccupies himself with ‘Ībadah (worship) and shows relatively less interest towards knowledge.

‘Abīr: (العبير) A mixture of saffron with other perfumes.

Abtah or Bāthā: (الأبطح أو البطحاء) (See Muhassab) Literally means earth of small pebbles. These are found usually on the course where water flows at times. Usually this word is used for the former valley between Safa and Marwah, and an open land between Makkah and Mina called Muhassab.

Abyr ‘Ali: (أبىر علي) The name of a place where Shajarah Mosque is situated, 7 km outside of Al-Madīnah.

‘Ād: (عاد) An ancient tribe or nation that lived after the Prophet Noah. It was prosperous, but naughty and disobedient to Allāh, so Allāh destroyed it with violent destructive westerly wind.

Ad-Dabūr: (الدبور) Westerly wind.

Adāhī: (الأضاحي) Sacrifices.

Ādam: (آدم) The first human being created by Allāh and the first Prophet sent on earth to establish monotheism as the original religion for mankind.

Adhān: (الأذان) The call for the daily five obligatory prayers is called Adhān. The person who calls the Adhān is called a Mu’adhdhin. The Adhān consists of specific phrases, recited aloud in Arabic prior to each of the five daily worship times. These phrases are as follows: Allāhu Akbar, Allāhu Akbar; Allāhu Akbar, Allāhu Akbar; Ash-hadu an lā ilāha illallāh, Ash-hadu an lā ilāha illallāh; Ash-hadu anna Muḥammadan Rasūl-Ullāh, Ash-hadu anna Muḥammadan Rasūl-Ullāh; Hayya alas-Salāh, Hayyālas-Salāh; Hayya alal-Falāḥ, Hayya alal-Falāḥ; Allāhu Akbar, Allāhu Akbar; Lā ilāha illallāh. Upon hearing the Adhān, Muslims discontinue all activity and assemble at a local mosque for congregational prayers.
‘Adl: (العدل) Justice and equity. A fundamental value governing all social behavior, and forming the basis of all social dealings and legal framework in Islam.

Afda: (الفضل) The best.


Ahābīsh: (الأهابيش) The settlers in the Makkān outskirts.

Ahādīth: (الأحاديث) (sing. Hadīth) Sayings and doings of the Prophet Muhammad ﷺ.

‘Ahd: (العهد) Literally means Covenant—a solemn agreement between two or more persons or groups.

‘Ahd Alastu: (عهد آلست) (Covenant of Alast) Before creating human beings, Allāh asked their souls: “Am I not (Alastu) your Lord?” And they all answered: “Yes! We testify!” At the Resurrection it will be determined whether each individual remained faithful to his original testimony. In other words, did his actions reflect his pre-creation acceptance of servanthood and Allāh’s Lordship? Or did his actions demonstrate that he lived the life of a denier—one whose life was a denial of the Covenant of Alast? This Covenant is mentioned in Sūrat Ar-Ra’d (13:20) and Sūrat Yā-Sīn (36:60). The Old Testament tells of the covenant the Jews made with Allāh.

Ahkām: (الأحكام) (Orders) According to Islamic Law, there are five kinds of orders: 1. Compulsory or obligatory (Wājib, الواجب), 2. Desirable or recommended, ordered without obligation (Mustahabb, المستحب), 3. Lawful, legal, permissible, or allowed (Halāl, الأحلال), 4. Undesirable but lawful or legal, disliked but not forbidden (Makrūh, المكروه), 5. Unlawful, forbidden, prohibited and punishable from the viewpoint of Islam. (Muharram or Harām, الحرام أو الحرام).


Ahlul-Bayt: (أهل البيت) Literally means ‘the people of the house’, a polite form of addressing the members of the family, including husband and wife. The words occur in the Noble Qur’ān when angels came to give glad tidings of a son to Prophet Ibrahim at an old age. See Sūrat Hūd (11:73). Generally the term Ahl-Bayt refers to the household of the Prophet ﷺ.

Ahlul-Hadīth: (أهل الحديث) Refers to the group of scholars in Islam who specialize in the study of Ahādīth and its sciences, like Imām Bukhari, Imām Muslim, Imām Tirmidhi, Imām Abu Daud, Imām Albānī and others.

Ahlul-‘Arūd: (أهل العروض) and (‘Awāliyul-Madinah): Outskirts
of Al-Madinah up to a distance of four or more miles. South-eastern part of Al-Madinah in the valleys of Mahzur.

**Ahlul-Kitāb** (أهل الكتاب) Literally meaning ‘People of the Scripture’. This term, found in the Qur’ān, describes adherents of divinely revealed religions that preceded Islam. Most commonly, the term refers to Jews and Christians, and confers upon these two groups a special status within Muslim society, owing to the monotheistic basis of their religions.

**Ahlul-Kitāb was-Sunnah** (أهل الكتاب والسنة) Literally means ‘the People of the Book (the Noble Qur’ān) and the Sunnah, i.e., the sayings and deeds of the Prophet Muhammad ﷺ.

**Ahludh-Dhimmah** (أهل الدمة) See Dhimmis.

**Ahlul-Baqar** (أهل البقر) Those keeping cows.

**Ahlul-Jabr** (أهل الجبر) See Jabriyyah.

**Ahlul-Qadar** (أهل القدر) See Qadariyyah.

**Ahlul-Qurā** (أهل القرى) The town-dwellers.

**Ahlul-‘Uqad** (أهل العقد) The chiefs.

**Ahlur-Ra‘y** (أهل الرأي) Literally means ‘the people of opinion’. It refers to people highly learned in Islam that are consulted on Islamic matters.

**Ahlus-Suffah** (أهل الصفة) People of the Platform. See Ashabus-Suffah.

**Ahmad** (أحمد) Ahmad is another name of Muhammad ﷺ. See the Noble Qur’ān, Sūrat As-Saff (61:6). See Muhammad for more details.

**‘Alayhis-Salām** (عليه السلام) See (Peace be upon him).

**Al-Ahzāb** (الأحزاب) Ahzāb means parties. This term is used to describe the different tribes that united together to fight the Muslims in the battle of the Ditch at Al-Madinah in 627 CE (5 AH).

**Ayyāmut-Tashríq** (أيام التشريف) 11th, 12th and 13th of Dhul-Hijjah. On these days the pilgrims throw pebbles on Jamrāt.

**Ayyim** (الأيم) A woman who already has a sexual experience, she may be a widow or a divorced.

**‘Aji** (العج) Raising the voice with Talbiyah during Hajj and ‘Umrah.

**Al-‘Ajmā‘** (العمجاء) Grazing livestock such as sheep, goats, cattle, camels and others.

**Ajnād** (أجناد) ‘Ajnād stands for five regions of Syria—Palestine, Jordan,
Damascus, Hima and Qansarin. (Nawawi)

‘Ajwah: (العجوة) Pressed soft dates, also a kind of high quality dates.

Al-Ākhirah: (الآخرة) This term refers to Afterlife, Hereafter, and the Next World and embraces the following ideas: That man is answerable to Allāh That the present order of existence will some day come to an end that when that happens, Allāh will bring another order into being in which He will res-urrect all human beings, gather them together and examine their conduct, and reward them with justice and mercy, That those who are reckoned good will be sent to Paradise whereas the evil-doers will be consigned to Hell. That the real measure of success or failure of a person is not the extent of his prosperity in the present life, but his success in the Afterlife.

Akhyāf: (أخياف) Uterine brother or sister. Born of the same mother but by a different father.

Al-Hamdu Lillāh: (الحمد لله) This is a part of the beginning Verse of the first Sūrah of the Noble Qur’ān. The meaning of it is ‘all praise is due to Allāh’. Other than being recited daily during prayers, a Muslim says this expression after almost every activity of his daily life to thank Allāh for His favors. A Muslim is grateful to Allāh for all His blessings, and it is a statement of thanks, appreciation, and gratitude from the creature to his Creator.

‘Aynul-Yaqin: (عين الالقين) Assured knowledge, assured sight, that which one sees with the eye.

‘Alayhis-Salām: (عليه السلام) Peace be upon him (pbuh).

Ālim: (العالم) (pl. ‘Ulamā’) A Muslim religious scholar who has attained a considerable amount of Islamic knowledge.

Allāh: (الله) It is an Arabic word of rich and varied meaning, used as the proper name for God. Derives from the word ‘Ilāh which means ‘the One deserving all worship’. Muslims view Allāh as the Creator and Sustainer of everything in the universe, He is the Merciful, the Beneficent, the Magnificent, the Protector, the Provider, the Loving, the Wise, the Mighty, the Exalted, the Lord, the All-Knowing, the All-Hearing, the All-Seeing, the First, the Last, and the Eternal. Who is Supreme and Incomparable, has no physical form, and has no associates who share in His Divinity. It is exactly the same word as, in Hebrew, the Jews use for God (Elohi), the word which Jesus Christ used in Aramaic when he prayed to God. Allāh has an identical name in Judaism, Christianity and Islam; Allāh is the same God worshipped by Muslims, Christians and Jews. In the Qur’ān, Allāh is described as having at least ninety-nine Divine Names, which describe His Perfect Attributes. Unlike other Divine Names, Allāh is the Name which is invested with the sum
of all the Divine Attributes. The name Allāh has no plural and no feminine form.

**Allāhu Akbar**  (الله أكبر): This phrase, known as the *Takbīr* (Magnification), means ‘Allāh is the Most Great’ and is said by Muslims at various times. Most often it is pronounced during the daily calls for prayers, during prayers, when they are happy, and wish to express their approval of what they hear, when they slaughter an animal, and when they want to praise a speaker, they also use it to express surprise thankfulness or fear, thereby reinforcing their belief that all things come from Allāh. Actually it is the most said expression in the world.

**Amah**  (الأمة): A female slave.

**A‘māl**  (الأعمال): The acts of worship.

**‘Amāliq**  (العماليق): A tribe from the progeny of Imlīq bin Laudh bin ’Iram bin Sām bin Nūh, between the period of Prophet Hūd and Ibrāhīm, having big bodies, strong and of arrogant type.

**Al-Amānah**  (الأمانة): The trust, moral responsibility or honesty, and all the duties which Allāh has ordained.

**Amber**  (عنبر): It has been called ambergris and then amber in later times, named after the whale as it is a product that it regurgitates. It is not the same as as the sap from trees that hardens and is called ‘amber’.

**Amin**  (الأمين): Custodian or guardian. Someone who is loyal or faithful.

**Āmin**  (أمان): O Allāh, accept our invocation.

**‘Amīluz-Zakāh**  (عامل الزكاة): The *Zakāh* (obligatory charity) collector.

**Amīr**  (الأمير): Amīr is used in Islam to mean leader or commander.

**Amīrul-Mu‘minīn**  (أمير المؤمنين): It means commander of the believers. This title was given to the caliphs after Prophet Muhammad ﷺ.

**Amlah**  (أملح): There is a difference over its description. Some say it is a black and white ram (male sheep), some say rams having more white color, some say it is pure white, while some say white and red, and some say black and red.

**Amma Ba‘d**  (أما بعد): An expression used for separating an introductory from the main topics in a speech; the introductory being usually concerned with Allāh’s praises and glorification. Literally it means ‘whatever comes after’ or ‘then after’.

**Anbūjāniyyah**  (الأنجانية): A plain thick woolen sheet or garment with no
markings on it.

**Ansār**: (الأنصار) Literally meaning helpers or supporters, Ansār were the Companions of the Prophet from the inhabitants of Al-Madīnah, who embraced Islam and supported it, and who received and entertained the Muhājirīn (sing. Muhājir) who were the Muslim emigrants from Makkah and other places.

**'Anazah**: (العنزة) A spear-headed stick.

**'Aqabah**: (العتبة) A place just outside of Makkah, in Mina where the first Muslims from Yathrib (Al-Madīnah) pledged allegiance to the Prophet in the year 621 CE. A similar meeting took place the next year when more Muslims from Yathrib pledged their allegiance to the Prophet.

**'Aqd**: (العقد) A contract.

**'Aqd Sahih**: (العقد الصحيح) A legal contract.

**'Aqīdah**: (الاعتقاد) Literally means belief. In Islamic terms, it means the following six Articles of Faith: 1. Belief in Allāh, the One God. 2. Belief in Allāh’s angels. 3. Belief in His revealed Books. 4. Belief in His Messengers. 5. Belief in the Day of Judgment. 6. Belief in Fate and the Divine Decree.

**'Aqilah**: (العقلنة) The near male relatives on the father’s side who are obliged to pay the Diyah (blood money) on behalf of any of the clan’s members who kills a person. (See also ‘Asabah and Ashfal-Fzīnld.)

**Al-‘Aqiq**: (العقيق) A valley about seven kilometers west of Al-Madīnah.

**'Aqiqah**: (العقيدة) It is the sacrificing of one or two sheep on the occasion of the birth of a child, as a token of gratitude to Allāh.

**'Agraqa Halqā**: (عقرى حلقي) Is just an exclamatory expression, the literal meaning of which is not meant always. It expresses disapproval.

**'Arafah**: (عرفة) The ninth day of the last Islamic month Dhul-Hijjah.

**'Arafāt**: (عرفات) ‘Arafāt is a pilgrimage site, a plain about 25 kilometers southeast of Makkah Al-Mukaramah. Standing on ‘Arafāt on the 9th of Dhul-Hijjah and staying there from mid-day to sunset is the essence of the Hajj (the Pilgrimage). It is on this plain that humanity will be raised on the Day of Resurrection for questioning and Judgment.

**Arba‘inīyāt**: (الأربعينيات) Collections of the forty Ahādīth.


**Arāk**: (الأراك) A tree from which Siwāk (tooth stick) is made.
'ARIYYAH: (العربية) (pl. ‘Arāyā) A contract of barter in dates. When the fruits of a designated tree were given as a gift to another person, then the giver was troubled by the recipient’s coming again and again to his garden to gather the dates, so he was permitted to buy the fresh dates in return for dried dates. (See Bay‘ul-‘ARIYYAH)

ARKĀN: (الآركان) (sing. Rukn) The elements or essential ingredients of an act, without which the act is not legally valid.

ARKĀNUL-ISLAM: (أركان الإسلام) A term referring to the Five Pillars of Islam that demonstrate a Muslim’s commitment to Allāh in word and in deed. They are as follows: 1. To testify that none has the right to be worshipped but Allāh and that Muhammad is the Messenger of Allāh. 2. To offer the prayers. 3. To observe fasts during the month of Ramadān. 4. To pay the Zakāt (obligatory charity). 5. To perform Ḥajj (pilgrimage to Makkah).

ARMAGEDDON: (همِمَوْدَوْن) The place where the final battle will be fought between the forces of good and evil (probably so called in reference to the battlefield of Megiddo). (Rev. 16:16)

ARSH: (الأرش) Compensation given in case of someone’s injury caused by another person.

‘ARSH: (الإرش) The Throne of Allāh the Exalted.

‘ASABAH: (العصبة) All male relatives of a deceased person or a killer, from the father’s side.

‘ASABIYYAH: (العصبية) Tribal loyalty, nationalism.

‘ASB: (العص) A very coarse type of Yemenite cloth of cotton threads, some of them are dyed by means of knots before spinning with others that are not.

AS-ḤĀBUL-‘ARĀF: (أصحاب الأعراف) These will be the people who are neither righteous enough to enter Paradise nor wicked enough to be cast into Hell.

AS-ḤĀBUL-FURŪD: (أصحاب الفروض) These are the heirs who are the first responsibility holders to pay the Diyah or the blood money due towards a person. (These are said to be: Husband, wife, father, mother, grandfather, father’s father, grandmother, father’s mother, son’s daughter, granddaughter, daughter, real sister, uterine brother, uterine sister, stepbrother. These are the near male relatives on the father’s side like brother, nephew, father’s brother etc. In the absence of them, the ‘Asabah are the inheritors, in their absence the legacy or inheritance goes to Dhul-Arhām, meaning the relatives through mother’s side like maternal uncle, mother’s sister and mother’s father etc.

AS-ḤĀBUSH-SHAJARAH: (أصحاب الشجرة) Those Companions of the Prophet
who took oath to defend the religion against Quraysh at Hudaibiyah.

**As-hābus-Suffah:** Some Muslims who had migrated from Makkah, had no place to live and they were very poor people. The Prophet of Islam built a large platform Suffah of bricks and clay in the mosque for these people to rest at night. He also built a canopy to protect them from the heat of the sun during the day. The canopy was covered by date-palm leaves and branches. As the place was called Suffah, therefore the people who stayed there were called as As-hābus-Suffah or Ahlus-Suffah. They were about eighty men or more who used to stay and have religious teachings in the Prophet's mosque in Al-Madinah. Whosoever belonged among them is today recognized as an eminent personality of Islam. Suffah, a place that was once the refuge of the poor and the shelterless, became the centre of learning and excellence. It was there the first University of Islam came into being.

**As-hābusSunan:** The compilers of the Prophetic *Ahādīth* on Islamic jurisprudence.

**Al-‘Ashhurul-Hurum:** The sacred months. The months of Dhul-Qa'dah, Dhul-Hijjah, Muharram and Rajab.

**Al-‘Asharatul-Mubashsharah:** The ten Companions that were given the glad tidings of assurance of entering Paradise. They were Abu Bakr, 'Umar, 'Uthman, 'Ali, 'Abdur-Rahmān bin 'Awf, Abu 'Ubaidah bin Jarrah, Talhah bin 'Ubaidullah, Zubair bin Awwām, Sa'd bin Abu Waqqās and Sa'eed bin Zaid.

**Ash-Shām:** The region comprising Syria, Palestine, Lebanon and Jordan.

**‘Āshūrā’:** The 10th of the month of Muharram (the first month of the Islamic calendar).

**Al-Asmā‘ul-Husnā:** The term *Al-Asmā‘ul-Husnā*, literally meaning the ‘most excellent names’ is used to express Allāh’s most Beautiful Names and His most Perfect Attributes. These are at least 99 in number.

**Asmā‘ur-Rijāl:** The science of Biographies of Narrators.

**‘Asr:** It is the afternoon prayer, the third obligatory prayer of the day. It can be offered between mid afternoon and a little before sunset. It is also the name of Surah 103 of the Noble Qur’ān.

**As-Salāmu ‘Alaykum:** This is an expression Muslims say whenever they meet one another. It is a statement of greeting meaning ‘peace be upon you’. The appropriate response is *Wa ‘Alaykumus-Salām*, meaning ‘and peace be upon you also’. The extended forms of it are As-Salā-
mu ‘Alaykum wa Rahmatullah meaning ‘peace be upon you and mercy of Allah’ and As-Salāmu ‘Alaykum wa Rahmatullāhi wa Barakātuhu meaning ‘peace be upon you and mercy of Allah and His blessings.’ The response will also be changed accordingly.

**Astaghfirullāh** (آستغفر الله) This is an expression used by a Muslim when he wants to ask Allāh’s forgiveness. The meaning of it is ‘I ask Allāh’s forgiveness’. A Muslim says this phrase many times, when he is talking to another person, when he abstains from doing wrong, or even when he wants to prove that he is innocent of an incident. After every payer, a Muslim says this statement three times.

**Al-Aswāf** (الأسواف) Name of the area of Al-Madinah that Allāh’s Messenger made sacred. (An-Nihāyah) Bayhaqi said it to be the wall around Al-Madinah. (Sunan Al-Kubrā)

**Āthār** (الأثار) Sayings of the Sahābah, the Companions of the Prophet.

‘Ātifah (العبيرة) A sacrifice offered during the month of Rajab (in Jāhiliyyah and it was canceled after Islam). It was also called Rajabiyyah.

‘Ātīd (العترود) A young sheep that is old enough (of about one year) to fend for itself and no longer needs its mother.

**A‘ūdhu Billāhi minash-Shaytānir-Rajīm** (أعوذ بالله من الشيطان الرجيم) This is an expression and a statement that Muslims have to recite before reading the Qur’ān, before speaking, before doing any work, before a supplication, before doing ablution, before entering the washroom, and before doing many other daily activities. The meaning of this phrase is ‘I seek refuge in Allāh from the outcast Satan’. Satan is the source of evil and he always tries to misguide and mislead people, so Muslims recite this expression to keep them safe from the whispering of Satan.

**Awliyā’** (الأولياء) (pl. of Walī) Literally means friend. But in Islamic terminology it refers to the close friends of Allāh.

‘Awrah (العورة) Nakedness. Parts of the body that are not to be exposed to others. For men this is from the navel to the knee. For women it is all of her body except the hands, feet and face.

**Al-‘Awāli** (العوالي) Villages surrounding Al-Madinah.

‘Awāliyul-Madinah (عوالي المدينة) See Ahlul-‘Arūd.

**Al-‘Awāmir** (العوامر) Snakes living in houses.

**Awāq** (أواق) (sing. Üqiyyah also called Waqiyyah) 5 Awāq = 22 Silver Riyals of Yemen or 200 Silver Dirhams (i.e., 640 grams approx.; 12 Üqiyyah
is equal to 40 tolas. [Uqiyah is 40 dirhams, and 5 Awāq is 200 dirhams. It may be less or more according to different countries. (Sindi)] [An ounce; for silver 119.4 grams, for other substances 127/128 grams, modern use of ounce 28.349 grams.]

Awqāf: (الأوقاف) Property voluntarily transferred to a charity or trust to be used for public benefits.

Awwābin: (الآوايين) This prayer’s time is stated to be when the hooves of the young ones of camels begin to be scorched with the extremity of the heat. Obviously it is a little before the decline of the sun from its zenith.

Ayah: (الأية) (pl. Āyāt) Āyah means a proof, evidence, verse, lesson, sign, miracle, revelation, etc. The term is used to designate a Verse in the Qur’ān. There are over 6,600 Verses in the Qur’ān.

Ayyām Bid: (آيام بيد) The bright days or the moonlit days. The 13th, 14th and 15th of every lunar month when the moon is at its full.

Ayyāmul-Jahiliyyah: (أيام الجاهلية) A term designating a state of ignorance and immorality. It is a combination of views, ideas, and practices that totally defy and reject the guidance sent down by God through His Prophets. This term is commonly used by Muslims to refer to the pre-Islamic era in Arabia. Ayyāmul-Jahiliyyah, or ‘the days of Ignorance’ in the books of history, indicate the period before the prophethood of Muhammad when immorality, oppression, and evil were rampant.

Ayyāmut-Tashriq: (آيام التشريش) 11th, 12th and 13th of Dhul-Hijjah. On these days the pilgrims throw pebbles on Jamarāt.

Āyatul-Kursi: (آية الكرسي) Verse No. 255 in Sūrat Al-Baqarah.

Azfār: (الأظفار) A type of incense.

‘Azl: (العزل) Coitus Interruptus. Coitus in which the penis is withdrawn prior to ejaculation.

Azlām: (الأزلام) Literally means ‘arrows’. Here it means arrows used to seek good luck or a decision, practiced by the Arabs of pre-Islamic period of Ignorance.

Bābur-Rayyān: (باب الرمان) The name of one of the gates of Jannah (Paradise) through which the people who often observe fasting will enter on the Day of Judgment.

Bābus-Salām: (باب السلام) It is one of the famous gates of the Sacred Mosque in Makkah.
**Badanah**: (البهدة) (pl. Budn) A camel driven to be offered as a sacrifice by the pilgrims at the sanctuary of Makkah.

**Bādhaq or Bādhiq**: (البذاق) An alcoholic drink made from the juice of grapes by slowly boiling it down until two-thirds of it has gone.

**Bādiyah**: (البادية) (pl. Bawādi) A desert or semi-arid environment.

**Badr**: (بدر) A place about 150 kilometer to the south of Al-Madīnah, where the first great battle in Islamic history took place between the early Muslims and the infidels of Quraysh in the second year of Hijrah (624 CE). The Muslim army consisted of 313 men and the Quraysh had a total of about 1,000 soldiers, archers and horsemen. Even though the Muslims were outnumbered, the final result was to their favor. [See Sūrat Al-Anfāl (8:5-19, 42-48) and Sūrat Al-Іmān (3:13).]

**Bahimah**: (البهيمة) (pl. Bahā`im) signifies every quadruped animal (of which the beasts of prey are excluded). Bahimah thus refers to goats, sheep and cows.

**Al-Bahirah**: (البحيرة) A milking she-camel, whose milk used to be spared for idols and other false deities.

**Bay**: (البيع) Literally means sale. It is also taken to mean exchanging a commodity for another commodity. Commonly used as a prefix in referring to different types of sales.

**Bay'ul-`Inah**: (بيع ائحة) One form of it is that suppose a person asks someone to lend him a certain amount of money, he refuses the money in cash, instead offers him an article at a higher price than his demand of the required money, and later on buys the same article from him at a less price, i.e., equal to his required money. In this way, he makes him indebted for the difference.

**Bay'ul-`Ariyyah**: (بيع ارية) (pl. `Ara Cýā) It is a kind of sale by which the owner of `Ariyyah is allowed to sell the fresh dates while they are still over the palms by means of estimation, for dried plucked dates because of the irritation of again and again coming of him whom the gift was given, so they give him from their stock. `Ariyyah is lawful for an amount of five Wasq while one Wasq is of sixty Sā`. (See Sahīh Al-Bukhārī, Vol.3, Ahādīth Nos. 389, 394 and 397).

**Al-Bay'ul-Bātt**: (البيع البات) Absolute sale.

**Al-Bay'ul-Bātil**: (البيع الباطل) Vain sale (that a Muslim sells unlawful things, e.g., wine, pigs).

**Bay'ul-Gharar**: (بيع الغرر) Uncertainty, hazard, chance or risk, ambiguity and
uncertainty in transactions. Technically, selling something which has not yet been obtained, for example, selling eggs which have not yet been hatched, or an event where assurance or non-assurance is subject to chance and thus not known to parties of a transaction. Can also mean uncertainty or a hazard that is likely to lead to a dispute in a contract. Al-Gharar is also said to be selling goods that appear sound but contain some hidden fault or concerning which something is unclear.

**Bay'u Habalil-Habalah:** (بيع حبل الحبلة) The sale of a pregnant animal. There were two forms of this trade, the example of the first form is that to buy an offspring of an animal which itself is yet to be born by making the payment in advance. Second form is to sell an animal on condition to have the offspring of the sold animal. Both forms of this kind of transaction are prohibited.

**Bay'ul-Hasāt:** (بيع الحصاة) The sale of pebble. When the seller says to the buyer, “I sell you the goods that the pebble falls on with a certain sum of money.” It is forbidden in Islam. It was observed in three ways: (i) the seller throws pebbles onto the goods and gives the buyer whatever the pebbles land on; (ii) the seller sells land then tells the purchaser that he will get the land as far as a pebble thrown by the seller reaches; (iii) the seller tells the purchaser that he has the option to change his mind until he (the seller) throws a pebble, at which point the transaction becomes binding.

**Bay'ul-Istisnā':** (بيع الاستصناع) This is a kind of sale, where a commodity is transacted before it comes into existence. It means to order a manufacturer to manufacture a specific commodity for the purchaser. If the manufacturer undertakes to manufacture the goods for him with material from the manufacturer, the transaction of Istisnā' comes into existence. But it is necessary for the validity of Istisnā' that the price is fixed with the consent of the parties and that necessary specification of the commodity (intended to be manufactured) is fully settled between them. This kind of sale, used as a mode of financing, is also called Parallel Istisnā'.

**Bay'ul-Khiyār:** (بيع الخيار) Optional sale.

**Bay'ul-Malāqīḥ:** (بيع الملاقيح) A kind of sale practiced in the pre-Islamic period of Ignorance. One would pay the price of a she-camel that was not yet born.

**Bay'ul-Mu'āwamah:** (بيع المعاوامة) Selling the produce of a tree for many years ahead.

**Bay'ul-Muhāqalah:** (بيع المحاقلة) It is the estimate of wheat in the harvest (corn ears) and selling them for the same amount in weight.
Bay'ul-Mukhābarah: To lend the land or rent against a part of the produce like half or one third. It is forbidden because may be there no produce.

Bay'ul-Mukhdarrah: The sale of grain or vegetables before it is ripe and that they are free from diseases and blights, and their benefit is evident.

Bay'ul-Mulāmasah: A sale in which the deal is completed if the buyer touches the item, without seeing or checking it properly. It is usually done in the night and two men trade garments with each other by feeling or touching the garments by hands.

Bay'ul-Munābadhah: A sale in which the deal is completed when the seller throws a thing to the buyer, giving him no opportunity to see, touch or check it. Usually two men trade garments with each other by throwing garments to another.

Bay'ul-Muqāyadah: Sale of things for things corresponding nearly with barter, but the 'thing' is here opposed to 'obligations', so it is properly an exchange of specific for specific things.

Bay'ul-Muzābanah: The sale of fresh dates for dried dates by measure, and the sale of fresh grapes for dried grapes by measure. In both cases the dried fruits are measured while the fresh ones are only estimated as they are still on the trees. This term is mostly used for fruits.

Bay'ul-Muzayadah: Public sale.

Bay'un-Najsh: A trick (of offering a very high price) for something without the intention of buying it but just to allure and cheat somebody else who really wants to buy it although it is not worth such a high price.

Bay'un-Nājiz: Final sale.

Bay'us-Salaf: A sale in which the price is paid at once for goods to be delivered later.

Bay'us-Salam (Bay'us-Salaf): It is also called Bay'us-Salaf. This term refers to the advance payment for goods which are delivered later. Normally, no sale can be effected unless the goods are in existence at the time of the bargain. But this type of sale is the exception to the general rule provided the goods are defined and the date of delivery is fixed. The objects of this type of sale are mainly tangible but exclude gold or silver as these are regarded as having monetary value. Barring these, Bay'us-Salam covers almost all things which are capable of being definitely described as to
quantity, quality and workmanship. One of the conditions of this type of contract is advance payment; the parties cannot reserve their option of rescinding it but the option of revoking it on account of a defect in the subject matter is allowed. It is also applied to a mode of financing adopted by Islamic banks. It is usually applied in the agricultural sector, where the bank advances money for various inputs to receive a share in the crop, which the bank sells in the market.

**Bay‘us-Sarf:** (بيع الصرف) An exchange of obligations for obligations. The usual objects of this contract are dirhams and dinars, which being obligations; the definition is generally correct.

**Bay‘ut-Talji‘ah:** (بيع التلجئة) Simulated sale, protective sale.

**Bay‘ut-Tawliyah:** (بيع التولة) Released at cost price.

**Bay‘uth-Thunyā or Bay‘ul-Istiihnā‘:** (أو بيع الاستثناء يبيع الثنى) Selling a thing leaving a part of it. For example, selling his fruits but except a part of it.

**Bay‘ul-‘Urbun:** (بيع العريون) Earnest sale. The buyer pays some of the cost to the seller. If the buyer takes the goods, the paid money will be part of the price, but if the buyer rejected the goods, the paid money will be of the seller.

**Bay‘ul-Wadi‘ah:** (بيع الوضيعة) Resale at a loss.

**Bay‘ah:** (البيعة) A pledge or an oath of allegiance given by the citizens etc., to their Imam (Muslim ruler or leader) to be obedient to him according to the Islamic religion.

**Baydā':** (البيداء) A place to the south of Al-Madinah on the way to Makkah.

**Baytul-Māl:** (بيت المال) An Islamic treasury intended for the benefit of the Muslims and the Islamic state and not for the leaders or the wealthy.

**Al-Baytul-Ma‘mūr:** (البيت المعمور) Allāh’s House over the seventh heaven.

**Baytul-Maqdis:** (بيت المقدس) It is popularly referred to as Baytul-Muqaddas. Also known as Aqṣā Mosque, the famous mosque in Al-Quds (Jerusalem). It was the first Qiblah (prayer direction) of Islam. Then Allāh ordered Muslims to face the first House of Allāh, the Ka‘bah, at Makkah (Saudi Arabia). Baytul-Maqdis is the third most sacred place in the Islamic world, the first being the Sacred Mosque (Masjidul-Harām) in Makkah, and the second being the Masjid Nabawi (the Mosque of the Prophet ﷺ). It is from the surroundings of Baytul Maqdis that Prophet Muhammad ﷺ ascended to heaven.

**Baytul-Midrās:** (بيت المدراس) A place in Al-Madinah (and it was a Jewish centre).
Bay’atur-Ridwān: (Bī‘aḍa ar-raswān) (Pledge of Contentment) The oath and pledge taken by the Companions at Hudaibiyah in the year 6 H to fight Quraysh in case they harmed ‘Uthmān who had gone to negotiate with them and reported to have been taken captive.

Bakkah: (Bakka) Another name for Makkah. (See the Noble Qur’ān, Al-Imrān 3:96)

Balām: (Balam) Means an ox.

Balāt: (al-balāṭ) A place in Al-Madinah between the mosque and the marketplace.

Balāh: (al-balāḥ) The date once it begins to ripen.

Bālīgh: (al-balīgh) The one who has reached the age of maturity and is an adult.

Bānī Labūn: (Bani Lubn) A two-year-old male camel.

Bānī Makhād: (Bani Makhad) One-year-old male camel.

Bānū Asfar: (Bani al-Asfar) The Byzantines (the Romans).

Bānū Israel: (Bani Isrā’îl) Literally means the Children of Israel. It refers to the progeny of Prophet Ya’qub.

Al-Baqī’: (al-Baqi’) Also called Baqī’ Al-Gharqad or Jannatul-Baqī’. The cemetery of the people of Al-Madinah; many of the family members and Companions of the Prophet are buried in it.

Barakah: (al-Barakah) Literally means blessing or Divine grace.

Barid: (Barād) See Burud.

Bārakallāh: (Barak Allāh) This is an expression meaning ‘may the blessings of Allāh (be upon you)’. When a Muslim wants to thank another person, he uses different statements to express his thanks, appreciation, and gratitude. One of them is to say Bārakallāh.

Barrah: (al-Barrah) Pious.

Barzakh: (al-Barzakh) Literally means partition or barrier. In Islamic terminology, it usually means the life in the grave, because the life in the grave is the interspace between the life on earth and the life in the Hereafter. Life in the Barzakh is real, but very different from the life we know. Its exact nature is known only to Allāh. It is during our life in the Barzakh that we will be asked about Allāh, our faith and the Prophet. We will also be shown the Jannah (Paradise) and the Jahannum (Hell) there and which of these two places we will occupy after we are judged.
**Basmalah**: The recitation of *Bismillâh* (*Bismillahir-Rahmânir-Rahîm*). In the Name of Allâh, the Most Gracious, the Most Merciful. It is said before any act or activity of importance, such as reciting the Qur’ân, traveling, eating a meal, rising from sleep, etc.

**Bathâ**: See 'Abtah.

**Bâtil**: Falsehood, null and void.

**Batshah**: Grasp.

**Bawâdî**: See Bâdiyah.

**Bid’ah**: Any heresy or innovated practice introduced in the religion of Allâh which have no basis in the Qur’ân or Sunnah and to regard these new things as acts of Ibadah. The Prophet said that every Bid’ah is a deviation from the true path and every deviation leads to Hell-fire.

**Bikr**: A virgin.

**Bint Labân**: Two year old she-camel.

**Bint Makhâd**: One year old she-camel.

**Bisât**: Anything that can be spread on the ground, be a mat, a carpet or a piece of cloth.

**Bismillâhir-Rahmânir-Rahîm**: In the Name of Allâh, the Most Gracious, the Most Merciful. This is the first Verse of Sûrat Al-Fâtihah (Chapter 1) of the Noble Qur’ân. While reciting the Qur’ân, it is to be read immediately after one reads the phrase: *A’udhu Billâhi minash-Shaytânir-Rajîm* (I seek refuge in Allâh from the outcast Sa’îtan). It is also recited before doing any daily activity.

**Bi’tahah**: The beginning of the Prophet’s mission, his call to prophethood in 610 CE.

**Bit**: Mead. Intoxicating drink made from fermented honey or honeycombs, barlee sprouts and water.

**Black Muslims**: A term designating African-Americans who adhere to the teachings of the organization known as the Nation of Islam. So-called ‘Black Muslims’ are not to be confused with Muslims (followers of universal Islam) of African-American or African origin. Likewise, the Nation of Islam, a nationalistic organization, is not to be confused with the mainstream, universal world religion Islam.

**Bu’âth**: A place about two miles from Al-Madînah where a battle took place between the Ansâr tribes of Aus and Khazraj before Islam.
Budn: (البدن) (sing. Badanah) Camels to be offered as sacrifice by the pilgrims at the sanctuary of Makkah.

Buhtān: (البهتان) A false accusation, calumny, slander.

Bulūgh: (البلوغ) Puberty

Burāq: (براق) A white animal having wings, bigger than a donkey and smaller than a horse, it carried the Prophet Muhammad ﷺ from Makkah to Jerusalem and from there to heavens during his miraculous Night Journey and Ascension (Isrā' and Mi'raj) in 619 CE.

Burd or Burdah: (البرد أو البردة) A Yemeni cloth. A black squared narrow dress. Also a sheet with a woven border.

Burnus: (البرنس) (pl. Barānis) A type of hooded cloak called burnous.

Burqu': (البقرة) A covering dress worn by women.

Burud: (pl. Barid) The distance equal to sixteen Farsakh(s).

Busr: (البسر) Partially ripe dates that have begun to take on a red or yellow color.

Busrā: (بصرى) is a city in Harran in the south of Damascus in Syria.

Buthān: (بطحان) A valley in Al-Madinah.

CE: Christian Era or Common Era. It is used instead of AD in Islamic text referring to the dates before the Hijrah (migration) of the Prophet Muhammad ﷺ from Makkah to Al-Madinah.

Dabb: (الدبّ) (Mastigure) A lizard that grows to be a foot or longer. They are not the same as the gecko for which there are orders, or encouragement to kill.

Dab'u: (الدبّع) Hyena (Charkh or Lakkar Bhaggah).

AdDabūr: (الدبور) Westerly wind.

Daff: (الدف) Tambourine used in Arabia.

Daghābis: (الضغابيس) (sing. Daghabūs) Snake cucumbers.

Dahn: (الدهن) Any thick oil applied to hair.

Dā'i: (الداعي) (pl. Du‘āt) Muslim missionary involved in Da‘wah (preaching).

Dayyān: (الديان) Allāh; the One Who judges people from their deeds after calling them to account.

Dajjāl: (الدجال) (Al-Masīh Ad-Dajjāl) Antichrist, False Christ
or Pseudo Messiah, also known as the one-eyed Dajjāl. He will be from among the Jews and will appear before Qiyāmat (Resurrection). He will cause a lot of corruption in the world and will eventually be killed by Prophet ‘Eisa (Jesus).

**Damm:** (الدم) An expiation for a missed or wrongly practiced obligatory religious act, usually in the form of sacrificing an animal (term specially used regarding expiation of missed or wrongly performed acts of Hajj and ‘Umrah).

**Dansiq:** (دانتق) A coin equal to one-sixth of a dirham.

**Dārul-‘Ahd:** (دارالعهد) Country linked in a peace treaty.

**Dārul-Bawār:** (دارالبرار) The abode of perdition.

**Dārul-Fana’:** (دارالفناة) The abode which passes away (earth).

**Dārul-Ghurār:** (دارالغورور) The abode of delusion.

**Dārul-Harb:** (دار الحرب) It means Domain of War, and refers to the territory under the control of disbelievers, which is on terms of active or potential conflict with the Domain of Islam, and presumably hostile to the Muslims living in its domain.

**Dārul-Islām:** (دار الإسلام) It means Domain of Islam, and refers to the territory under the control of the believers.

**Dārul-Khilāfah:** (دارالخلافة) The seat of Imām or Khalīfah.

**Dārul-Kufr:** (دار الكفر) It means Domain of Disbelief, and refers to the territory under the control of the disbelievers.

**Dārul-Qarār:** (دارالنعيم) The blessed abode (paradise).

**Dārul-Qadā’:** (دارالقضاء) Justice House (court).

**Dārul-Qarār:** (دارالقرار) The abode that abides.

**Dārur-Salām:** (دار السلام) The abode of peace.

**Dārush-Shuhadā’:** (دارالشهداء) The Home of Martyrs.

**Da‘wah:** (الدعوة) The act of inviting others to Islam. Propagation of Islam through word and action, calling the people to follow the commandments of Allāh and His Messenger Muhammad ﷺ.

**Dāwūd:** (داوود) Prophet David, a Prophet of Allāh mentioned in the Qur’ān and the Old Testament.

**Dayn:** (الدَّين) Loan or debt.
Deen: (الذِّينَ) The meaning of the word Deen is obedience. A term commonly used to mean ‘religion’, but actually referring to the totality of Muslim beliefs and practices. Thus, ‘Islam is a Deen’ means Islam is the complete way of life.

Dhabh: (الذِّبح) Slaughtering small animals by cutting their jugular vein only at the root of the neck, in comparison Naḥr is slaughtering the camels by poking the jugular vein with a spear or sharp item.

Dhan-Nis‘ah: (ذا النِسْعة) The one with the rope. (See Ahādīth 2690 and 2691, Sunan Ibn Mājah)

Dhīt Irq: (ذات عَرق) Miqāt for the pilgrims coming from Iraq.

Dhātun-Nīqayn: (ذات النِطاقين) It literally means a woman with two belts, and refers to Asma‘, the daughter of Abu Bakr (She was named so by the Prophet ﷺ).

DhāturRiqā‘: (ذات الرِنَاع) It is name of a Ghazwah and it may be translated as ‘the one having stripes’. Muslims were suffering from an extreme poverty, they were bare-footed without shoes, when their feet blistered, they wrapped them with rags and tattered clothes. Thus this battle came to be known as DhāturRiqā‘.

Dhikh: (الذِّيخ) An animal-male hyena.

Dhikr: (الذِّكر) The Mention or Remembrance of Allāh through verbal or mental repetition of His Divine Attributes or various religious formulas such as Subhān-Allāh (Glorified is Allāh), Al-Hamdu Lillāh (praise is due to Allāh), Allāhu Akbar (Allāh is the Most Great), or the recitation of special invocations.

Dhimmi or Ahludh-Dhimmah: (الذَّمي أو أهل الذمة) A non-Muslim living under the protection of an Islamic government, and has been guaranteed protection of his rights. life, property and practice of their religion, etc. He is exempt from duties of Islam like military and Zakah but must instead pay a tax called Jīzah. Historically, Jews and Christians traditionally received this status due to their belief in One God, but others such as Zoroastrians, Buddhists and Hindus were also included. Dhimmis (protected) had full rights to practice their faith and implement their own religious laws within their communities.

Dhul-‘Arham or Dhur-Rahm: (ذو الأرحام أو ذو الرحم) Kindred of blood from mother’s side, like mother’s father (grandfather), sister’s son, son of the daughter (grandson), maternal uncle, etc.

Dhul-Farā‘id: (ذوالفرائض) Those persons whose share of inheritance is described in the Qur’ān are called Dhul-Farā‘id, and the rest are ‘Asabah
Glossary Of Islamic Terms

Dhul-Hijjah: (ذو الحجة) The twelfth month of the Islamic calendar. The month in which the great pilgrimage to Makkah takes place.


Dhul-Khalasah: (ذو الخصبة) Al-Ka‘bah Al-Yamāniyāh, a house in Yemen where idols used to be worshipped. It belonged to the tribes of Khath'am and Bujaylah.

Dhul-Qa‘dah: (ذو القعدة) The eleventh month of the Islamic calendar.

Dhul-Qarnayn: (ذو القرنين) A great ruler in the past who ruled all over the world and was a true believer. His story is mentioned in the Qur'ān (18:83).

Dhul-Qurbā: (ذو القربى) Relatives, kinsfolk.

Dhū Mahram: (ذو محرم) A male, whom a woman can never marry because of close relationship (e.g., a brother, a father, a son, a brother’s son, a sister’s son, an uncle from either side etc.). See Mahram.

Dhun-Nūn: (ذو النون) Jonah, Jonas. It is the nickname given to Prophet Yunus because of his story with the whale that swallowed him, and then threw him ashore.

Dhun-Nūrān: (ذو النورين) It means ‘Possessor of the Two Lights’. It is used to refer to ‘Uthmān bin ‘Affān (because he married two of the Prophet’s daughters.

Dhī Tuwā: (ذي طوى) A well-known well in Makkah. In the lifetime of the Prophet, Makkah was a small city and this well was outside its precincts. Now-a-days Makkah is a larger city and the well is within its boundaries.

Dībāj: (الديباج) Pure silk cloth, silk brocade.

Dīnār: (الدينار) Gold coinage; in the days of the Prophet, one dinār was having the weight of 4.4 grams of gold.

Dhirā‘: (الذراع) Cubit, any of various ancient units of length based on the length of the forearm from the elbow to the tip of the middle finger and usually equal to about 18 inches (45.7 centimeters).

Dirāyah: (الدراية) Cognizance, observation, note, remark.

Dirham: (الدرهم) A silver coin weighing 50 grains of barley with cut ends. Name of a unit of currency, usually a silver coin used in the past in several Muslim countries and still used in some of them, such as Morocco and Uni-
Diyah: (الدية) Blood money (for wounds, killing etc.), compensation paid by the killer to the relatives of the victim (in unintentional cases).

Du'ā': (الدعاء) Supplication, prayer, request, plea; invoking Allāh for whatever one desires. It is distinct from Salāt (formal worship or prayer). Personal Du'ās can be made in any language, whereas Salāt (prayer) is performed in Arabic. Muslims make Du'ās for many reasons and at various times, such as after Salat, before eating a meal, before retiring to sleep, or to commemorate an auspicious occasion such as the birth of a child.

Dubā': (الدباء) Gourd, squash and pumpkin. Also a name of a pot made from gourd in which Nabāl was used to be prepared, and used to hold alcoholic drinks. Also called Qara' or Tounmba.

Duhā: (الضحى) Forenoon (prayer). Its time begins a little after the beginning of Ishrāq, i.e., sunrise, meaning when the sun gains considerable height and lasts until before noon.

Dunyā: (الدنيا) This world or life, as opposed to the Hereafer that is the next life.

‘Eid: (العيد) An Arabic word to mean a festivity, a celebration, and a feast. Muslims celebrate two major religious celebrations known as ‘Eidul-Fitr (which takes place after Ramadān), and ‘Eidul-Adhā (which occurs at the time of the Hajj). A traditional greeting used by Muslims around the time of ‘Eid is ‘Eid Mubāarak, meaning ‘May your celebration be blessed’. A special congregational ‘Eid prayer, giving charity to the needy persons, visiting the family members and friends, wearing new clothing, specially-prepared foods and sweets, and gifts for children characterize these events.

‘Eidul-Adhā: (عيد الأضحى) Literally means ‘the Feast of the Sacrifice’. A four-day celebration from tenth to the thirteenth day of Dhul-Hijjah that completes the rites of pilgrimage. The tenth is the day of Nahr (sacrifice) and eleventh to thirteenth are the days of Tashriq. This event commemorates Prophet Ibrahim’s obedience to Allāh by being prepared to sacrifice his only son Ismā’il (Ishmael).

‘Eidul-Fitr: (عيد الفطر) Literally means ‘the Feast of breaking the Fast’. A three-day celebration after fasting the month of Ramadān as a matter of thanks and gratitude to Almighty Allāh. It takes place on the first of Shawwal, the tenth month of the Islamic calendar.

‘Eisā or ‘Isā: (عيسى) Jesus, an eminent Prophet in Islam. Muslims believe that Maryam (Mary), the mother of Jesus, was a chaste and pious woman, and that God miraculously created Jesus in her womb. After his birth, he...
began his mission as a sign to humankind and a Prophet of God, calling people to righteousness and worship of God alone. Muslims do not believe Jesus was crucified, but rather that God spared him such a fate and ascended him to Heaven.

**Fadak:** (فِدَک) Also Fidak A town near Al-Madinah.

**Fāhish:** (الفَاحش) One who talks evil.

**Fajr:** (الفجر) The dawn or early morning before sunrise, and denotes the prime time for prayer, also the name of the first obligatory Salāt (prayer) of the day to be offered at any time between the first light of dawn and just before sunrise. Sūrah 89 of the Noble Qur’ān has also this name.

**Faqīh:** (الفقه) An Islamic scholar who is an expert on Islamic jurisprudence (Fiqh), and can give an authoritative legal opinion or judgment.

**Faqīr:** (الفقير) A poor person.

**Faraq:** (الفرق) In Jāhilīyyah, the first born of a she-camel or sheep was sacrificed for their deities, or when anyone became the owner of 100 camels’ flock, or a meal given on the occasion of the birth of camels.

**Farā’id:** (الفرائض) See Farīdah.

**Faraq:** (الفرق) A bowl measuring about 16 Rais or ounces, i.e., about 10 liters or 3 3ā‘.

**Fard:** (فرض) Obligatory. In Islam it refers to those acts and things which are compulsory on a Muslim. Abandoning or abstaining from a Fard act is a major sin. To reject a Fard act amounts to Kufr (disbelief). It is also used in reference to the obligatory part of Salāt (prayers). Also obligatory share of inheritance.

**Fard ‘Ayn:** (فرض عين) An action which is obligatory on every Muslim individually.

**Fard Kifāyah:** (فرض كفاية) Collective duty (a duty on the whole community). However, if the duty has been fulfilled by a part of that community then the rest are not obliged to fulfill it, but if no one carries it out all incur a collective guilt.

**Farīdah:** (الفرضية) An enjoined duty.

**Farrūj:** (الفروج) A Qabā’ opened at the back.

**Farsakh:** (الفرسخ) (Parasang Persian unit of distance) A distance of three miles (approx.) or five and a half kilometers or (12000) twelve thousand
yards.

Fārūq: (الفاروق) It means ‘One who distinguishes the truth from falsehood.’ This name was given to ‘Umar bin Khattab.

Fasl: (الفصل) Separation. After each Sūrah separation occurs through Basmalah, the recitation of Bismillahir-Rahmānir-Rahīm.

Fāsiq: (الفسق) Transgressor, evildoer, disobedient. A person of corrupt moral character who engages in various sins. The one who commits Fisq.

Fatāt: (الفتاة) A female slave or a young lady.

Al-Fātihah: (الفتحة) Arabic word meaning ‘the Opening’, the first Sūrah (chapter) of the Noble Qur’ān.

Fatwā : (الFatwā) A legal verdict given on a religious basis. The sources on which a Fatwa is based are the Noble Qur’ān, and the Sunnah of the Prophet ﷺ.

Fawāihish: (الفواحش) All those acts whose abominable character is self-evident. In the Qur’ān all extra-marital sexual relationships, sodomy, nudity, false accusation of unchastity, are specifically reckoned as shameful deeds.

Fay’: (الق匪) War booty gained without fighting.

Fidyah: (الفدية) Compensation for a missed or wrongly practiced obligatory religious act, it is usually in the form of money, foodstuff, sacrifice of an animal or freeing of a slave (term specially used regarding the missed fasts of Ramadan or ransom for freeing slaves).

Fiqh: (الفقه) Islamic jurisprudence. The meaning of the word Fiqh is understanding, comprehension, knowledge and jurisprudence. A jurist is called a Faqīh who is an expert in matters of Islamic legal matters, he has to pass verdicts within the rules of the Islamic Law namely Shariah.

Firdaws: (الفردوس) The middle and the highest part of Paradise.

Fi Sabilillāh: (في سبيل الله) In the way of Allāh. A frequently used expression in the Qur’ān which emphasizes that good acts should be done exclusively to please Allāh. Generally the expression has been used in the Qur’ān in connection with striving or spending for charitable purposes.

Fisq: (الفسق) Transgression, immorality, evildoing, and disobedience to the Commands of Allāh.

Fitnah: (الفتنة) It means civil strife, war and riots. It also refers, firstly, to persecution, to a situation in which the believers are harassed and intimidated because of their religious convictions. Secondly, it refers to the
state of affairs wherein the object of obedience is other than the One True God.

**Fitrah:** (النْتَرَة) Natural disposition, nature. An Arabic term designating the innate, original spiritual orientation of every human being toward the Creator Allâh. Muslims believe that Allâh endowed everything in creation with a tendency toward goodness, piety and God-consciousness, and that one’s environment, upbringing and circumstances serve to enhance or obscure this tendency. It is also the charity due on every Muslim on the occasion of ‘Eidul-Fitr, on the night after Ramadân.

**Fuqahâ:** (الفقهاء) See Faqîh.

**Furqân:** (الفرقان) The criterion that enables one to distinguish between truth and falsehood. This term is attributed to Qurān.

**Ghâbah:** (الغابة) Literally means ‘forest’. A well-known place near Al-Madînah.

**Ghadā:** (الغداء) Meal taken in the beginning of the day. Breakfast or lunch.

**Ghadîr:** (الغدير) The name of a place near Makkah.

**Ghadîr Khum:** (غدير حم) A place between Makkah and Al-Madînah where the Prophet ﷺ stopped to offer the congregational prayer and prayed about ‘Ali: “Allâh, take as friends those who take him as a friend, and take as enemies those who take him as an enemy.”

**Ghayb:** (الغيب) Literally means ‘the Unseen’. In Islam it refers to all those things that are unseen by man and at the same time believing in them is essential. Examples of the Unseen are: Hell, Paradise, angels, etc. A Muslim has to believe that no one has the knowledge of the Unseen except Allâh.

**Ghayr Mahram:** (غير محترم) Refers to all those people with whom marriage is permissible. Based on this, it is also incumbent to observe veil with all Ghayr Mahrams.

**Ghayy:** (الغبي) Meaning deception. The name of a pit in Hell-fire.

**Ghamus:** (الغموس) False oath to deceive one.

**Al-Gharqad:** (الغرقَد) It is a thorny plant which is well known in the area of Palestine. Some say it to be boxthorn or matrimony vine.

**Ghâzi:** (الغازي) A Muslim soldier returning alive after participation in Jihâd.

**Ghazwah:** (غزوة) (pl. Ghazwât) A military expedition in which Prophet Muhammad ﷺ himself took part leading the army.

**Ghazwatul-Khandaq:** (غزوة الخندق) The name of a battle between the early
Muslims and the infidels in which the Muslims dug a Khandaq (trench) round Al-Madīnāh to prevent any advance by the enemies.

Glībāh: (الغيبة) Backbiting or talking evil about someone in his or her absence.

Glīlāh: (الغيلة) Intercourse with a breast-feeding woman.

Glīrāh: (الغيرة) This word covers a wide meaning, jealousy as regards women, and also it is a feeling of great fury and anger when one’s honor and prestige is injured or challenged.

Glūlūl: (الغلول) Stealing from the war booty before its distribution. It refers to withholding goods captured among the spoils of war, and the meaning includes deceitfully taking what one has no right to.

Glūrāf: (الغرف) Special abodes.

Glūrrah: (الغررة) A slave or slave woman.

Glūrratūsh-Shahr: (غررة الشهر) The first three days of the month.

Al-Glūrrul-Mухājjalūn: (الغر المحجلون) A name that will be given on the Day of Resurrection to the Muslims because the parts of their bodies which they used to wash in ablution will shine then.

Glūsl: (الغسل) Literally means bath or wash. In Islam it refers to the washing of the entire body from head to toe without leaving a single place dry. This is especially necessary for one who is Junub (in an impure state after sexual intercourse, menstruation, seminal discharge, etc.) and also on other occasions like before Friday and ‘Eid prayers.

Habalul-Habal: (حمل الحيلة) See Bay’ Habalil-Habalalh.

Al-Habwah or Al-Ihtībā’: (الحِبَوة أو الاحتباء) A sitting posture, putting the arms around the legs while sitting on the hips. It is to sit with one’s thighs gathered up against the stomach, while wrapping arms or garment around them, or sitting in the same manner when the private area becomes exposed.

Hadath: (الحدث) That which invalidates the state of purification.

Hadath Akbar: (الحدث الأكبر) State of major impurity caused by sexual discharge, it needs Ghusl (bath) for purification.

Hadath Asghar: (الحدث الأصغر) State of minor impurity caused by passing wind or urine or answering the call of nature, it needs Wudū’ (ablution) for purification.

Hadd: (الحد) Prescribed punishments, ordained punishments, legal laws for punishments.
**Hady**: A cow, sheep, goat or a camel that is offered as a sacrifice by a pilgrim during the Hajj.

**Hadith**: (الحديث) The word Hadith literally means speech, narration or communication. In Islamic context it refers to any of the sayings, deeds and approvals accurately narrated from the Prophet Muhammad ﷺ through a chain of known intermediaries. According to some scholars, the word Hadith also covers reports about the sayings and deeds, etc., of the Companions of the Prophet ﷺ that were performed in the presence of the Prophet ﷺ. There is also a subcategory of oral statements made by the Companions of the Prophet ﷺ in addition to the Prophet himself. *Khabar* (الخبر) (report), *'Athar* (الأثر) (track, trace, sign, impression, tradition) and Sunnah (السنن) (practice, usage, etc) are the terms also to denote a Hadith. The word Hadith is generally translated as a Narration or Tradition. The main text of a Hadith is called *Mintaq* (المتن) (main text), which is preceded by *Sanad* (السند) (chain of narrators).

**Hadith Nabawi**: (الحديث النبويّة) (Prophetic Tradition) A saying of the Prophet ﷺ himself transmitted outside the Noble Qur’an.

**Hadith Qudsi**: (الحديث القدسي) (Sacred Tradition) A Statement of Allāh, generally outside the Noble Qur’an, reported by the Prophet ﷺ in his sayings. The meaning of these Hadith were revealed to him and he put them in his own words, unlike the Qur’an that is the Word of Almighty Allāh, and the Prophet ﷺ conveyed it exactly as it was revealed to him. The scholars of Hadith say that Ahādīth Qudsiyyah are from Allāh only as far as the meaning of the text is concerned and they are from the Prophet of Allāh as to the actual wordings of these messages. It would be erroneous to attribute any of the Qudsi Hadith to Allāh and claim, for example, “Allāh said...”

**The basic kinds of Ahādīth are:**

- **Qawli** (القولي) (Verbal): It records the utterances of the Prophet ﷺ.
- **Fi'iL** (الفعلي) (Practical): It records the deeds of the Prophet ﷺ.
- **Taqriri** (التحرري) (Tacit): It records the Prophet’s silent approval of some action, behavior, etc.
- **Shamā'il** (الشمائل) (physical characteristics): It records the physical
characteristics, appearance, habits or behavior of the Prophet ﷺ.

Below is the list of common classifications used by scholars to identify the various categories of the compiled narrations:

- **Āḥād**: (الآثار) (Isolated)
- **ʿAzīz**: (العزيز) (Precious)
- **Bāṭil**: (الباطل) (False)
- **Daʿāf**: (الضعيف) (Weak)
- **Gharīb**: (الغريب) (Unfamiliar)
- **Hasan**: (الحسن) (Good)
- **Jayyid**: (الجيد) (Perfect)
- **Majhūl**: (المجهول) (Unknown)
- **Maʿlūl**: (المعول) (Defective)
- **Mansūkh**: (المسموع) (Abrogated)
- **Maqībūl**: (المقبول) (Acceptable)
- **Maqṭūʿ**: (المقطوع) (Intersected)
- **Mardūd**: (المردود) (Rejected)
- **Marfūʿ** (Traceable) (المرفوع)
- **Mash-hūr**: (المشوه) (Well-known)
- **Matrūk**: (المتروك) (Abandoned)
- **Mawdūʿ**: (الموضوع) (Fabricated)
- **Mawgūf**: (الموقوع) (Discontinued)
- **Mawsūl**: (الموصول) (Complete)
- **Mawthūq**: (الموثوق) (Trustworthy)
- **Muʿallaq**: (المعلق) (Suspended)
- **Munqatīʿ**: (المقطع) (Interrupted)
- **Musalsal**: (المسلسل) (Uninterrupted)
- **Musnad**: (المستند) (Traceable to Prophet)
- **Mutawātir**: (المتواتر) (Continuous)
- **Mudaʿaf**: (المضعف) (Doubtful)
Glossary Of Islamic Terms

**Mudallas** (المداليس) (Truncated)

**Mudraj** (المدرج) (Interpolated)

**Mudtarib** (المضطرب) (Confounding)

**Munfarid** (المنفرد) (Unique)

**Munkar** (المنكر) (Denounced)

**Mursal** (المرسل) (Disconnected)

**Muttasil** (المتصل) (Connected)

**Muttafaq ‘Alayh** (المتفق عليه) (Agreed upon)

**Qawi** (القوي) (Strong)

**Sahih** (الصحيح) (Sound)

**Shādh** (الشاذ) (Contradictory)

**Thābit** (التثبت) (Authentic)

**Thiqah** (الثقة) (Trustworthy)

**Hāfiz** (الحافظ) One who has memorized the entirety of the Qur’an. Thousands of Muslim men and women throughout the world dedicate their time and energy to this tradition, which serves to maintain the Qur’anic Scripture as it was revealed to Prophet Muhammad صل الله عليه وسلم over 1,400 years ago.

**Hayd** (الحيض) Monthly periods or menstruation experienced by a woman.

**Hays** (الحس) A dish made of butter, dates and cheese.

**Hajafah** (الجحيفة) A kind of shield.

**Hajar** (هاجر) (Hagar/Agar/Hajira) One of İbrahim’s wives who, along with her infant son İsmail (Ishmael), was settled in Arabia by Prophet İbrahim (Abraham) صل الله عليه وسلم. She may be considered the founder of the city of Makkah, since it was a desolate valley prior to her arrival, and discovery of the sacred well known as Zamzam.

**Hajar** (هجير) Places in Bahrain, Jazan, Najran.

**Al-Hajarul-Aswad** (الحجر الأسود) (The Black Stone) A stone which is said to have fallen from heavens, set into one corner of the Ka’bah in Makkah by Prophet Ibrahim. The pilgrims kiss it following the practice of Prophet Muhammad صل الله عليه وسلم.

**Hājj** (الحج) A person who has performed the Hajj, or pilgrimage to Makkah.
**Hajj**: (الحج) (Major Pilgrimage) The Hajj is performed annually by over 20,000,000 people during Dhul-Hijjah, the twelfth month of the Islamic lunar calendar. It is one of the five pillars of Islam, a duty Muslims must perform at least once in their lives, provided their health permits and they are financially capable. There are rules and regulations and specific dress to be followed. The Hajj rites symbolically remind the trials and sacrifices of Prophet Ibrāhīm, his wife Hajar, and their son Ismā‘īl over 4,000 years ago. In addition to Tawāf and Sa‘y, there are a few other requirements but especially one’s standing (i.e., stay) at ‘Arafāt during the daytime on ninth of Dhul-Hijjah, and the sacrifice of an animal. There are three types of Hajj: Ifrād (الإفراد single), Qirān (القرآن combined), Tamattu‘ (التمتع interrupted).

**Hajj Akbar**: (الحج الأكبر) The day of Nahr (i.e., the 10th of Dhul-Hijjah).

**Hajj Asghar**: (الحج الأصغر) The minor pilgrimage (‘Umrah).

**Hajjul-Bayt**: (الحج البيت) Making a pilgrimage to the House of Allāh.

**Hajj Ifrād**: (الإفراد) (Single Hajj) Performing Hajj without performing the ‘Umrah. It is generally for the inhabitants of Makkah.

**Hajj Mabrūr**: (المرور) A Hajj that is free of sin and is accepted by Allāh because of its perfection in both inward intention and outward observation of the Sunnah of the Prophet Muhammad ﷺ and with legally earned money.

**Hajj Qirān**: (القرآن) (Combined Hajj) Performing the ‘Umrah followed by the Hajj, without taking off the Ihram in between.

**Hajj Tamattu‘**: (التمتع) (Interrupted Hajj) ‘Umrah is followed by Hajj, but the Ihram is taken off in between these two stages.

**Hajjatul-Wadā’**: (الوداع) The last Hajj of the Prophet ﷺ, the year before he died.

**Hajjām**: (الحجامة) One who performs cupping.

**Hajr**: (حجر) A place in the way to Basrah & Kufah from Yamāmah where the vessels were made, also the place of Banu Sulaim.

**Halāl**: (الحلال) That which is lawful or permissible in Islam.

**Halālah**: (الحلالة) To marry a divorced woman temporarily with the intention of making her remarriage to her former husband lawful. This act is unlawful. Marriage based on intended divorce is unlawful, whether its period is prescribed or not.

**Halif**: (الحليف) A person who enjoys the protection of a tribe but does not
belong to it by blood.

_Halq_ (الحلاق): To shave off the hair from the head (during _Hajj_).

_Halqah_: (الحلة): A group of students involved in the study of Islam.

_Hām_: (الحم): A stallion camel freed from work for the sake of idols, after it had finished a number of copulations assigned for it.

_Hāmah_: (الهامة): There are different meanings of this pre-Islamic belief: It is a worm that comes out of a murdered person’s head seeking vengeance; it refers to the owl that was considered a bad omen if seen in different circumstances; or it was a bird that came from the bones of a dead person that would fly away.

_Hanafi_: (حنفي): Islamic school of law founded by Imām Abū Hanīfah. Followers of this school are known as the Hanafis.

_Hantāh_: (عنتاه): An expression used when you don’t want to call somebody by her name. (It is used for calling a female).

_Hanbali_: (حنبلي): Islamic school of law founded by Imām Ahmad bin Hanbal. Followers of this school are known as the Hanbalis.

_Hanīf_: (الحنيف): People who during the time of _Jahiliyyah_ (Ignorance) rejected the idolatry in their society and were in search for the true religion of Prophet Ibrahim (Abraham) ☉. Hanīf literally means ‘one who is inclined’, it is used in the Qur’ān at ten places. The term as such connotes sincerity, uprightness and single-mindedness in one’s inclination, dedication and commitment to Allāh or to His faith, that is, monotheism (worshipping Allāh Alone and nothing else).

_Hunafā’_: (الحنفاء): The Makkans claimed descent from Abraham through Ishmael, and tradition stated that their temple, the Ka‘bah, had been built by Abraham for the worship of the One God. It was still called the House of Allāh, but the chief objects of worship there were a number of idols which were called daughters of Allāh and intercessors. The few who felt disgust at this idolatry, which had prevailed for centuries, longed for the religion of Abraham and tried to find out what had been its teaching. Such seekers of the truth were known as _Hunafā’_ (sing. _Hanīf_), a word originally meaning ‘those who turn away’ (from the existing idol-worship), but coming in the end to have the sense of ‘upright’ or ‘by nature upright,’ because such persons held the way of truth to be right conduct. These _Hunafā’_ did not form a community. They were the agnostics of their day, each seeking truth by the light of his own inner consciousness. Muhammad son of ‘Abdullāh became one of these.
Hantam or Hantamah: (الحجَّم أو الحَجَّتْمَة) A name of a pot in which alcoholic drinks used to be prepared, it was an earthenware container. Also called Jarrah.

Hanūt: (الحَنوط) A kind of scent used for embalming the dead.

Haqq: (الحق) The Truth, also used for the legal right or claim to something.

Haram: (الحرَّم) Al-Haram is a sanctuary, a sacred territory. Makkah has been considered a Haram since the time of Prophet Ibrāhîm (Abraham) ﷺ. All things within the limit of the Haram are protected and considered inviolable. Al-Madinah was also declared a Haram by the Prophet ﷺ. Although the boundary of any Masjid (mosque) is also a sanctuary, but usually this term is used with regard to the Sacred Mosque (Masjid Harâm) in Makkah and the Prophet’s Mosque (Masjid Nabawî) in Al-Madinah. This is why they are referred to as ‘Al-Haramayn Ash-Sharîfayn’, the two Holy Mosques. (Al-Hill is the area outside the sacred precincts of Makkah.)

Harâm: (الحرَّم) Unlawful, forbidden and punishable from the viewpoint of Islam.

Harawra’: (الحرُوارِي) A town in Iraq.

Harbah: (الحَربة) A small spear.

Harbî: (الحَربي) Who is in the state of war.

Harîr: (الحَريْر) Silk.

Harj: (الهَرج) Killing.

Harrah: (الحَرْة) A well-known rocky volcanic region in and around Al-Madinah covered with black stones.

Hārūn: (هارون) The brother of Prophet Mūsa (Moses) ﷺ and a Prophet of Allāh.

Al-Harūriyyah: (الحرُوريَة) A special unorthodox religious sect of Khawārij. Nicknamed as such because they were stationed at the place known as Harūrâ’.

Al-Hasba’: (الحصباء) A place outside Makkah where pilgrims go after finishing all the ceremonies of Hajj on twelfth of Dhul-Hijjah.

Hasanah: (الحسنَة) (pl. Hasanât) It means merit, virtue, reward, good deed, good point. The merit or reward recorded for one on doing a good thing or abstaining from something wrong or bad. It is the opposite of Sayyi’îh السِّيْئة (demerit, sin, bad deed).

Al-Hashr: (الحشر) Another name for the Day of Judgment, Yawmul-Hashr
Day of the Gathering). Place or vast ground or Field of Gathering. It is also the name of Sūrah 59 of the Noble Qur'ān.

Hasir: A mat that is made of leaves of date-palms and is fit for one man or more to stand up and pray upon. It may be used for other purposes also.

Hawd Kawthar: The watering-place (Cistern/Basin/Tank/Fountain/River) of Prophet Muhammad ﷺ, whose pure drink will refresh the believers on the Day of Judgment.

Hawālah: The transference of a debt from one person to another. It is an agreement whereby a debtor is released from a debt by another becoming responsible for it.

Hawari: Sincere supporter or disciple.

Hawāzin: A tribe of Quraysh.

Hāwiyyah: The lowest pit of Hell.

Hawl: The minimum period of time after which Zakāt becomes due upon property.

Hawwa: Eve, the wife of Adam. The Qur'ān indicates that Hawwa was created as an equal mate for Adam, and that both Adam and Hawwa sinned equally when they disobeyed Allāh by eating fruit from the forbidden tree in the heaven. Upon turning to Allāh in repentance, both were likewise equally forgiven.

Hayā': This term covers a large number of concepts. It may mean modesty, self-respect, bashfulness, honor, etc. Hayā' is of two kinds: good and bad; the good Hayā' is to be ashamed to commit a crime or a thing that Allāh and His Messenger ﷺ has forbidden, and bad Hayā' is to be ashamed to do a thing, which Allāh and His Messenger ﷺ ordered to do.

Henna: A kind of plant used for dyeing hair etc.

Hibah: present, gift.

Hibarah: A sheet from Yemen with colored stripes of red or green. Some say it is of green color.

Al-Hidānah: The nursing and caretaking of children.

Hīfz: It means to memorize. In the religious sense, Muslims try to memorize the whole Qur'ān. Any person who achieves this task is called Hāfiz. There are millions of Muslims who memorize the whole Qur'ān.

Hijāb: Veil, partition, curtain, covering the body. Screening
between non-Mahram men and women. Any kind of veil, it could be a curtain or a facial veil, etc. A long dress prescribed for Muslim women to cover their whole body from head to feet.

**Hijāz**: The region along the western seaboard of Arabia, in which Makkah, Al-Madīnah, Jeddah, and Ta’īf are situated.

**Hijr**: The place of Thamūd before Tabūk between Al-Madīnah and Shām. Also the unroofed portion of the Ka‘bah called Hatīm, which at present is in the form of a compound towards the north of it.

**Hijrah**: It signifies migration from a land where a Muslim is unable to live according to the precepts of his faith to a land where it is possible to do so. Hijrah can also mean to leave a bad way of life for a good or more righteous way. The Hijrah par excellence for Muslims is the Hijrah of the Prophet ﷺ that not only provided him and his followers refuge from persecution, but also an opportunity to build a society and state according to the ideals of Islam.

**Hijrī**: Name of the Islamic lunar calendar. It refers to the Prophet’s migration from Makkah, because of the mounting hostility, there to Yathrib (200 miles north) whose people had invited him. This journey took place in the twelfth year of his mission. He arrived on the 20th of September 622 CE, and the city proudly changed its name to Madīnatun-Nabī (the Prophet’s city), commonly known as Al-Madīnah. This is the beginning of the Islamic lunar calendar, often called the Hijrī calendar, it is dated from this important event, which marks the beginning of an Islamic state (in Al-Madīnah) in which the Sharī’ah (Islamic law) was implemented. The months of the Islamic calendar are: Muharram, Safar, Rabī’ul-Awwal, Rabī’uth-Thani, Jumād-al-Ūlā, Jumādath-Thāniyah, Rajab, Sha‘bān, Ramadān, Shawwāl, Dhul-Qa‘dah, Dhul-Hijjah.

**Hilāb**: A kind of scent.

**Al-Hil**: The area outside the sacred precincts of Makkah.

**Himā**: A private pasture.

**Hims**: A city in Shām (Syria, Lebanon, Palestine, Israel and Jordan) now it is in Syria.

**Himyān**: A kind of belt, part of which serves as a purse to keep money in it.

**Hiqqah**: A three-year-old she-camel.

**Hirā’**: The cave in a mountain named Jabalan-Nūr on the outskirts of Makkah where Muhammad ﷺ, at the age of forty, received the first
revelations of the Qur'ān, beginning with the word Iqra' that means ‘read’. The cave was a favorite place of retreat for Muhammad ﷺ prior to his call to prophethood, where he could contemplate alone and seek Allah free from the distractions of the city below.

**Hubal**: (هبل) Hubal, the chief of the minor deities, was an image of a man, and was said to have been originally brought to Arabia from Syria. It was one of the so many false gods of Arabs housed in the Ka'bah in the pre-Islamic period of Ignorance.

**Hublā**: (الحبل) A kind of desert tree.

**Hudā’**: (الهداء) Chanting of camel-drivers keeping pace of camel’s walk.

**Al-Hudaybiyah**: (الحدبيه) A well-known place ten miles (16 kms) from Makkah on the way to Jeddah.

**Hudūd**: (الحدود) (sing. Hadd) Allah’s set boundary limits for Halāl (lawful) and Harām (unlawful). Whoever transgresses these limits may be punished or forgiven by Allah as He wills. Legal punishment for certain crimes like robbery (to cut the hands), adultery or fornication (stoning or lashes and exile for one year), apostasy (killing), etc.

**Hujjāj**: (الحجاج) Pilgrims. Persons who have been on the pilgrimage to Makkah during the Hajj season in the month of Dhul-Hijjah. (Singular: Hājj = الحاج a male pilgrim; Hājjah = الحاجة a female pilgrim)

**Hujrah**: (الحجرة) Courtyard of a dwelling place, or a room.

**Hukm**: (الحكم) Literally meaning verdict, judgment, decision (see Verse 6:57), sometimes gives the meaning of wisdom, discretion, knowledge and the power to see things in their true perspective (Verse 26:83).

**Hukmiyyah**: (الحكمية) One of the Khawārij sects. So named because they had rejected the verdict of the arbitrators appointed by ‘Ali and Mu‘awiyah under the plea that judgment rests only with Allah.

**Hullah**: (الحلمة) A Najrāni garment or shroud or coffin consisting of two parts, two-piece garment, lower wrap and upper wrap. Two pieces of a garment made of the same material.

**Humaz**: (الهمز) Madness or evil suggestions.

**Hums**: (حمس) The tribe of Quraysh, their offspring and their allies were called Hums. Those who were either lived in Harām or born there or were in the area of Harām or were from the tribes of Kinānah and Jādilah. This word implies enthusiasm and strictness. The Hums used to say: “We are the people of Allah.” They thought themselves superior to other people.
**Hunayn:** (الحنين) A valley between Makkah and Tâ’īf where the battle took place between the Prophet ﷺ and Quraysh pagans.

**Huqīq:** (الحقوق) (sing. Haq) Rights.

**Hūr:** (الحوور) (Houris) Very fair females of Paradise wide-eyed with intense black irises and intense white scleras created by Allâh as such not from the offspring of Adam. (Hūr’in-wide-eyed houris)

**Hūr’īn:** (حوور عين) Wide-eyed houris.

**Ibadah:** (العبادة) (literally means worship, it refers to all those acts with which one renders worship and adoration, obedience and submission, service and subjection to Allâh (. Thus in Islam, visiting the sick, giving charity, hugging one’s spouse, or any other good act is considered an act of worship.

**Iblîs:** (إبليس) The word literally means ‘thoroughly disappointed, one in utter despair’. It is the personal name of Shaytān (Satan) or the cursed devil, as found in the Qur’ān. Iblîs is believed to be a prominent member of the jinn, a class of Allâh’s creation. When Adam (the first human) was created, Allâh commanded Iblîs and all the other angels to prostrate themselves before Adam. He rebelled against Allâh out of vanity and refused the Command of Allâh to prostrate before Adam, and was cast out from heavens. Iblîs reasoned to himself that he was superior to Adam since he was made of fire while Adam was only made of clay. By this one act of defiance, Iblîs introduced the sins of pride, envy, and disobedience into the world. Hence, Allâh told him that he will dwell in Hell. Iblîs asked Allâh for a postponement until the Hereafter. He also asked Allâh to allow him to mislead and tempt humankind to error. This term was granted to him by Allâh whereafter he became the chief promoter of evil and prompted Adam and Eve to disobey Allâh’s order. Allâh told him that only the misguided ones would follow him and that He would fill Hell with him and his followers. Iblîs swore that he would mislead and misguide all the people except those sincere and devoted worshippers of Allâh. Allâh warns human beings repeatedly in the Qur’ān that Iblîs is an avowed enemy of humankind, whose temptations must be resisted in order to stay on the Straight Path. He is possessed of a specific personality and is not just an abstract force.

**Ibn:** (ابن) (also used as bin) Arabic term meaning ‘son of’. Many famous Muslim men in history are known by a shortened version of their names beginning with Ibn. Examples include, Ibn Khaldûn (a historian), Ibn Sina (a physician), Ibn Rushd (a judge and philosopher), and Ibn Batūtah (a world traveler).

**Ibn Hajar:** (ابن حجر) Allamah Hâfiz Ahmad bin Hajar ‘Asqalâńi.
**Ibn Labūn:** Two year old camel.

**Ibrāhīm:** Abraham, a Prophet and righteous person revered by Muslims, Jews, and Christians alike as the patriarch (father-figure) of monotheism. Muslims commemorate Ibrāhīm’s devotion, struggles and sacrifices during the annual Hajj rites.

**ʿIddah:** The waiting period prescribed by Allāh that a woman is required to observe as a consequence of the nullification of her marriage with her husband or because of the husband’s death, during which a woman may not remarry after being widowed or divorced.

**Idhkhir:** A kind of grass well-known for its good smell, and is found in Hijaz, Saudi Arabia.

**Idtibā':** In Ihram, putting the upper wrap (Ridā’) under the right armpit leaving the right shoulder bare, and placing part of it over the left shoulder.

**Ifādah:** See Tawāful-Ifādah.

**Iftār:** Breaking of the fast immediately after sunset at Maghrib as soon as the Call to Prayer (Adhān) is called.

**Ihdād:** Mourning for a deceased husband.

**Ihlāl:** Raising the voice while reciting the Talbiyah during Hajj or ʿUmrah.

**Ihrām:** The state of consecration into which Muslims enter in order to perform the Hajj or ʿUmrah (lesser pilgrimage). In which one is prohibited to practice certain deeds that are lawful at other times. The ceremonies of ʿUmrah and Hajj are performed during such state. When one assumes this state, the first thing one should do is to express mentally and orally one’s intention to assume this state for the purpose of performing Hajj or ʿUmrah. Then Talbiyah — pilgrimage recitation (Labbayk Allāhumma Labbayk... Here I am, O Allāh, here I am) is recited, and two sheets of white unstitched seamless cloth are the only clothes men wear; the sheet wrapped below one’s waist is called Izār, and the other wrapped round the upper part of the body is Ridā’. This dress worn by pilgrims serves to reinforce a sense of humility, purity, and human equality. In the state of Iḥrām the pilgrim is required to observe many prohibitions, for example, he may not hunt, shave or trim his hair, shed blood, use perfume, or indulge in sexual gratification.

**Ihšān:** Right action, goodness, sincerity. Doing something in a goodly manner. The highest level of deeds and worship with perfection, i.e., when you worship Allāh or do deeds, consider yourself as if you see Him;
and if you cannot achieve this feeling or attitude, then you must bear in mind that He sees you. In other words, Ihsān means to be patient in performing your duties to Allāh, totally for Allāh’s sake and in accordance with the Sunnah (legal ways) of the Prophet ﷺ in a perfect manner.

**Iḥtīkār**: (الأحتكار) It means a planned hoarding of something for future profit. Iḥtīkār is prohibited and unlawful as it creates artificial scarcity of essential foodstuff.

**Al-Iḥtiyāḥ**: (الاحتياج) See Al-Habwah.

**Ibn Makhād**: (ابن مخاض) One-year-old camel.

**Ijārah**: (الإيجار) Literally means to give something on rent.

**Ijmāʿ**: (الجماع) Consensus of opinion among scholars and leaders. It is one of the means employed by Muslims for joint decision-making, and for interpreting the Sharīʿah. Ijmāʿ comes next to the Qur’ān and the Sunnah as a source of Islamic doctrines.

**Ijtihād**: (الاجتهاد) Independent interpretive or discretionary reasoning. The intellectual effort of Muslim scholars to employ reason and analysis of the authoritative sources Qur’ān and Sunnah for the purpose of finding legal solutions to new and challenging situations or issues. It is also said to exercise personal judgment based on the Qur’ān and the Sunnah.

**Ilāʾ or Iylāʾ**: (الإيلاء) A husband’s oath to abstain from sexual relations with his wife. The maximum permissible limit for abstaining from sexual relations in wedlock under such a vow is four months, after which it would automatically mean repudiation of the marriage.

**Ilhām**: (الإلهام) Literally means inspiration. Here it refers to those things or ideas that Allāh puts into the minds of His pious servants.

**Ilīyāʾ**: (إليؤ) Eilat seaport near Israel at the head of Gulf ‘Aqabah.

**‘Iltm**: (العلم) Arabic term meaning knowledge. The Qur’ān and Hadith encourage Muslims to constantly strive to increase their knowledge, of both religious and worldly matters.

**‘Ilm Jafar**: (علم الجفر) The science of numerical symbolism of letters. It is said to come down from ‘Ali bin Abu Tālib. Some say it to be Numology, Number manipulation, and some name it to be the art of ciphering or deciphering.

**İmām**: (الإمام) Generally, the term İmām refers to one who leads congregational worship. More broadly, the term also applies to religious leaders within the Muslim community, it is also used with reference to the foun-
ders of the different systems of theology and law in Islam, and in its highest form, refers to the head of the Islamic state.

**Imāmah:** (العامة) The turban or similar head covering.

**Imām Mahdī:** (الإمام مهدى) He will make his appearance when the Muslims will be at their weakest position. With his advent, the greater signs of Qiyāmah (Resurrection) will commence. He will be the leader of the Muslims, and after his death, Prophet 'Eisa (Jesus) ﷺ will take over the leadership.

**Imān:** (الإيمان) Literally means faith or belief. Here it refers to believing in Allāh (as the One and only God and believing that Muhammad ﷺ is His Messenger, and also having belief in other articles of faith.

**Imlās:** (الإمساك) An abortion caused by being beaten over one's (a pregnant wife's) abdomen.

**Imsāk:** (الإمساك) To abstain completely from foods, drinks, intimate intercourses and smoking, before the break of the dawn till sunset.

**Inbijāniyāh:** (إلبجانية) A woolen garment without marks.

**Injīl:** (الإنجيل) Arabic name for the Holy Scripture revealed to Prophet 'Eisa (Jesus) ﷺ during the last two or three years of his earthly life. The Injīl mentioned by the Qur’ān should, however, not be identified by the four Gospels of the New Testament that contain a great deal of records of the life of Jesus written by his closest contemporaries in addition to the inspired statements of Prophet Jesus ﷺ. It is significant, however, that the statements explicitly attributed to Jesus ﷺ in the Gospels contain substantively the same teachings as those of the Qur’ān.

**Innā Lillāhi wa Innā Ilayhi Rāji‘ūn:** (إنا لله وإنا إليه راجعون) When a Muslim is struck with a calamity, when he loses one of his loved ones, or when he has gone bankrupt, he should be patient and say this statement meaning ‘We are from Allāh and to Him we return’. Muslims believe that Allāh is the One Who gives and it is He Who takes away. He is testing us sometimes by giving something and sometimes by taking away. Hence, a Muslim submits himself to Allāh. He is grateful and thankful to Allāh for whatever he gets. On the other hand, he is patient and says this expression in times of turmoil and calamity.

**In-shā’-Allāh:** (إني شاء الله) The meaning of this Arabic phrase is ‘If Allāh wills’. When a person wishes to plan for the future, when he promises, when he makes resolutions, and when he makes a pledge, he says this phrase. Muslims are to strive hard and to put their trusts with Allāh. They leave the results in the Hands of Allāh.
**Intiqās** (الانتقاص) Sprinkling water on private parts while performing *Wudū*.

**‘Iqāl** (العقل) The rope by which the camel’s foreleg is fettered.

**Iqāmah** (الإقامة) It refers to the second call for the prayer that follows the first call (*Adhān*). *Iqāmah* means that the obligatory prayer in congregation is just to begin. It is to be recited in Arabic before every obligatory prayer. It is composed of specific words and phrases very closely related to the *Adhān*. The statements of the *Adhān* are recited reduced so that the statements that are expressed twice in the *Adhān* are recited once in *Iqāmah* except the last utterance of *Allāhu-Akbar*. The prayer is offered immediately after *Iqāmah* has been pronounced.

**Iqāmatus-Salāt** (إقامۃ الصلاة) The offering of the prayers perfectly. This is not understood by many Muslims. It means: (A) Each and every Muslim, male or female, is obliged to offer his prayers regularly five times a day at the specified times; the male in the mosque in congregation and the female at home. As the Prophet ﷺ has said: “Order your children for prayer at the age of seven and beat them (about it) at the age of ten.” The chief (of a family, town, tribe, etc.) and the Muslim ruler of a country are held responsible before Allāh in case of non-fulfillment of this obligation by the Muslims under his authority. (B) To offer the prayers in a way just as the Prophet Muhammad ﷺ offered it with all its rules and regulations, as he ﷺ said: “Offer your prayers the way you see me offering them.” Please see *Sahīh Al-Bukhārī*, Vol. 1 for the Prophet’s way of praying, in the book of characteristics of the prayer and that the prayer (*Salāt*) begins with *Takbīr* (*Allāhu-Akbar*) with the recitation of *Sūrat Al-Fātiḥah* etc., along with its various postures, standing, bowing, prostrations, sitting etc., and it ends with *Tasliḥ*.

**Iqra’** (القراء) It means ‘read’ or ‘recite,’ it was the first word of the Qur’ān revealed to Muhammad ﷺ during one of his retreats to the cave of Hirā’ above Makkah. Muslims refer to this word to remind themselves of the importance of acquiring knowledge, ‘from the cradle to the grave’ as Prophet Muhammad ﷺ said.

**Irfaḥ** (الإرفاع) To comb the hair everyday.

**Isbāghul-Wudū’** (إسحاغ الوضوء) To perform ablution properly. It means either covering all required areas completely or washing them three times. (Likewise, *Ahsanal-Wudū’* means performing ablution well, and *Atammal-Wudū’* means performing ablution perfectly.)

**Iṣbāl** (الإسبال) Making one’s lower garment too long below the heels.

**‘Iṣhā’** (العشاء) It is the commencement of darkness, and the beginning of the time of ‘Isha’ (night) prayer. The time for it starts about one hour and a half
after sunset, till the middle of night.

**Ishār:** (الإشارا) Marking the *Budn*. This was done by grazing the skin of the camel’s hump until some blood appeared, and then wiping that blood in such a way as to leave a mark. This mark then indicated that the camel was set aside for sacrifice.

**Ishrāq:** (الإشراق) Sunrise.

**Ishtimalus-Sammā:** (استعمال الصماء) The wearing of clothes in the following two ways: 1. To cover one shoulder with a garment and leave the other bare. 2. To wrap oneself (with hands enclosed) in a garment while sitting in such a way that nothing of that garment would cover one’s private parts. (See Ihtibā’)

**Ishtirāk:** (الاشتراك) Equivocally; participation; partnership. While *Istidānah* means the raising or building up credit through credit purchases. It however does not apply to the raising of cash loans.

**Islam:** (الإسلام) Its meaning encompasses the concepts of peace, greeting, salutation, surrender, obedience, loyalty, allegiance and commitment. Literally means ‘submission to the will of Allāh,’ and refers commonly to an individual’s surrender and commitment to God the Creator through adherence to the religion by the same name. The most important and pivotal concept in Islam is the Oneness of God. See Allāh for more on the concept of God. Islam teaches that all faiths have, in essence, one common message: the existence of a Supreme Self, the one and only God, whose sovereignty is to be acknowledged in worship and in the pledge to obey His teachings and commandments, conveyed through His Messengers and Prophets who were sent at various times and in many places throughout history. Islam demands a commitment to submit and surrender to God so that one could live in peace; peace (*Salām*) is achieved through active obedience to the revealed commandments of God, for God is the Source of all peace. Commitment to Islam entails striving for peace through a struggle for justice, equality of opportunity, mutual caring and consideration for others’ rights, and continuous research and acquisition of knowledge for the better protection and utilization of the resources of the universe.

The basic beliefs of Islam are: the Oneness of the only God who is Sovereign of the universe; the Revelation of the teaching and commandments of God through angels in heaven to Prophets on earth, and written in sacred writings that all have the same transcendent source; these contain the will of God marking the way of peace for the whole universe and all mankind; the Day of Judgment which inaugurates the Afterlife in which God rewards and punishes with respect to human obedience to His will.
Islam is the last and final religion to all mankind and to all generations irrespective of color, race, nationality, ethnic background, language, or social position. Islam teaches that human diversity is a sign of the richness of God's mercy, and that God wills human beings to compete with each other in goodness in order to test who is the finest in action; this is, according to Islam, the reason for the creation of the universe.

Islam was revealed to the Prophet ﷺ (Sûrah 3 Al-‘Imrân–The Family of Imrân, Verse 19) "Truly, the religion with Allâh is Islam," and again (Sûrah 5: Al-Mâ’idah–The Table Spread, Verse 3) "This day I have perfected your religion for you, and have chosen for you Islam as your religion." A person who enters the fold of Islam is called a Muslim. The religion of Islam is not to be confused with Mohammedanism. The latter is a misnomer to Islam. Muslims do not accept this name as it gives wrong information about Islam and Muslims.

Ismâ’îl: (إسماعيل) The elder son of Abraham, Prophet of Allâh and the father of the Arabs, born to his wife Hajar. When he was about thirteen years old, Ismâ’îl helped Abraham build the Ka’bah as a place for monotheists to worship the One God. He, along with his younger brother Ishâq (Isaac), are considered by Muslims to have been Prophets in their own right.

Isnâd: (السنن) The chain of narrators of a Prophetic Hadîth.

Isrâ’: (الاسرة) Another name for Sûrah Banî Israel (17) of the Noble Qur’ân.

Isrâ’ wa Mi’râj: (الاسرة والمعراج) The miraculous ‘Night Journey’ and ‘Ascension’ of Prophet Muhammad ﷺ, respectively, from Makkah to Al-Aqsa Mosque in Jerusalem, which took place in 619/620 CE. This important event, which took place in the year of Muhammad’s wife Khadijah’s death, gave strength to him by reaffirming God’s support for him. During this event, instructions for the formal Muslim prayer were revealed to Muhammad ﷺ, making them a cornerstone of Muslim faith and practice.

Istabraq: (استيراق) Thick Dîbâj (pure silk brocade).

Istibrâ’: (الاستيراء) The elapse of one menstruation period in the case of a newly purchased slave-woman.

Istîghfâr: (الاستغفار) To seek Allâh’s forgiveness. It is something that must be done continuously in a Muslims life.

Istihdâh: (الاستحضانة) Bleeding from the womb of a woman in between her ordinary periods. (See Sahîh Al-Bukhârî, Vol. 1, Hadîth No. 303)
**Istihṣān**: (الاستحسان) To give a verdict with a proof from one's heart with satisfaction, and one cannot express it [only Abū Hanifah and his pupils say so but the rest of the Muslim religious scholars of Sunnah (and they are the majority) do not agree to it].

**Istijmār**: (الاستجمار) Purification by stone.

**Istikhārah**: (الاستخارا) A prayer consisting of two Rakʿāt in which the praying person appeals to Allāh to guide one to the right decision, regarding a certain deed, or a particular problem, or a situation with which one is confronted. (See Sahīh Al-Bukhārī Hadith No. 263, Vol. 2; Hadīth No.391, Vol. 8; Hadīth No. 487, Vol. 9.)

**Istīnjāʾ**: (الاستنجاء) Cleansing of one’s private parts after having relieved oneself. A person can cleanse himself with water or clods of earth.

**Al-Istīnshāq**: (الاستنشاق) Rinsing the nose.

**Istīsqāʾ**: (الاستسماء) A prayer consisting of two Rakʿāt, invoking Allāh for rain in seasons of drought. (See Sahīh Al-Bukhārī, Hadīth 119, Vol. 2)

**Ithm**: (الأثم) Ithm denotes negligence, dereliction of duty and sin.

**Ithmīd**: (الإثيم) Antimony that clears the vision and makes the eyelashes grow.

**Iʿtikāf**: (الاعتكاف) Seclusion in a mosque for the purpose of worshipping Allāh only. It refers to the religious practice of spending the last ten days of Ramadān (either wholly or partly) in a mosque so as to devote oneself exclusively to worship. The one in such a state should not have sexual relations with his wife, and one is not allowed to leave the mosque except for a very short period, and that is only for very urgent necessity, e.g., answering the call of nature or joining a funeral procession etc.

**Izār**: (الأزار) A sheet worn below the waist to cover the lower half of the body.

**Jabriyyah**: (الجبيرية) The Jabriyyah sect has the belief that a person is free to do according to his will and he is responsible solely what deeds he performs, good or badas against the Qadariyyah sect whose belief is just the opposite.

**Jadʿāʾ**: (جدعا) An animal with the cut nose, ear or lip. But it is more specific for the nose being most common cases.

**Jadhaʿah or Jadha**: (جداعة) A four-year-old she-camel, or a sheep more than one year and less than two years, or cow of three years age, or a horse five years age. The criterion in goat, cow, ox and camel is having two teeth and in sheep who has reached the age of one year.
Jahālah: (الجهالة) Uncertainty in a contract that may lead to a later dispute; see Gharar.

Jahannam: (جهنم) Most commonly understood to mean Hell described as a place of torment, sorrow, and remorse. Islam teaches that God does not wish to send anyone to Hell, yet justice demands that righteous people be rewarded and those who insist on evil living without repentance and on denial of God be punished. In fact, it is one of the levels of Hell. There are seven levels of Hell-fire: 1. Jahīm—the shallowest level of Hell. It is reserved for those who believed in Allah and His Messenger ﷺ, but who ignored His commands. 2. Jahannam—a deeper level where the idol worshippers are to be sent on the Day of Judgment. 3. Sa‘r—is reserved for the worshippers of fire. 4. Saqar—this is where those who did not believe in Allah will be sent on the Day of Judgment. 5. Ladha—will be the home of the Jews. 6. Ḥāwiyah—will be the abode of the Christians. 7. Hutamah—the deepest level of Hell-fire. This is where the religious hypocrites will spend eternity. The worst of Allah's creation are the Munāfiqīn (hypocrites), whether they be of mankind or jinn, for they outwardly appear to accept, but inwardly reject Allah and His Messenger ﷺ. A dweller of Hell is called a Jahannāmī.

Jāhil: (الجاهل) Literally means 'an ignorant person.' Here it refers to one who is ignorant of the knowledge of Islam irrespective of whether it is general knowledge of Islam, or knowledge of the rules and regulations of Islam.

Jāhiliyyah: (الجاهلية) Literally 'ignorance' is a concise expression for the pagan practice of the days before the advent of the Prophet Muhammad ﷺ. Jāhiliyyah denotes all those world-views and ways of life that are based on rejection or disregard of heavenly guidance communicated to mankind through the Prophets and Messengers of God; the attitude of treating human life either wholly or partly as independent of the directives of God.

Jahīm: (الجحيم) See Jahannam.

Jahmiyyah: (الجهيمية) Taken its name from its progenitor Jahm bin Safwān. This sect denies seeing Allah in the Hereafter.

Jahri Salāt: (الصلاة الجهرية) Prayer of audible recitation.

Jaysh-ul-'Usrah: (جيش العسرة) Army of Hardship, meaning the campaign to Tabūk.

Jalīl: (الليل) A kind of good smelling grass grown in Makkah.

Jāriyah: (الجارية) A young girl.

Jā'iz: (الجائز) see Halāl.

Jalab & Janab: (جلب وجنب) Jalab (bringing) and Janab (avoidance) meaning
the tax collector should not stop in one place and demand that people bring their goods and livestock to him for assessment of tax; and also the people should not go to remote areas away from where they are expected to be so that the tax collector has to travel far and face hardship in doing his job.

**Jallālah**: (الجلال) The animal that eats dung or the dropping of other animals.

**Jalsah**: (جلسة) Sitting between the two prostrations.

**Jam**: (الجمع) Muzdalifah, a well-known place near Makkah.

**Jāmi’**: (الجامع) Collection of *Ahādīth* on a list of topics like belief, laws, *Sunan*, purification, piety, manners, interpretation, history, etc.

**Jamā’at**: (المجموعة) It is a group or a congregation for communal worship.

**Jamrah**: (الجمار) White hot coal. A small stone-built pillar in a walled place. There are three Jimār situated at Mina. One of the ceremonies of *Hajj* is to throw pebbles at these Jimār on the four days of ‘Eidul-Adḥā at Mina.

**Jamratul-‘Aqabah**: (جمار العقبة) One of the three stone pillars at Mina. The last and the greatest one. It is situated at the entrance of Mina from the direction of Makkah. One of the rites of *Hajj* is to throw pebbles at these stone pillars, which represent Satan.

**Jamratul-‘Ulā**: (جمار أولى) The first one.

**Jamratul-Wusta**: (جمار وسطى) The middle one.

**Janābah**: (الجناية) The state of a person after having sexual intercourse with his wife or after having a sexual discharge in a wet dream, whether intentional or otherwise. A person in such a state should perform *Ghusl* (i.e., have a bath) or do *Tayammum*, if a bath is not possible; otherwise the person may not perform *Salāh* (prayer) or recite or touch the Qur’ān.

**Janāzah**: (الجنازة) The Muslim funeral prayer, performed as a sign of respect and goodwill for a deceased Muslim, immediately prior to burial. The prayer reminds all Muslims of their ultimate mortality, thereby reinforcing an ethic of righteous and God-conscious living.

**Janīb**: (الجنيب) A good kind of date.

**Jannah**: (الجنة) Paradise, described as a place of happiness, contentment, and vitality. A reward for the righteous and God-conscious, who believe in the Oneness of Allāh and in all His Prophets and Messengers, and who follow the way of life of the Prophets. A created abode in the Hereafter as a blissful garden, where people live in eternal comfort and joy. Jannah has eight gates
around it and each of these eight gates has eleven doors. The names of the eight gates are:

1. Bābul-Imān (باب الإيمان) (Babul-Iman).
2. Bābul-Jihād (باب الجهاد) (Babul-Jihad).
5. Bābur-Rādīn (باب الرامين) (Babur-Radin).
7. Bābut-Tawbah (باب التوبة) (Babut-Tawbah).
8. Bābus-Salāt (باب الصلاة) (Babus-Salat).

A dweller of Paradise is called a Jannati.

Al-Jarhu wat-Ta’dil: (الجرح والتعديل) The Science of Validation of Ahādīth, validation or invalidation.

Jāriyah: (الجارية) Bondmaid, a female bond servant.

Jazākallāhu khayran: (جزاك الله خيراً) This is a statement of thanks and appreciation to be said to the person who does a favor. Instead of saying thanks (Shukran), the Islamic statement of thanks is to say this phrase. Its meaning is: May Allāh reward you for the good. It is understood that human beings can't repay one another enough. Hence, it is better to request Almighty Allāh to reward the person who did a favor and to give him the best.

Ji'ah: (الجيه) Beer. A drink made from barley and wheat.

Jibrīl or Jibra'il: (جريش/جرييل) Muslims believe that angels are among God's many creations. He is believed to be one of the most important angels, as he was responsible for transmitting God's Divine revelations to all of the human Prophets, ending with Muhammad ﷺ. Due to his special role in bridging the divine and human realms, he is referred to in the Qur'ān as a Spirit (Rūḥ) from God.

Jibt: (الجيت) It signifies a thing devoid of any true basis and bereft of usefulness. In Islamic terminology the various forms of sorcery, divination and soothsaying, in short, all superstitions are called Jibt.

Jihād: (الجهاد) The word literally means 'to strive' or 'to exert to the utmost.' It is an Arabic word the root of which is Jahada, which means to strive for a better way of life. The nouns are Juhd, Mujahid, Jihād, and Jihād. The other meanings are: struggle, endeavor, strain, exertion, effort, diligence, fighting to defend one's life, land, and religion. Usually understood in terms of personal betterment, Jihād remained a highly nuanced concept, it should not be confused with Holy War, a common misrepresentation, the latter does not exist in Islam nor will Islam allow its followers to be involved in a Holy War. The latter refers only to the Holy War of the Crusaders. Jihād is not a war to force the faith on others, as many people think of it. It should never be interpreted as a way of compulsion of the belief on others, since there is an explicit Verse in the Qur'ān that says: "There is no compulsion in religion." (Qur'ān: Al-Baqarah 2:256). Jihād is not a defensive war only, but a
war against any unjust regime, or any evil that is rampant in the society. If such a regime or a group exists that is spreading disinformation, and by that creating the chaos, a war is to be waged against the leaders, but not against the people to stop it. People should be freed from the unjust regimes and influences so that they can freely choose to believe in Allah and worshipping Him. Not only in peace but also in war, Islam prohibits terrorism, kidnapping, and hijacking, when carried against civilians. Whoever commits such violations is considered a murderer in Islam, and is to be punished by the Islamic state. During defensive wars, Islam prohibits Muslim soldiers from harming civilians, women, children, elderly, and the religious men like priests and rabbis. It also prohibits cutting down trees and destroying civilian constructions. In short, any cruelty or unjust practice with the enemies is also prohibited in Islam, in fact introducing the highest human rights first time before the world.

Jilbab: (الجلباب) (pl. Jalābīb) It is a long loose fitting garment worn by the Arabs as an overgarment or outer garment or outer covering.

Jimar: (الجمار) See Jamrah.

Jinn: (الجني) A creation, created by Allah from fire, like human beings from mud, and angels from light. Like man, a Divine Message has also been addressed to them and they too have been endowed with the capacity, again like man, to choose between good and evil, between obedience and disobedience to God. See Sūrah 72 of the Noble Qur’ān. These are spiritual beings that inhabit the world and are required to follow the orders of Allah and are accountable for their deeds. They can be good or bad, just like people. The word Jinn in Arabic means hidden, which indicates that they are invisible creatures. It is said that they take on different shapes and forms. Occasionally they involve themselves in the lives of human beings, causing confusion and fright, though not all jinns are believed to be malevolent.

Jirānah: (الجربانة) A place, few miles from Makkah. The Prophet distributed the war booty of the battle of Hunayn there, and from there he assumed the state of Iḥrām to perform Ḥajj.

Jirā: (الجرار) (Also called Qullah - القدر) A large drinking water container like a barrel whose size the scholars differ over, from five to fifty water skins (Qirbahs - القررة).

Jizyah: (الدرعية) Head tax or poll tax. A uniform tax or surcharge imposed upon every person or every adult in a specific group, as on those entering or leaving a country or using a particular service or conveyance. Tax imposed by Islam on all non-Muslims living in an Islamic government in lieu of the guarantee of security and protection provided to them as the Dhimmis (Protected...
People) of an Islamic state, and their exemption from military service and payment of Zakāh or other taxes imposed on Muslims, they should pay this tax to compensate. If the State cannot protect those who paid Jīzyah, then the amount they paid is returned to them. Jīzyah symbolizes the submission of the non-Muslims to the suzerainty of Islam. (See Sahīh Al-Bukhārī, Vol. 4, Ahādīth No. 384, 385 and 386)

Jubbah: (الجبة) A cloak, outer garment.

Al-Jubār: (الجابر) Bloodshed with impunity (exemption), i.e., without liability.

Juhfah: (الجحيفة) The Miqāt of the people of Shām.

Jumu‘ah: (الجمعة) Friday, the Muslims’ day of gathering, when all Muslim males must go to the mosque to hear the Friday Khutbah (sermon) and to offer the Jumu‘ah congregational prayer, instead of Zuhr prayer. On this special day, Muslims make an extra effort to go to the main mosque of the vicinity with their fellow Muslim brothers. Also Sūrah 62 of the Noble Qur’ān.

Jumu‘ah Masjid: (مسجد الجمعة) Refers to the mosque in which Jumu‘ah prayer is offered. It is generally the main mosque in a town or city.

Junub: (الجنوب) A person who is in a state of Janābah, means to be in a state of ceremonial impurity or defilement. A male becomes Junub on having sexual intercourse or simply on the emission of semen in sleep or otherwise. A female also becomes Junub as a result of sexual intercourse as well as when she is menstruating or having postnatal bleeding. These are the general causes of Janābah, which is also referred to in the books of jurisprudence as Hadath Akbar. A full bath is required for a Junub to receive purification or Tahārah, without which a man or woman is not allowed to touch or read the Qurʾān, enter the mosque or offer the prayers. In the absence of water, however, one is allowed to resort to Tayammum (dry ablution). It substitutes for both, a full bath (Ghusl) and ablution (Wudū’).

Juyūb: (الجوب) Bosom or breast.

Juz’: (الجزء) Collection of Ahādīth handed over by a single individual, a Companion, a Successor or a succeeder

Ka‘bah: (الكعبة) The first house of worship built for mankind as the first building dedicated to the worship of the One God. The Ka‘bah is an empty cube-shaped stone building whose foundations were built by the angels and originally built by Adam and later on reconstructed by Prophet Abraham and his son, Prophet Ishmael about 4,000 years ago. It was rebuilt with the help of Prophet Muhammad, and is covered by a black and gold cloth embroidered with Verses from the Qurʾān. It is located within the court of the Sacred Mosque (Al-Masjidul-Harām) at Makkah, it is the most sacred
place in Islam and commonly referred to as the 'House of Allāh.' It is the focal point towards which Muslims all over the world face in their five daily prayers. Pilgrims at Makkah are supposed to circumambulate the Ka'bah. The Ka'bah contains the sacred Black Stone.

**Al-Kabā‘ir:** The biggest sins, such as polytheism, murder, illegal sex, usury, theft, etc.

**Kabsh:** (الكبش) Ram, a male sheep.

**Kafan:** (الكفان) The shroud for the dead.

**Kafalah:** (الكافلة) The pledge given by somebody to a creditor to guarantee that the debtor will be present at a certain specific place to pay his debt or fine, or to undergo a punishment etc.

**Kaffārah:** (الكافرة) Expiation for any loss, injury, lack of services, etc., also an expiation or atonement for a missed or wrongly practiced obligatory religious act, it is usually in the form of money or foodstuff or a sacrifice of an animal to free oneself from the consequences of sin (term specially used regarding the non-fulfillment of a pledge).

**Kafil:** (الكفيل) A person providing surety, or a guarantor.

**Kāfir:** (الكافير) It signifies one who denies or rejects the truth. A person who disbelieves in Allāh, His Messengers, all the angels, all the holy Books, Day of Resurrection and in the Qadar (Divine Preordainments). It also refers to one who does not believe in Muhammad ﷺ as the final Messenger of Allāh.

**Kāfir** (الكافير) Literally means camphor. It is a special heavenly perfume that will be mixed with non-intoxicating, pure wine and be given to the righteous in the Hereafter. See the Holy Qur'ān, Al-Insan (76:5).

**Kalālah:** (الكلالة) One who leaves behind no heir. According to some scholars, it refers to those who die leaving neither any issue nor father nor grandfather. According to others, it refers to those who die without any issue (regardless of whether they are succeeded by father or grandfather).

**Kalām:** (الكلام) Talk or speech; has also been used through the ages to mean logic or philosophy.

**Kalām Majīd:** (كلام مجيد) Refers to the Noble Qur'ān, the Message of God.

**Kalimah:** (الكلمة) Refers to the basic tenet of Islam, i.e., bearing witness that none has the right to be worshipped but Allāh and that Muhammad is the Messenger of Allāh.

**Kalla:** (الكل) Poor dependents and a debt.
Kanz: (الكنز) Hoarded up gold, silver and money, the Zakāt of which has not been paid. (See the Qur'ān 9:34).

Karāmah (ال الكرامات) (sing. Karāmah) Literally means a miracle. But in Islam it refers to miracles performed by saints and other pious slaves of Allāh. These miracles are performed only by the will of Allāh. Saints cannot perform any miracles of their own accord.

Kasafat: (كسفت) An Arabic verb meaning ‘eclipsed’, used for a solar eclipse: Ash-Shamsu Kasafat (the sun eclipsed).

Kashf: (الكشف) Literally means ‘manifestation’.

Katam: (الكتم) A plant used for dyeing hair (Wasmah).

Al-Kawthar: (الكوثر) A sacred fountain in Jannah (Paradise). It is the source of all the four rivers of Jannah, and feeds the Hawd of Prophet Muhammad (ﷺ), which is at the end of the Sirātul-Mustaqīm. It is a gift from Allāh to the Prophet (ﷺ) to quench the thirst of true believers. (See Hawd Kawthar). Also the name of Sūrah No. 108.

Khabāl: (الخبال) The (mire of) pus or sweat of the people of Hell.

Khabat: (الخبط) The leaves of a thorny desert tree.

Khadhf: (الخذف) The act of throwing small pebbles (like in Ramy).

Khadirah: (خضراء) A kind of vegetation.

Khaybar: (خير) A well-known town in the north of Al-Madinah on the road to Syria.

Khayf: (خيف) A valley.

Khalās: (الخلاص) A condition stipulating that the seller will deliver the product when it comes into his possession.

Khilfa: (الخيلة) Pregnant she-camels those are halfway through their pregnancy.

Khalifah: (الخليفة) (Caliph) The Imām or the Muslim ruler.

Khalifah: (الخليفة) An Arabic term meaning ‘successor,’ it refers to the rightful successor of Prophet Muhammad (ﷺ) as leader of the Ummah (worldwide Muslim community). The Khalifah is not a Prophet; rather, he is charged with upholding the rights of all citizens within an Islamic state and ensuring application of the Shari'ah (Islamic law). Another title for the Khalifah (caliph) is Amīrul-Muinīn meaning ‘the Leader of the Believers’. In the political history of Islam, Khalifah became the title of the successors of the Prophet Muhammad (ﷺ), notably the first four Rightly-Guided Caliphs.
known as Al-Khulafa’ur-Rashidun. The immediate successors of Prophet Muhammad صلی‌الله‌علی‌الامام were Abu Bakr Siddiq, ‘Umar bin Khattab, ‘Uthman bin ‘Affan, and ‘Ali bin Abu Tālib (11-35 AH, 632-655 CE). With the establishment of the Umayyad hereditary rule immediately after this, the institution of the Caliphate changed into monarchy. Yet the rulers called themselves Caliphs. Formally the institution of the Caliphate came to an end in 1924 CE when Kamal Ataturk of Turkey arbitrarily declared its abolition.

Khalifah: Khalifah or vicegerent is one who exercises the authority delegated to him by his principal, and does so in the capacity of his deputy and agent. Another use for this word is for humanity in general. The human being is considered the Khalifah (representative) of Allāh on earth according to Allāh. This term has been used in the Qur’ān with reference to man: “Just think when your Lord said to the angels: ‘Lo! I am about to place a vicegerent on earth...’” (2:30). At certain places in the Qur’ān, Khulafā’ (pl.) also means (a) people with power to mobilize all that is on earth (27:62); (b) successors or inheritors who will inherit the earth and succeed one after another (24:55; 38:26).

Khalil: A close friend. The one whose love is mixed with one’s heart and it is superior to a friend or beloved. The Prophet صلی‌الله‌علی‌الامام had only one Khalil, i.e., Allāh, but he had many friends.

Khalīqa: A kind of perfume and dye made from saffron.

Khamr: It literally means ‘wine’, and has been prohibited by Islam. This prohibition covers everything that acts as an agent of intoxication, and includes all kinds of alcoholic drinks. See Noble Qur’ān, Al-Baqarah (2:219), Al-Mā’idah (5:93).


Khamīsa: A black woolen square blanket with marks on it.

Khandaq: It means a ditch. Generally referred to the battle of Khandaq.

Kharaj: Tax imposed on the revenue from land taken from non-Muslims to ensure their equal rights under Islamic law.

Kharaj: Zakat imposed on the yield of the land (1/10th or 1/20th).

Kharq: An animal with pierced ears.

Khasafa: A word meaning ‘eclipsed’ used for lunar eclipse: Al-Qamaru Khasafa (the moon eclipsed).
Glossary Of Islamic Terms

Khatib: (الخطيب) Orator, speaker.

Khawarij: (الخوارج) (Khārijites or the Seceders) The people who dissented from the religion and disagreed with the rest of the Muslims. According to their belief a sinner is out of the folds of Islam.

Khazir or Khazira: (الخزيرة) A special dish prepared from ground meat, white flour, fat, etc.

Khibr: (الخبر) The agreement to Mukhābarah, i.e., selling fruit before it ripens.

Khilābah: (الخلابة) Deception. See Musarrah:

Khilāfah: (الخلافة) The Muslim state or the office of the caliph.

Khilāl: This term is generally used in the act of Wudū’ (ablution). It refers to the passing of fingers either through one’s beard or passing of fingers of one hand through the fingers of the other hand, or even passing of the little finger through the toes.

Khimar: (الخمار) Headcloth, head and face veil, head cover, veil covering the face but leaving the eyes exposed. Any scarf like piece of cloth used to cover the whole head and neck and may also be used to cover the bosom of a woman.

Khuff: (الخف) (pl. Khifāf) Leather socks or slippers.

Khul: (الخلع) It signifies a woman’s securing the annulment of her marriage through the payment of some compensation like returning back the Mahr to her husband which he gave her. See Qurʾan, Al-Baqarah (2:229).

Khumrah: (الخمرة) A small mat just sufficient for the face and the hands (on prostrating during prayers).

Khums: (الخمس) It literally one fifth. One fifth of the spoils of war is earmarked for the struggle to exalt the Word of Allāh and to help the orphans, the needy, the wayfarer and the Prophet’s kinsmen. Since the Prophet Ḥ ḥ devoted all his time to the cause of Islam, he was not in a position to earn his own living. Hence a part of Khums was allocated for the maintenance of the Prophet Ḥ ḥ as well as for his family and the relatives dependent upon him for financial support. See Qurʾan, Al-Anfal (8:41).

Khushū: (الخشوع) Submissiveness and attentiveness during the prayer with homage, humbleness and fear of Allāh.

Khutbah: (الخطبة) Sermon or religious talk. The weekly community address given by an Imām immediately prior to the Friday congregational prayer. The address serves as a venue for leaders to share with members of the congrega-
tion religious insights, to discuss Islamic viewpoints on important contemporary issues, and to reinforce teachings of Islam. The greatest sermon in the history of mankind is called Khutbatul-Wadā' (the Farewell address), given by the Prophet Muhammad ﷺ, during his last Hajj in 10 AH. There are various types of sermons:

1. Khutbatul-Jumu'ah (the Friday sermon). This is given immediately before the Jumu'ah (Friday) prayer. 2. Khutbatul-'Eid (the 'Eid sermon). This is given immediately after the prayer of the two 'Eids. 3. Khutbatun-Nikāh (the marriage sermon). This is given during the marriage ceremony.

**Khutbatun-Nikāh** (خطبة النكاح) A speech delivered at the time of concluding the marriage contract.

**Kifāyah** (كفاية) An obligatory Islamic rule. If one person performs the act, then it is not required for others to perform. For example, the burial of a deceased Muslim is obligatory on any one person to perform.

**Kifl** (الكف) Share or portion, a like part.

**Ki'āb** (الكعاب) Ki'āb is plural of Ka'b and refers to bones taken from the knees of sheep which were used in gambling similar to dice. Dice (for playing).

**Kohl** (الكحل) Antimony eye powder.

**Kūfah** (الكوفة) A city of Iraq.

**Kuffar** (الكافر) Plural of Kāfir (see Kāfir).

**Kūfi** (كوفي) An Arabic script. Angular writing style often used for early handwritten copies of the Qurʾān.

**Kufr** (الكفر) The state of disbelief. Its original meaning is 'to conceal'. This word has been variously used in the Qurʾān to denote: (1) state of absolute lack of faith; (2) rejection or denial of any of the essentials of Islam that constitute to believe in Allāh, His angels, His Messengers, His revealed Books, the Day of Resurrection, and Al-Qadar (i.e., Divine Preordainments whatever Allāh has ordained must come to pass); (3) attitude of ingratitude and thanklessness to Allāh; and (4) non-fulfillment of certain basic requirements of faith. In the accepted technical sense, Kufr consists of rejection of the Divine guidance communicated through the Prophets and Messengers of God. More specifically, ever since the advent of the last of the Prophets and Messengers, Muhammad ﷺ, rejection of his teaching constitutes Kufr. Killing a believer also constitutes disbelief.

**Kufu’** (الكفو) It means to be similar or resembling or peer. Similarity or equality in four things - religion, lineage, profession and freedom is regarded
reliable. Among these four, religion is agreed upon. Lineage is not proved from any true and authentic Hadith, rest of the two, profession and freedom are admitted by all. To marry other than Kifū’ is not prohibited, but it is better to marry in Kifū’ for many reasons.

**Kunyah** (الكنية) Surname. Calling a man, O ‘father of so-and-so!’ Or calling a woman, O ‘mother of so-and-so!’ This is a custom of the Arabs.

**Kursī** (الكرسي) Literally a footstool or chair, and sometimes wrongly translated as Throne. The Kursī mentioned in this Verse should be distinguished from the ‘Arsh (Throne) mentioned in V.7:54, 10:3, 85:15 and elsewhere. Prophet Muhammad ﷺ said: “The Kursī compared to the ‘Arsh is nothing but like a ring thrown out upon open space of the desert.” If the Kursī extends over the entire universe, then how much greater is the ‘Arsh. Indeed Allāh, the Creator of both the Kursī and the ‘Arsh, is the Most Great.

Ibn Taymiyyah said in the chapters: a) To believe in the Kursī, b) To believe in the ‘Arsh (Throne):

It is narrated from Muhammad bin ‘Abdullāh and from other religious scholars that the Kursī is in front of the ‘Arsh (Throne) and it is at the level of the Feet. (*Fatāwa Ibn Taymiyyah*, Vol. 5, Pages 54, 55)

**Kusūf** (الكسوف) Solar eclipse. See Kasafat.

**Labbayk** (لبیک) Literally means a response to the call.

**Labbayka wa Sa’dayka** (لبیک وسعدیک) I respond to Your call; I am obedient to Your orders.

**Laghw** (الغور) That which is not suitable—vain talks, useless discussion and playfulness.

**Lā hawla wa lā quwwata illā billāh** (لا حول ولا قوة إلا بالله) The meaning of this expression is: ‘There is no power and no strength except with Allāh the Almighty.’ This expression is read by a Muslim when he is struck by a calamity, or is taken over by a situation beyond his control. A Muslim puts his trust in the Hands of Allāh, and submits himself to Allāh.

**Lahd** (الحد) Niche type of grave.

**Lāhut** (اللاهوت) Divine.

**Lā Ilāha illallāh** (لا إله إلا الله) This expression is the most important one in Islam. It is the creed that every person has to say to be considered a Muslim. It is part of the first pillar of Islam. The meaning of which is: ‘None has the right to be worshipped but Allāh.’ The second part of this first pillar is to
say: ‘Muhammadun Rasūlullāh,’ which means: Muhammad is the Messenger of Allāh.

Lāt: (اللات) A chief goddess of the Thaqif tribe in Tā‘īf, and among the most famous idols in the religion of the pre-Islamic Arabia. See the Noble Qur’ān, An-Najm (53:19).

Laylatul-Qadr: (ليلة القدر) ‘The Night of Power,’ concealed in one of the odd last ten nights of the month of fasting (i.e., Ramadān). The night on which the Qur’ān was first revealed by Jibra’il to the Prophet Muhammad ﷺ in 610 CE, during his retreat in the cave of Hirā’ above Makkah. Allāh تعالى describes it as better than one thousand months, and the one who worships Allāh during it by performing optional prayers and reciting the Noble Qur’ān, etc., will get a reward better than worshipping Him for one thousand months (i.e., 83 years and four months). Muslims commemorate this night, believed to be the 27th of Ramadān (though unknown for certain), by offering additional prayers and supplications late into the night. [See the Qur’ān Sūrat 97 (V.97: 1-5) (See Sahih Al-Bukhāri, Vol. 3, Hadith No. 231 and Chapter No.2)

Al-Latīf: (اللطيف) The Subtle One Who is All-Pervading. One of the ninety-nine Attributes of God. The exact meaning of this word is very difficult to fully understand. It includes all of the following meanings: 1. So fine that He is imperceptible to the human sight. 2. So pure that He is unimaginable to the human mind. 3. So kind that He is beyond human comprehension. 4. So gracious that He is beyond human grasp. 5. So near that He is closer to us than our jugular veins. See the Noble Qur’ān, Al-Hajj (22:63), Ash-Shūrā (42:19).

Al-Lawḥ Al-Mahfūz: (اللوح المحفوظ) A guarded Tablet in the Seventh Heaven. The Noble Qur’ān was first written on the Lawḥ Mahfūz in its entirety before it was sent down to the Baytul-‘Izzah in the First Heaven.

Li‘ān: (اللعين) Mutual cursing. Both the wife and the husband take an oath when he accuses her of committing illegal sexual intercourse and after it invoking the curse of Allāh upon the liar. (Sūrat An-Nūr, 24:6, 7, 8, 9)

Liwā’: (اللواء) A standard, it is smaller than Rāyah (الراية) flag.

Al-Līzām: (اللزام) The settlement of affairs, in the Hadith, it refers to the battle of Badr, which was the means of settling affairs between the Muslims and the pagans.

Luqatah: (النقطة) Any article or a thing (any document or a purse) found by somebody other than the owner who has lost it.

Ma‘āfīrī: (معافيري) A Yemeni Burd (sheet).
**Madhhab**: (المذهب) A term used in reference to a particular ‘school of thought’ in Islam. As Islam spread to new regions outside the Arabian peninsula and new social, economic and religious issues arose, many scholars studied the sources of Islam to find permissible and practical solutions that believers could employ to address these issues. Over time, the teachings and thoughts of five respected scholars gained prominence, and Muslims tend to adhere to any one or the other school of thought of these scholars. Each school’s opinions, while differing to some degree with the others, are considered equally valid as a source of practical guidance for the ‘lay’ Muslim.

**Madhī**: (المذئب) Pre-coital fluid. A thin fluid generally released by the private parts of both men and women at the time of passion.

**Ma’dhūr**: (المعذر) Literally means ‘one who is excused.’ In Islamic jurisprudence it refers to that person who has certain sickness due to which he is excused or exempted from certain acts.

**Al-Madīnah**: (المدينة) The well-known sacred city of Saudi Arabia, where the Prophet’s Mosque is situated, it was the first city-state that came under the banner of Islam. Madīnah means city, and Madīnatun-Nabī (the city of the Prophet) was the name taken by the citizens of the city formerly named Yathrib, often called Madīnah Munawarrah - the Illuminated, or the Enlightened City. Tābah and Taibah were also the former names for Al-Madīnah. It became the center of the first Islamic community and political state after Prophet Muhammad迁移到 Makkah in 622 CE. The people of Al-Madīnah welcomed the persecuted Muslims of Makkah with open arms, establishing a sense of brotherhood and sisterhood viewed as a tangible ideal for Muslims today. Prophet Muhammad died in Al-Madīnah in 632 CE and was buried in his room adjacent to the city’s central mosque, which he established.

**Al-Madmadah**: (المضمضة) Rinsing the mouth.

**Maghāfir**: (المغافر) A bad smelling gum.

**Maghāzī**: (المغازى) Plural of Maghza or Ghazwah (i.e., holy battle). The military campaigns in which the Prophet himself participated.

**Maghrib**: (المغرب) Sunset, evening obligatory prayer, that is performed right after the sun sets over the horizon. It consists of three Rak‘ahs and can be offered between just after sunset and before the stars appear in the sky.

**Mahr**: (المهر) Bridal-money given by the husband to the wife. It is part of the Muslim marriage contract. It can never be demanded back under any circumstances. *Mahr* signifies the amount of payment that is settled between the two spouses at the time of marriage, and which the hus-
band is required to make to his bride. *Mahr* seems to symbolize the financial responsibility that a husband assumes towards his wife by virtue of entering into the contract of marriage. (*Mahr Muwajjal*: Deferred dower or dowry; *Mahr Mu'ajjal*: Immediate dower or dowry)

**Mahram:** (المحرم) The person with whom marriage is not permissible and with whom strict Hijab is not obligatory. A Mahram refers to the group of people who are forbidden for a woman to marry due to marital or blood relationships. These people include: Her permanent Mahrams due to blood relationship, and those seven are: her father, her son (who passed puberty), her brother, her uncle from her father’s side, her brother’s son, her sister’s son, and her uncle from her mother’s side. Her Radâ’ Mahrams due to sharing the nursing milk when she was an infant, and their status is similar to the permanent seven Mahrams (i.e., nothing can change their status). Her in-law Mahrams because of marriage and they are: her husband’s father (father-in-law), her husband’s son (stepson), her mother’s husband (stepfather), and her daughter’s husband. These categories of people, along with the woman’s husband, form the group of allowable escorts for a Muslim woman when she travels.

**Maytah:** (الميتة) Dead meat (meat of a dead animal).

**Maysir:** (الميسر) Gambling. Literally means getting something too easily.

**Al-Majid:** (المجيد) The Most Glorious. One of the ninety-nine Attributes of Allâh.

**Majûs:** (المجوس) (Magians) Fire worshippers. These people lived mainly in Persia and the eastern Arabian peninsula in the pre-Islamic period of Ignorance. See Noble Qur’ân, Al-Hajj (22:17).

**Makkah:** (مكة) An ancient city in Saudi Arabia where Abraham and Ishmael built the Ka’bah. Muhammad ﷺ, a member of the Quraysh tribe, which traced its lineage back to Abraham, was born in Makkah in 570 CE. After migrating to Al-Madinah to further the message of Islam, Muhammad ﷺ returned to Makkah in 629 CE with fellow Muslims to reestablish the age-old monotheistic Hajj. In 630 CE, after the Quraysh violated a peace treaty, Muhammad ﷺ marched on Makkah and gained control of the city peacefully, thereafter clearing the Ka’bah of idols and reintegrating the city into the fold of Islam.

**Makkûk:** (المكوك) Weight equal to 6 *Mudd* or 3 kilo and 258 gram.

**Makr:** (المكر) It signifies a secret strategy of which the victim has no inkling until the decisive blow is struck. Until then, the victim is under the illusion that everything is in good order. See Noble Qur’ân, Al-Imrân (3:54).
**Makrūh**: Lawful or legal but undesirable or disliked but not prohibited such as growing fingernails or sleeping on the stomach. Not doing the Makrūh counts as a good deed and doing it does not count as a bad deed. Makrūh is of two types: Makrūh Tahrīmī and Makrūh Tanẓīhī. Makrūh Tahrīmī is that which has been established by a proof which is not absolute. The one who rejects it is regarded as a Fāsiq (open sinner). A person who does something that falls under this category without any valid reason will be committing a sin and will deserve punishment. Makrūh Tanẓīhī is that which if left out, will be worthy of reward and if carried out, will not entail any punishment.

**Malā'ikah**: (sing. Malak) Angels, a class of God's creations. Angels inhabit the unseen world, and constitute a group of beings who do God's commands and who perpetually engage in His glorification. Muslims believe each human being is assigned two special angels as recorders - one records a person's good deeds while the other records a person's evil deeds. These records will be summoned on the Day of Judgment and each individual will be called to account for his or her deeds. A few angels are named in the Qur'ān, such as Jibra'il (angel of revelation), Mikā'il (angel of rain and plant), and Isrā'īl (angel who sounds the horn on Judgment Day, calling all souls to account).

**Al-Malā'ikah**: Another name for Sūrat Fātīr, Sūrah 35 of the Noble Qur'ān.

**Malhamah**: The Fierce Battles that will take place near the End Times before the coming of Dajjāl. (Antichrist or False Masih).

**Mālikī**: Islamic school of law founded by Imām Mālik. Followers of this school are known as the Mālikī.

**Mamlūk**: A male slave.

**Manāt**: It was the chief idol worshipped by the Khuzā'ī and Hudhail tribes.

**Manārah**: A tower-like structure, more commonly called a minaret, from which the Mu'adhdhin (caller to prayer) calls out the Adhān (call to prayer). The minaret is usually located adjacent to the mosque, though for architectural reasons they may be placed at various places on the mosque grounds for practical as well as decorative effect.

**Manāsik**: The acts of Hajj like Iḥrām, Tawāf of the Ka'bah and Sa'y of Safa and Marwah, stay at 'Arafāt, Muzdalifah and Mina, Ramy of Jamarāt, slaughtering of Hady (animal) etc. For details, see The Book of Hajj and 'Umrah, Sahih Al-Bukhārī, Vol.2-3.
Manāsi’ (المناصع): A vast plateau on the outskirts of Al-Madīnah.

Mandūb (مندوب): (Recommended) This category is recommended for the Muslim to do such as extra prayers after Zuhr and Maghrib prayers. Doing the Mandūb counts as a good deed and not doing it does not count as a bad deed or a sin.

Manī: (المني) Semen or sperm.

Manīḥah: (المنيحة) (pl. Manāʾih) A sort of gift in the form of a she-camel or a sheep that is given to somebody temporarily so that its milk may be used and then the animal is returned to its owner.

Mann: (المن) The Divine food sent to Israelites from heaven. It was in the form of sweet grains. A small round thing, as small as the hoar frost on the ground. It usually rotted if left over till next day; it melted in the hot sun; they used to eat it according to their necessity. It is also said that the actual manna found to this day in the Senai region is a gummy saccharine secretion found on a species of Tamarisk. Some say it was truffles while some say mushrooms.

Mannān: (المانان) The one who reminds others of what he has given to them.

Manzil: (المنزل) (pl. Manāẓil) Portion. There are seven Manāẓil in Qurān to be recited over seven days. The last Manzil nicknamed as Mufassal or Hizbul-Mufassal.

Maqām Ibrāhīm: (مقام إبراهيم) The Station of Ibrāhīm or the standing place of Ibrāhīm, a place near the Ka’bah, where there is a stone bearing the footprint of Prophet Ibrāhīm عليه السلام on which Abraham سلم stood while he and Ishmael سلام were building the Ka’bah.

Maqām Mahmūd: (المقام المحمود) The highest place in Paradise, which will be granted to Prophet Muhammad ﷺ and none else.

Māriqah: (المارقة) (Passers through) One of the Khawārij sect, so named because they had strayed away from the true faith.

Ma’rūf: (المعروف) (المعروف) It refers to the conduct that is reckoned fair and equitable by the generality of disinterested people.

Marwah: (المرة) Granite, a sharp-edged stone. Ibn Hajar says in Ḥadyus-Sāri that Marwah is a sharp stone after which the mountain across from Safā was named. A mound near the Ka’bah that is referred to in the Qur’ān as one of the symbols of Allāh. It is in conjunction with Safā. Now it is a remnant of a mountain in Makkah.

Maryam: (مریم) Mary, the mother of Jesus. Maryam is considered by
Muslims to be the most favored of women to God, for her chastity, piety and dedication. Muslims believe she miraculously bore Prophet Jesus ☪ in her womb and gave birth to him, while remaining a chaste virgin. The fact that an entire chapter of the Qur'ān is titled Maryam indicates that the lessons of her life are extremely important for Muslims.

**Mas'alah**: (المسألة) Literally means an issue, problem or question. In Islamic jurisprudence, it refers to a rule, or regulation. The plural of **Mas'alah** is **Masā'il**.

**Mash**: (المسح) The act of passing of wet hands over a particular part of the body.

**Mā-shā'-Allāh**: (ما شاء الله) An Arabic sentence meaning literally, 'What Allāh wishes,' and it indicates a good omen.

**Mas'ẖar**: (المشجر) Shrine. A place appointed for sacred rites.

**Al-Mas'harul-Harām**: (المشجر الحرام) The boundary of Al-Masjid Al-Harām in Makkah. It is prohibited to kill any game, to damage any plant or tree, or to act in any manner that will violate the sanctity of the Sacred Mosque.

**Mashrubah**: (المشربة) Attic room, something of a room or space just below the roof to be used for storage.

**Al-Masīh Ad-Dajjāl**: (المسيح الدجال) The lying christ. The anti-christ which Prophet Muhammad said would appear before the Day of Resurrection.

**Masjid**: (المسجد) (pl. **Masājид**) Mosque. A term meaning ‘place of prostration,’ **Masjid** designates a building where Muslims congregate for communal worship. The term comes from the same Arabic root as the word **Su-jūd** (prostrations), designating the important worship position in which Muslims touch their forehead to the ground. Often, the French word mosque is used interchangeably with **Masjid**, though the latter term is preferred by Muslims. The **Masjid** also serves various social, educational, and religious purposes. There are three sacred **Masājīd** in the world, which Muslims hope to visit and pray within

**Masjid Aqṣā**: (المسجد الأقصى) The ‘Furthest Mosque’ built by the early Muslims in Al-Quds in Jerusalem, on or near where the Temple of Solomon once stood. It is the third sacred mosque of the Muslims. See **Baytul-Maqdis**.

**Al-Masjidul-Harām**: (المسجد الحرام) (The Inviolable Mosque). The Grand **Masjid** in Makkah. The Ka'bah (the **Qiblah** of the Muslims) is situated within it. It is the first sacred mosque of the Muslims.

**Masjid Nabawī**: (المسجد النبوي) Another name for the Masjidur-Rasūl in Al-Madīnah. The body of the Prophet ☪ is buried there. It is the second sacred
mosque of the Muslims.

**Masjid Shajarah**: (مسجد الشجرة) A mosque outside Al-Madinah, where most of the Hājīs go for wearing Ihrlim; a Miqāt.

**Matāf**: (المطاف) Area of Tawāf.

**Mathānī**: (المثنائي) The oft-repeated Verses of the Qur’ān, and that is Sūrat Al-Fātiḥah, recited repeatedly in the prayer.

**Ma’thurah**: (المأثرة) Custom.

**Mawlā**: (المولي) Literally means protector, and a person of slave origin who does not have tribal protection. Allāh describes Himself as the Mawlā or the Lord (Allāh) of the believers. Mawlā is a word with dual meaning, and can mean either master or slave. It may also be considered as friend, relative, cousin, son of paternal uncle, ally, supporter, etc. It is also the term used to describe a freed slave who remains as part of the family.

**Mawlāya**: (مولاي) My lord, my master (an expression used when a slave addresses his master (also used for freed slave). Also a form of address to a ruler implying protector.

**Mawqūdah**: (الموقودة) An animal beaten to death with a stick, a stone or the like without proper slaughtering.

**Mawāli**: (الموالي) Non-Arabs and originally former slaves.

**Mawāqīt**: (المواقيت) See Miqāt.

**Mayāthir**: (الميث) (pl. of Mitharah) Red silk cushions stuffed with cotton that were placed under the rider on the saddle.

**Mayyit**: (ميت) A corpse, dead body of a human being

**Mazhar**: (المظهر) A symbol, apparently a finite thing that points toward something unbounded and indescribable. The knowledge conveyed by the symbol cannot be apprehended in any other way, nor can the symbol ever be explained once and for all. Its true meaning becomes known via visible manifestation of anything associated.

**Mihjan**: (المحجن) A walking stick with a bent handle.

**Mihrāb**: (المحراب) A niche in the wall of a mosque that indicates the place of standing of the Imām, and the Qiblah, the direction of Ka’bah, towards which all Muslims turn during the formal worship. Architecturally, the Mihrāb serves to amplify the voice of the Imām as he leads the worshippers in prayer.

**Mijannah**: (المجنة) A place at Makkah.
**Milād**: (الميلاد) Literally means 'birth, birthday.' In this context it refers to the birthday celebrations held in respect for the Prophet ﷺ. In most cases these celebrations are innovations which are accompanied by many other evils.

**Mīllah**: (الملة) See *Ummah*.

**Minā** (منى) A plain five miles from Makkah and approximately ten miles from 'Arafāt within the bounds of the *Haram* (sanctuary) of Makkah. During the *Hajj* the pilgrims pass the night between the eighth and ninth day, before proceeding to 'Arafāt on the ninth day. An essential place to visit during the *Hajj*.

**Minbar**: (المنبر) Steps with a pulpit on which the *Imām* stands to deliver the *Khutbah* (sermon or address).

**Mīqāt**: (المقاتات) (pl. *Mawqīt*) The appointed places specified by the Prophet ﷺ for entering the state of *Ihram* (consecration) before entering Makkah when intending to perform *Umrah* or *Hajj*.

**Mi'raj**: (المعراج) A hunting instrument, part of which has a sharp-edged piece of wood, or a piece of wood with a sharp piece of iron attached to it. It is sometimes referred to as a hunting adze.

**Mi'raj**: (المعراج) Literally means 'ascension'. In Islam it refers to the Night Journey of the Prophet ﷺ from Makkah to Jerusalem and then the Ascension through the realms of the seven heavens wherein he communicated with Allāh. (See *Hadīth* No. 345, Vol. 1, *Hadīth* No. 429, vol. 4 and *Ahādīth* No. 345, Vol. 1, 227, Vol. 5, *Sahīh Al-Bukhārī*). [Also see (V. 53:12, 17:1) the Qur'ān] See also *Isrā* and *Mi'raj*.

**Mirbad**: (المريد) A place where dates are dried, also said for a small enclosure for animals.

**Mīr**: (المروط) (pl. *Murūt*) A sheet of wool or silk to wrap around.

**Miskīn**: (المسكين) (pl. *Masākîn*) The word denotes helplessness, destitution. Thus *Masākîn* are those who are in greater distress than the ordinary poor people. Explaining this word the Prophet ﷺ declared that *Masākîn* are those who cannot make both ends meet, who face acute hardship and yet whose sense of self-respect prevents them from asking for aid from others and whose outward demeanor fails to create the impression that they are deserving of help.

**Misr**: (مصر) Egypt.

**Miswāk**: (المسواك) A thin stick or twig made of Arak-tree roots that is used to clean the teeth.
Mitharah: (المبترة) See Mayàhir.

Mithqāl: (المثلث) A special kind of weight (equals 4 2/7 grams approx., used for weighing gold). It may be less or more. (20 Mithqāl = 94 grams approx.)

Mīzr: (المزر) Beer.

Mu'adhdhīn: (المؤذن) A call-maker who pronounces the Adhān (call to prayer) loudly from a minaret or other suitable location near a mosque prior to the five daily worship times calling people to come and perform the prayer. The Mu'adhdhīn may also perform other duties, such as reciting the Qur'ān while worshippers assemble at the mosque and perform the Wudū (ritual washing, ablution) a few minutes prior to commencement of congregational worship.

Mu'āhād: (المعاهد) Protected. A non-Muslim who has a treaty with the Muslims, or is living under Muslim protection. Technically, it refers to the People of the Scripture who have been promised protection by the Muslim state. It is similar to Dhimmī.

Mu'allafatul Quliib: (مؤلقة القلوب) New Muslims who were given Sadaqah by the Prophet to keep them firm in the fold of Islam.

Mu'arras: (المعرس) A place nearer to Mina than Ash-Shajarah.

Mu'āmalah: (المعاملة) (pl. Mu'āmalāt) A term used for a transaction, dealing or an agreement wherein some money or other type of wealth is involved.

Mu'an'an: (المععن) Those Ahādīth in which narrator relates the text using the preposition 'an.

Mu'aqqadah: (المعقدة) It is an oath that a person swears to express his determination and definite intention to do something in future. The expiation becomes obligatory for breaking this oath. The expiation for this oath is to feed ten poor persons, or to clothe them or to set a slave free.

Mu'asfar: (المعصر) Garments lightly died with safflower-almost orange color.

Mu'asharah: (المعاشرة) Literally means society. In Islamic terminology, it refers to one's social relationships and social dealings.

Mu'attilah: (المعطلة) This sect does not believe in the primacy of Allāh's Attributes.

Mu'awwidhāt: (المعوذات) The last three Surahs of the Qur'ān.

Mu'awwidhatān or Mu'awwidhatayn: (المعوذتان أو المعوذتين) i.e., Sūrat Al-Falaq (113) and Sūrat An-Nas (114).

Mubāh: (المباح) Things or acts Permissible or allowed in Islamic law. This
category is left undecided for the person, such as eating apples or oranges. Doing or not doing the Mubah does not count as a good or bad deed.

**Mubahshirāt**: (المشیرات) Heralds. Glad tidings. True dreams that are a part of prophethood. [See the F.N. of (V. 10:64), Sahih Al-Bukhari, Vol. 9, Hadith No. 119].

**Mūbiqāt**: (المربقات) Great destructive sins.

**Mūdābarah**: (المداربة) An animal with the sides of its ears cut off.

**Mūdabbār**: (المدب), A slave who is promised by his master to be manumitted after the latter's death.

**Mūdārabah**: (المضاربة) (Sleeping partnership or limited partnership) An agreement between two or more persons whereby one or more of them provide finance, while the other(s) provide entrepreneurship and management to carry on any business venture whether trade, industry or service with the objective of earning profits. The profit is shared in an agreed proportion. The loss is borne by the financiers only in proportion to their share in the total capital.

**Mūdārib**: (المضارب) The partner who provides entrepreneurship and management in a Mūdārabah agreement, i.e., the one who contributed his labor to the partnership.

**Mudd**: (المد) A dry measure of two thirds of a kilogram (approx.). It may be less or more. Sā' equals 4 Mudds (3 kilograms approx.).

**Mufaddamah**: (المقدمة) Garments deeply dyed with safflower-almost red color.

**Mufassal** or **Mufassalat**: (المفصل أو المفصلات) The shorter Sūras starting from Qāf to the end of the Noble Qurʾān (i.e., from No. 50 to the end of the Qurʾān 114).

**Mufattaqah**: (المفتقة) A mixture of sugarcane, molasses, sesame and fenugreek.

**Mufāwadah**: (المفاوضة) A basic contract of partnership based on Wakālah and Kafālah. It requires full commitment from the partners. In order to achieve this purpose, the partners must try to maintain equality in the capital, labor, liability and the legal capacity and also declare each partner to be a surety for the other.

**Mufī**: (المفتي) One who issues verdicts.

**Muhaddith**: (المحدث) (pl. Muhaddithīn) An Islamic scholar of Hadith (sayings and traditions of the Prophet Muhammad ﷺ).
Muhaffalah: (المحللة) Animals that have not been milked. See Musarrāt.

Muhājir: (المهاجر) A person who does Hijrah (emigration). Anyone of the early Muslims who had migrated from any place to Al-Madīnah in the lifetime of the Prophet before the conquest of Makkah and also the one who emigrates for the sake of Allāh and Islam and also the one who quits all those things which Allāh has forbidden. According to a Hadīth, Muhājir is the one who forsakes mistakes and sins. (Ibn Mājah: 3934)

Mūhallal lahū: (المحلل له) The first husband for whom another man marries his divorced wife in order to divorce her so that the first husband can marry her again.

Mūhallil: (المحلل) The man who marries a woman in order to divorce her so that she can go back to her first husband.

Muhammad: (محمد) The one who is much praised, the last Messenger Muhammad. The Prophet and righteous person believed by Muslims to be the final Messenger of God, whose predecessors are believed to include the Prophets Adam, Noah, Abraham, Moses, David, Jesus and others. Born in 570 CE, Muhammad grew up to become a well-respected member of Makkān society. In 610 C.E., he received the first of many revelations that would eventually form the content of the Qur’ān. Soon after this initial event, he was conferred prophethood and began calling people to righteousness and belief in One God. Muhammad died in 632 CE, after successfully (re)estabishing the religion known as Islam and providing Muslims with a model for ideal human behavior.

Mūhāqalah: (المحللة) Renting land in return for one third or one quarter of the produce. This term is mostly used concerning cultivation.

Muḥarram: (المحرَّم) An act that is strictly forbidden in Islam.

Muḥarram: (المحرَّم) The first month of the Islamic calendar. Also called the month of Allāh.

Muḥassab: ( almuhāṣib) (See Abtah) A valley outside Makkah on way to Mina, sometimes called Khayf Bani Kinānah.

Muḥassar: (المُحِجَّس) A place between Mina and Muzdalifah to make hurry while passing it. At this place the army of Abrahah was destroyed. It is said to be a place of satans.

Muḥdath: (مُحدّث) Innovation.

Muḥdīth: (مُحَدِّث) An innovator of heresy.

Muḥkam: (المحكم) Qur’ānic Verses the orders of which are not cancelled
(abrogated), non-allegorical and are clear.

**Muhrim**: (المحرم) One who enters into the consecration state of *Ihram* for the purpose of performing the *Hajj* or *'Umrah*.

**Muhrimah**: (المحرمة) A female who assumes *Ihram*.

**Muhsan**: (المحصن) One who is married.

**Muhsanah**: (المحصنتات) It means 'protected women'. It has been used in the Qur'an in two different meanings. First, it has been used in the sense of 'married women', that is, those who enjoy the protection of their husbands. Second, it has been used in the sense of those who enjoy the protection of families as opposed to slave-girls.

**Muhsar**: (المحرص) A *Muhrim* who intends to perform the *Hajj* or *'Umrah* but cannot because of some obstacle.

**Mujahid**: (المجاهد) (pl. *Mujahidūn*) One who takes an active part in *Jihād* and fights for Islam. A Muslim fighter. The opposite of *Qā'idin*. See *Jihād*.

**Mujaziz**: (المجزز) A *Qā'if*; a learned man who reads the foot and hand marks.

**Mu'jizah**: (المعجزة) Literally means a miracle. In Islam it refers to miracles performed by Prophets. Prophets do not perform miracles out of their own accord but through the direction and will of Allah.

**Mu'jam**: (المعجم) Collection of *Ahādīth* alphabetically arranged by the names of the traditionist irrespective of subject matter

**Mujtahid**: (المجتهد) (pl. *Mujtahidūn*) Independent religious scholar, a specialist on the deduction of the Islamic rules who do not follow religious opinions except from four major sources: the Qur'an, *Hadīth*, conscience of the community from all over the Muslim world, and reasoning.

**Mukatab**: (المكاتب) A slave (male or female) who binds himself (or herself) under a contract of manumission to pay a certain ransom for his (or her) freedom.

**Mukhābarah**: (المذابرة) Selling fruit before it ripens. Some say it is leasing the land for cultivation, while the owner will get whatever is produced from one area of it, and another area is for the cultivator. Ibn Hajar says *Mukhābarah* refers to sharecropping when the seeds are supplied by the cultivator, while *Muzāra'ah* refers to sharecropping when the seeds are supplied by the owner of the land.

**Mukhādarah**: (المذاخرة) The buying of a raw crop before it is ready to be reaped is *Mukhādarah*. 
Mukhadram: (المخضرم) (pl. Mukhadramūn) A person who became a Muslim during the Prophet's lifetime but did not see him.

Mulā'anah: (الصلاة) The act of performing Li‘ān.

Mulabbadah: (اللبدة) Cloak made from a thick patched sheet.

Mulāmasah: (المامة) Mulāmasah is a buy for prefixed price with closed eyes or in darkness just by the first touch of hand. For instance, a man goes to a cloth merchant and proposes him to buy a roll of cloth for a prefixed price on the condition that he will close his eyes and will go to touch the rolls, whatever the roll will come under his first touch, he will have it. This kind of trade is prohibited. It is also called Limās.

Mulhid: (المحد) Atheist, one who denies the existence of God.

Mulhidūn: (المحدون) Heretical, unorthodox, one relating to or characterized by departure from accepted beliefs or standards.

Multazam: (المتزامن) The area between the Black Stone and the door of the Ka‘bah where it is recommended to make supplications.

Mu‘min: (المؤمن) A person who has deep faith in Allāh and is a righteous and obedient slave of Allāh.

Munābadah: (المنافذة) The sale by Munābadah is like gambling: Two persons may agree to barter one thing for another without seeing or checking either of them. One may say to another, “I barter my garment for your garment,” and the sale is achieved without either of them seeing the garment of the other. Or one may say, “I give you what I have and you give me what you have,” and thus they buy from each other without knowing how much each has had.

Munāfiq: (المنافيق) Hypocrite, a person who puts on a false appearance of virtue or religion. One whose external appearance is of a Muslim, people see him praying, fasting, etc., but whose inner reality conceals his Kufr (disbelief). (See Al-Baqarah 2:8-23). A Munāfiq is more dangerous and worse than a Kāfir.

Munkar wa Nakir: (منكر ونكير) The names of the two angels who question the dead in the graves.

Muqābalah: (المقابلة) The animal whose ears have been severed.

Muqallid: (المقلد) A follower of a qualified specialist on religious matters.

Muqāradah: (المقارضة) Another name for Mudārabah used by the Mālikis. It has two explanations: a) To lend money or something to someone. b) To be a partner, i.e., one person invests money and the other does practical work and the profit is shared between the two according to the agreed percentage.
Muqarrabûn: (المقربون) Literally means, ‘those who have been brought near.’ On the Day of Resurrection, Allâh will sort out the good and the evil into three groups:

1. Muqarrabûn - the exalted class, those who will be nearest to Allâh. Also described as the Sâbiqûn, meaning ‘those who outstrip the rest.’ 2. Ashâbul-Maymanah - literally means, ‘the Companions of the Right.’ The righteous people destined to enter Paradise. 3. Ashâbul-Mash’amah - literally, ‘the Companions of the Left.’ These will be the inheritors of Hell-fire. See Al-Wâqi‘ah (56:11-56).

Al-Muqatta‘ât: (المقطعات) The initial abbreviated letters prefixed to certain Sûrahs of the Qur’ân.

Muqayyar: (المقرِر) A name of a pot with a coating of tar or pitch in which alcol­olic drinks used to be prepared.

Murâbit: (المريض) A person who is on the road spreading Islam.

Murji’ah: (المريضة) (Also called the people of Irjâ’.) The Murji’ah sect has the belief that Imân (faith) concerns with words only, it has no link as far as deeds are concerned.

Murtad: (المرتد) Apostate. One who commits apostasy, renunciation of a religious faith or the abandonment of the previous loyalty.

Mûsa: (موسى) Moses, an eminent Prophet in Islam mentioned in the Qur’ân and the Old Testament. The Qur’ân contains accounts similar to those in the Hebrew Bible regarding Moses’ early life and upbringing. Muslims believe Moses was chosen as a Prophet by God, and his mission was to call Pharoah and the Egyptians to believe in One God and cease oppression of the Hebrew people. Muslims believe the Torah, a Divine scripture, was given to Moses as a guidance for those who heeded his leadership.

Mustad‘afîn: (المستضعفين) Weak and oppressed persons.

Musaddiq: (المصدق) The person discharging voluntary charity.

Musallâ: (المصلى) A praying place.

Musalli: (المصلي) One who is offering the prayer.

Musannaf: (المصنف) More comprehensive collection of Ahâdîth divided into books and chapters.

Musâqât: (المساقة) Watering and doing watchman’s job in the fields or gardens and sharing the produce or cultivating the land and sharing the produce with the owner is called Musâqât. This is also called Muzâra‘ah (المزارعة). The difference between Musâqât and Muzâra‘ah is that the first
mentioned is for grains and the last mentioned is for fruit trees.

Musarrat or Muhaffalah or Khilābah: (المصرة أو المحفالة أو الخلاءبة) Such she-camels and sheep whose udders are bind to avoid milking them for two or three days to sell them for a higher price as buyer thinks that they deliver great amount of milk.

Mushabbiyah: (المشحية) (Anthropomorphist) Those who ascribe human characteristics to Almighty Allâh.

Mushaf: (المصحف) A copy of the Qur’ân.

Mushāwarah: (المشورة) It means consultation.

Mushrik: (المشرك) (pl. Mushrikîn or Mushrikûn) A polytheist, pagan or idolater. A person who ascribes partners to Allâh. Someone who offers his adoration to anything besides the one God. Hence, polytheists and idolators are associators. However, on a more subtle level, anyone who adores God with an impure love is an associator too.

Musinnah: (المستدر) A female three-year-old cattle, cow or ox (entered its third year). (Also Thanî or Thanîyûh, those having two teeth.)

Muslim: (المسلم) A person who accepts Islam as his or her way of life. Literally (and in the broadest sense), the term means ‘one who submits to God.’ More commonly, the term describes any person who accepts the creed and the teachings of Islam. The word ‘Muhammadan’ is a pejorative and offensive misnomer, as it violates Muslims’ most basic understanding of their creed—Muslims do not worship Muhammad, nor do they view him as the founder of the religion. The word ‘Moslem’ is also incorrect, since it is a corruption of the word ‘Muslim.’ Muslim is the one who believes in Allâh, His Prophets, His Books, the Day of Resurrection (Qiyâmah), recites the Kalimah, and accepts the commandments of Allâh and His Prophet as the Truth.

Musnad: (المسنن) Collection of Ahâdîth with complete chains.

Musalla: (المصلى) The place where the ‘Eid prayer is performed.

Mustadrak: (المستدرك) Collection of Ahâdîth a compiler collected according to the conditions of a former compiler but that were missed by him.

Mustahabb: (المستحب) An act in Islam that is Desirable, preferable or recommended, ordered without obligation. Mustahabb is something that is recommended and performed in desire for (Divine) love. Refers to those acts done by the Prophet or the Companions very occasionally. The acts whose neglect is not punished, but whose performance is rewarded, e.g., the call for prayers (Adhân).
**Glossary Of Islamic Terms**

**Mustahādah**: (المستحاضة) A woman who has bleeding from the womb in between her ordinary periods.

**Mustakhraj**: (المستخرج) Collection of Ahādīth in which a later compiler collects fresh and additional Isnād (chains) cited by the original compiler.

**Mustawsilah**: (المستوصلة) The women who has her hair extensions done.

**Mut'ah**: (المتعة) A temporary marriage. A custom that was common in Arabia. It was allowed in the early period of Islam when one was away from his home, but later on it was cancelled (abrogated) by the Prophet at Khaibar, as is related by ‘Ali bin Abu Tālib in Sahīh Muslim and Sahīh Al-Bukhārī.

**Mut'aawwilan**: (المتأولون) Those (ones) who form wrong opinions of Kufr about their Muslim brothers.

**Mutafahhish**: (المتفحش) A person who conveys evil talk.

**Mutafallijat**: (المتفلجات) The women who have their teeth separated for the sake of beauty.

**Mu‘takif**: (المعتكف) One who is in a state of ‘Iṭikāf.

**Mu’tamir**: (المعتمر) The person performing ‘Umrah.

**Mutanammisah** or **Mutanammisāt**: (المنتمية أو المنتميات) The women who have their eyebrows plucked, some say it includes the face.

**Mutashābīhāt**: (المتشابهات) Allegorical. Qur’ānic Verses that are not clear and are difficult to understand.

**Mu‘tazilah**: (المعزلة) A member of a medieval theological sect that maintained that nothing but eternity could be asserted regarding Allāh, that the eternal nature of the Qur’ān was questionable, and that humans have free will.

**Mustawshimāt**: (المستوشمات) The women who get themselves marked with tattoos.

**Mutras**: (مترس) A Persian word meaning ‘don’t be afraid.’

**Muttafaq ‘Alayh**: (متفق عليه) Meaning ‘Agreed upon’. The term is used for such Ahādīth that are found in both the collections of Ahādīth: Bukhārī and Muslim.

**Muttaqī**: (المتقي) Derived from its noun Taqwā (piety and fear of Allāh), which signifies God-consciousness, a sense of responsibility and accountability, dedication and awe-the things that prompt one to fulfill his duty. Taqwā or heedfulness is the main criterion by which God values the deeds of a
Muslim (Al-Hujurat 49:13).

**Muttaqûn**: Pious and righteous persons who fear Allâh much (abstain from all kinds of sins and evil deeds which He has forbidden) and love Allâh much (perform all kinds of good deeds which He has ordained).

**Muwalladûn**: The children of female slaves from other nations.

**Muzâbanah**: The sale of fresh dates for dried dates by measure, and the sale of fresh grapes for dried grapes by measure. In both cases, the dried fruits are measured while the fresh ones are only estimated as they are still on the trees.

**Muzaffât**: A name of a pot in which alcoholic drinks used to be prepared, it is coated with pitch. Also called *Muqayyar*.

**Muzâra’ah**: Sharecropping or farming partnership. An arrangement in which the owner of a land provides the land while another takes care of the farming, and they share the crops. Ibn Hajar says *Muzâra’ah* refers to sharecropping when the seeds are supplied by the owner of the land, while *Mukhâbarah* refers to sharecropping when the seeds are supplied by the cultivator.

**Muzdalifah**: A place between ‘Arafât and Mina, about 20 km from Makkah, where the pilgrims while returning from ‘Arafât, have to stop and stay for the whole night or greater part of it (the night), between the ninth and tenth of Dhul-Hijjah and to perform the *Maghrib* and ‘Ishâ’ prayers (together) there.

**Nâr**: The fire of Hell.

**Nabî**: (pl. *Anbiya’*) The meaning of the word *Nabî* is a Prophet. To be a Prophet, he should receive a revelation from Allâh that does not necessarily mean a revealed book. When a Prophet is instructed to deliver his message to a certain group of people, he is a Messenger. It is stated in the Qur’ân that there are no more Prophets and Messengers after Muhammad ﷺ, the last of the Prophets and Messengers.

**Nabîdha**: Water in which dates or grapes etc., are soaked and left overnight and is not yet fermented. It is lawful. But it begins to ferment as the time passes, effervescence and bubbling appear and it turns out to be intoxicating and becomes unlawful.

**Nâdhr**: is one of the three types of vows to Almighty Allâh.

**Nâdîhah**: A camel used for agricultural purposes.

**Nâdiy**: A part of an arrow.
Glossary Of Islamic Terms 453

Nafath: (النفث) Witchcraft.

Nafkh: (النفخ) Puffing of Satan.

Nafilah: (النافلة) The recommended prayers after or before the daily obligatory prayer.

Nafl: (النفل) Literally means ‘optional’. A voluntary act of supererogatory devotion such as Nafl prayer or Nafl fast. According to the jurists it has a similar ruling to that of Mustahabb.

Nafs: (النفس) In Arabo-Persian usage, Nafs (soul or self) is used both for the immortal soul of a human, which survives death, and also for the carnal, or lower, soul. Muslims believe that humans are ultimately spiritual beings, housed temporarily in a physical body. The Nafs represents that core of each individual which exhibits an innate orientation toward God, called Fitrah, and which passes into a different unknown realm upon a person’s physical death in the present world.

Nahd: (النهد) Sharing the expenses of a journey or putting the journey food of the travelers together to be distributed among them in equal shares.

Nahyun ‘anil-Munkar: (نهي عن المنكر) Forbidding evil.

Nahr: (النحر) (Literal: slaughtering of the camels only and is done by cutting carotid artery or by poking the jugular vein with a spear or sharp item at the root of the neck); the day of Nahr is the tenth of Dhul-Hijjah on which pilgrims slaughter their sacrifices.

Najāsah: (النجاسة) Refers to impurity. It is of two types: Najāsah Ghalīzah (heavy impurity) and Najāsah Khafṣfah (light impurity).

Najash: (النجش) A trick (of offering a very high price) for something without the intention of buying it but just to allure and cheat somebody else who really wants to buy it although it is not worth such a high price.

An-Najashi: (النجاشي) (Title for the) king of Ethiopia (Abyssinia) - Negus.

Najd: (نجد) Lexically means ‘the elevated land’. The expanse of land between Tihamah and Iraq.

Najis: (النجس) Something that is impure.

An-Najwā: (النجوى) The private talk between Allāh and each of His slaves on the Day of Resurrection. It also means, a secret counsel or conference or consultation. [See the Qur’ān (V.58:7-13), and also see the footnote of (V.11:18)] (See Sahīh Al-Bukhārī, Vol.3, Hadīth No. 621)

Na’l: (النعل) Slipper or sandal.
Namimah: (النميمة) (Calumnies) conveyance of disagreeable false information from one person to another to create hostility between them.

Namirah: (النمرة) (pl. Nimār) A thick sheet of woolen material with stripes like the skin of tiger or leopard. It is used to wrap around the waist.

Nāmisah: (النامصة) The woman who plucks the eyebrows of other women.


Naqib: (القيب) A person heading a group of six persons in an expedition (tribal chiefs).

Naqir: (القير) A name of a pot in which alcoholic drinks used to be prepared. It is the trunk of a date palm that is hollowed out or curved.

Nasab: (النسب) Lineage or genealogy.

Nasārā: (النصارى) The name given to the followers of the Christian faith both in the Qur’ān and Hadīth.

Nash: (النش) Half portion of anything. It is also said to be twenty Dirhams. Also a measure of weight equal to ½ Uqiyyah (60 grams approximately).

Nasi': (النسيء) A practice in vogue among the pre-Islamic Arabs. They used to alter the duration of the four sacred months. Whenever they wished to start fighting or to loot and plunder - and they could not do so during the sacred months - they carried out their expedition in one of the sacred months and then later on compensated for this violation by treating one of the non-sacred months as a sacred month.

Nasīḥah: (النصيحة) Sincere good advice.

Naskh: (النسخ) A style of curved writing often used for early hand-written copies of the Qur’ān.

Nasl: (النصال) A part of an arrow.

Nāsūt: (الناسووت) Human, as opposed to Divine.

Nawāfil: (النواافل) (pl. of Nāfīlah) Optional practice of worship in contrast to obligatory (Farādah). See Nafl and Nāfīlah.

Nawāt: (النواة) Equal to the weight of 5 Dirhams. Some differ and say between three Dirhams to five.

Nifāq: (النفاق) Hypocrisy.

Nifās: (النفاس) Refers to the flowing of postnatal blood after childbirth.
Nilzal: (النحل) Present. (Hibah: Gift; ‘Umrah: Lifelong gift; Ruqba: Gift of house given for lifelong use).

Nikah: (النكاح) Pronouncement of marriage or wedlock according to Shari’ah (Islamic law).

Niqab: (النقاب) Face veil with the exception of the eyes. Veil covering full face including the eyes.

Nisab: (النصاب) A threshold of wealth of which any excess is subject to Zakat (obligatory charity). So Nisab is the minimum amount of wealth or property which makes one liable to pay Zakat. Minimum amount of property liable to payment of the Zakat, e.g., Nisab of gold is twenty (20) Mithqal, i.e., approx. 94 grams; Nisab of silver is two hundred (200) Dirhams, i.e., approx. 640 grams; Nisab of food grains and fruit is 5 Awsuq, i.e., 673.5 kgms; Nisab of camels is 5 camels; Nisab of cows is 5 cows; and Nisab of sheep is 40 sheep; etc.

Niyah: (النية) It is an intention to perform an activity.

Nubuwwah: (النبوة) Prophethood.

Nuh: (نوح) A Prophet of Allah mentioned in the Qur’an and the Old Testament.

Nun: (نون) Fish.

Nur: (نور) Light


Nusk: (النسك) Religious act of worship.

Nusub: (النصب) (pl. Ansab) Nusub were stone alters at fixed places or graves, etc., whereon sacrifices were slaughtered during fixed periods of occasions and seasons in the name of idols, jinns, angels, pious men, saints, etc., in order to honor them, or to expect some benefit from them. These signify all places consecrated for offerings to others than the One True God.

Nusuk: (الناسك) A ritual sacrifice as well as other forms of devotion and worship.

Qabah: (القيامة) (pl. ’Aqbiyah) An outer garment with full-length sleeves.

Qabr: (القبر) Grave.

Qadd: (القبر) A prayer said after due time. Literally means ‘carrying out’ or ‘fulfilling’. In Islamic jurisprudence it refers to fulfilling or completing those duties such as prayers or fasting, that one may have missed due to some rea-
son or other.

**Qadariyyah**: (القدرية) (Also called the people of Qadar/Ahlul-Qadar.) The Qadariyyah sect has the belief that a person is bound to do what has been written for him, he is not free to do anything he wants as against the Jabriyyah sect whose belief is just the opposite.

**Qadar**: (القدر) Divine Preordainment or the Divine Decree.

**Qadid**: (القديم) Jerked meat, cured meat. Meat cut into strips and dried.

**Al-Qadr**: (القدر) ‘The Power.’ The name of Sūrah 97 of the Qur’ān also.

**Qādi**: (القاضي) Judge.

**Qā‘idin**: (القاعدين) People who remain inactive and do not actively fight. The opposite of Mujāhid.

**Qaylūlah**: (القبلولة) Siesta, midday nap. Rest in the middle of the day even if one does not sleep.

**Qalīb**: (القلب) A well.

**Qamīs**: (القميص) meaning ‘shirt’. However, due to constant usage, it refers to the long flowing robe worn by Muslim men and which has come to be regarded as an Islamic dress.

**Qār**: (القار) Tar or pitch.

**Qaraz**: (القرط) The leaves of Mimosa Flava used for tanning.

**Qard**: (القرض) A loan given for a good cause in the Name of Allāh, in the hope of repayment or reward in the Hereafter.

**Qard Hasanah**: (قرض حسنة) A loan extended fixed for a definite period of time without interest or profit-sharing.

**Qāri**: (القارئ) (pl. Qurrā’) A reciter. Early Muslim religious scholars were called Qurrā’. These were teachers of the early Muslims. This word is now used mainly for a person who knows the Qur’ān by heart, and due to vocal beauty and skill, publicly recite Verses from the Qur’ān. Such recitations serve to inspire and comfort believers, and are often performed early in the morning or prior to the daily worship services, and also to solemnize important occasions and events.

**Qārin**: (القرين) One who performs Hajj Qirān.

**Qarin**: (القرین) The Devil companion that is with everyone.

**Qarnul-Manāzil**: (قرن المنازل) The Miqāt of the people of Najd, in Arabia (from the east). It is situated on the way to Makkah.
Qasab: (القبس) Pipes made of gold, pearls and other precious stones. Reference to Khadijah’s home in Paradise.

Qasamah: (القسامة) The oath taken to clear him by 50 men of the tribe of a person who is being accused of killing somebody.

Qasr: (القصر) Literally means ‘to shorten,’ it is technically used to signify the Islamic rule that during one’s journey it is permissible, and indeed preferable, to pray only two Rak’ahs in those obligatory prayers in which a person is required to pray four Rak’ahs.

Qawm: (القومة) The name of the Prophet’s she-camel.

Qafid: (القطيف) Thick soft cloth like velvet or plush material.

Qattaf: (القطة) A person who conveys information from someone to another with the intention of causing harm and enmity between them. (Sahih Al-Bukhari, Vol. 8, Hadith No. 82)

Qawmah: (القومة) Raising one’s head in prayer from bowing and standing up straight.

Qawwam or Qayyim: (توام أو قيم) A person responsible for administering or supervising the affairs of either an individual or an organization, for protecting and safeguarding them and taking care of their needs.

Qaza': (القز) Shaving part of the head and leaving part.

Qiblah: (القبلة) The term used in reference to the direction Muslims face during prayers. The focal point of the Qiblah is the Ka’bah, the house of worship located in the city of Makkah. Depending upon where one is at any given time upon the earth, the Qiblah direction may vary. From North America, the direction is roughly northeast, and worship halls in local mosques are oriented accordingly.

Qil wa Qal: (قيل وقال) Sinful, useless talk (e.g., backbiting, lies, etc.).

Qintar: (القنين) A weight-measure for food grains, etc., e.g., wheat, maize, oat, barley, etc., that is equal to 256.4 kilograms. It is also said that in matters of reward, a Qintar is equal to twelve thousand Uqiyah, each Uqiyah of which is better than heaven and earth.

Qirah: (القراءة) The audible recitation during prayers.

Qirad: (القراض) Sleeping partnership (see Mudarabah).

Qiram: (القرام) A thin marked woolen curtain.

Qirat: (القرط) A special weight; sometimes a very great weight like Uhud mountain. Otherwise usually a small weight that is equal to a gram or less.
than it. 1 Qirat = 1/2 Diniq & 1 Diniq = 1/6 Dirham. In currency it is twenty or twenty-fourth of a Dinar.

Qirbah: (القرية) A water skin.

Qirsh: (القرش) A unit of money.

Qisās: (القصاص) Retaliatory punishment, retaliation in kind (eye for an eye). In Islam though, retaliation should be forgone as an act of charity. See Al-Mā'îdah (5: 48). Laws of equality when punishing a person for injuries intentionally inflicted on someone else. See Al-Baqarah (2:178-179).

Qassiy or Qassiyah: (القصي أو القصية) A linen cloth containing silken lines prepared at Qass in Egypt.

Qitham: (القتام) A plant disease that causes fruit to fall before ripening.

Qiyām: (القيام) The standing during the prayer for recitation of Sūrat Al-Fātīhah or Sūrat Al-Hamād and the second Sūrah that follows after it, while the standing after the Rukāt is Qawmah. And the voluntary prayers at night are also called Qiyām for night prayers.

Qiyāmah: (القیام) The Day of Resurrection, or the Day of Judgment.

Qiyās: (الياس) In simple terms, the verdict given by a Mujtahid or Faqīh who considered the case similar in comparison with a case judged by the Prophet. In complex issues, using analogies for the purpose of applying laws derived from the Qurʾān and Sunnah to situations not explicitly covered by these two sources. Qiyās is one of the most important tools for interpreting and implementing the Shariʿah (Islamic law). Verdicts and judgments are given by the Islamic religious scholars, after due considerations on the following proofs respectively: (a) From the Qurʾān; (b) From the Prophet’s Sunnah. (c) Conscience of the community from all over the Muslim world; (d) and Qiyās, i.e., reasoning. It is not to be practiced except if the judgment of the case is not found in the first three above mentioned proofs, (a), (b) and (c). According (the Muslim scholar Imām Shāfiʿī), Qiyās is a method for reaching a legal decision on the basis of evidence (a precedent) in which a common reason, or an effective cause, is applicable.

Qadā': (قضاء) Paying in a debt.

Qubā': (القباء) A place on the outskirts of Al-Madīnah. The Prophet established a mosque there, which bears the same name. A visit to that mosque on Saturday forenoon and offering a two Rakʿah prayer is regarded as a performance of ‘Umrah in reward according to the Prophet’s saying.

Qubbah: (القبة) A small and round one-room tent.
Qubbatus-Sakharah: (Dome of the Rock) The rock within the dome built around 691 CE by the Umayyad Caliph Abdul-Malik in the area of the famous mosque, Aqṣā Mosque or Baytul-Maqdis, in Jerusalem. It is believed to be the point from where Prophet Muhammad ﷺ was miraculously ascended to heavens.

Qudāt: (القضاة) Plural form of Qādi.

Qudhadh: (القدح) A part of an arrow.

Al-Quds: (القدس) Literally, 'The Holy,' this is the name used by Muslims for Jerusalem. It is the third holiest city in Islam, following Makkah and Al-Madinah, because of its significance to Islamic history in the broadest sense.

Qullah: (الجلال) (Also called Jirār - الجرار) A large drinking water container like a barrel whose size the scholars differ over, from five to fifty water skins (Qirbars). Even some say them to be the size of two-and-a-half water skins. Scholars have described the quantity of two Qullahs as equivalent to 500 Rats. One Ratl weighs half a seer, i.e., forty tolas. Thus the total quantity of five water skins of water measures approximately 240 kilograms or, according to some scholars, about 227 kilograms.

Qumqum: (قمقم) A narrow-headed vessel.

Qunūt: (القُنُوت) Invocation in the prayer. The act of raising both palms in front of the face while praying in the second Rak‘ah of prayer.

Qunūt Nāzilah: (قنوت نازلة) Supplication in the event of a calamity.

Quraysh: ( kurshe) One of the greatest and prominent tribes in all of Arabia in the Prophet's era. The Quraysh were the keepers of the Ka‘bah and therefore the wealthiest and most powerful tribe. The Prophet Muhammad ﷺ belonged to this tribe, which had great powers spiritually and financially both before and after Islam came. When Prophet Muhammad ﷺ started to preach the true religion of Allāh and persisted in calling people to worship Allāh alone, most of the Quraysh disavowed him and attempted to thwart his efforts, the Quraysh violently persecuted him and his followers, the Quraysh continued to plot Muhammad’s downfall, even going so far as to attempt killing him. They were badly defeated at the battle of Badr by the Muslims and their days of Jihiliyyah were finally ended when the Muslims liberated Makkah and destroyed all the idols in the Ka‘bah in the year 630 CE, after that they yielded and entered the fold of Islam.

Qurayshī or Qurashi: (kurshiyi or kurshi) A person belonging to the Quraysh, the well-known tribe of Arabia. The Prophet Muhammad ﷺ belonged to this tribe, all his descendants are also called Qurayshī.
**Qur’ān** (القرآن) Meaning 'the recitation,' or 'the reading.' Qur’ān is the Noble Book, the Living Miracle, the last revelation from Allāh to mankind and the jinn before the end of the world, revealed to Prophet Muhammad ﷺ through the angel Jibra‘īl, over a period of 23 years, the first thirteen of which were spent in Makkah and the last ten of which were spent in Al-Madīnah. There is only one Qur’ān in the whole world and it is in the Arabic language. The Qur’ān has one text, one language, and one dialect. It has been memorized by millions of Muslims in different parts of the world. The Qur’ān continues to be recited by Muslims throughout the world in the language of its revelation, Arabic, exactly as it was recited by Prophet Muhammad ﷺ nearly fourteen hundred years ago. It consists of 114 Sūras (chapters). It is to be read and recited with rules and regulations. When to be touched and to be recited, a Muslim is to be in a state of cleanliness and purity. The authenticity and the totality of the Qur’ān have been documented and recognized. The Qur’ān cannot be translated at all as the Qur’ān represents the exact Words of Allāh. Any translation is considered to be the explanation to the meaning of the Qur’ān. The Qur’ān is so rich and comprehensive in matter that it can easily guide men and women in all walks of their life. It is the ultimate source of guidance for people in all aspects of their spiritual and material lives. The Qur’ān is viewed as the authoritative guide for human beings, along with the Sunnah of Muhammad ﷺ. The Qur’ān amends, encompasses, expands, surpasses and abrogates all the earlier revelations revealed to the earlier Prophets. The names and attributes that are given to the Qur’ān in the Qur’ān speak for themselves. The Qur’ān is also described to be bounteous, glorious, mighty, honored, exalted, purified, wonderful, blessed, and confirming the truth of previous revelations. The Qur’ān has practically proved the truth and effectiveness of all of its names and epithets in the life of all true believers, who practiced its teachings sincerely and devoutly. The Qur’ān has a universal appeal, regardless of peoples’ color, creed, nationality, and geographical divisions of the world.

**Qurbān** (القربان) Literally means ‘sacrifice’. In Islam it refers to the sacrificing of animals solely for the pleasure of Allāh on the day of ‘Eidul-Adhā and the two days following it.

**Qust** (القسط) A type of incense.

**Qu’ūd** (القعود) Sitting posture in prayer while Tahiyyah and Tashah-hud are recited.

**Rabā‘i** (الرباعي) A male camel whose quadricuspid teeth have appeared, usually about in the seventh year.

**Rabā‘iyah** (الرباعية) A female camel whose quadricuspid teeth have appeared, usually about the seventh year.
**Rabb:** (الرب) (Lord) There is no proper equivalent for Rabb in English language. It means the One and the Only Lord for the entire universe, its Creator, Owner, Organizer, Provider, Master, Planner, Sustainer, Cherisher, and Giver of security, etc. Rabb is also one of the Names of Allāh. We have used the word 'Lord' as nearest to Rabb. All occurrences of 'Lord' actually mean Rabb and should be understood as such. For example see Qur’ān 2:21.

**Rabbuka:** (ربك) Your Lord, Your Master.

**Rabbul-'Ard:** (رب الأرض) Owner of the land in Musāqāt and Muzāra‘ah contracts.

**Rabbul-Māl:** (رب المال) A person who invests in Mudārabah or Musharakah. See Sāhibul-Māl.

**Rabi‘ul-Awwal:** (ربيع الأول) The third month of the Islamic calendar.

**Radiyallāh ‘Anhu:** (رضي الله عنه) May Allāh be pleased with him (RAA) is said whenever the name of a Companion of the Prophet ﷺ is read or heard or written.

**Radā‘ah:** (الرضاعة) The suckling of one's own or someone’s child.

**Rāhilah:** (الرحالة) A she-camel used for riding. (Literally means: a mount to ride).

**Rahmān and Rahîm:** (الرحمن والرحيم) These words are from the root ‘rahm’ which denotes mercy. In the Qur’ān this attribute of Allāh has been mentioned side by side with the attribute Rahmān (literally ‘merciful’). As such Rahîm signifies Allāh’s mercy and beneficence towards His creatures. Moreover, according to several scholars, the word Rahîm signifies the dimension of permanence in Allāh’s mercy, that the One Who is exceedingly merciful; the One Who is overflowing with mercy for all. See Sūrah 55 of the Qur’ān.

**Rahn:** (الرهن) Pledge or mortgage.

**Rayhān:** (الريحان) A sweet-smelling plant sweet basil and perfume made from it.

**Rayyān:** (الرّيآن) The name of one of the gates of Paradise through which the people who often observe fasting will enter.

**Rajab:** (رجب) It is the seventh month of the Islamic calendar.

**Rajabiyyah:** (الرجبة) See ‘Atīrah.

**Rajaz:** (الرجز) Name of poetic meter.

**Raj'ah:** (الرجعة) The bringing back of a wife by the husband after the first or second divorce.
**Rajm**: (الرجم) Means to stone to death those married persons who commit the crime of illegal sexual intercourse. In Islamic law the *Hadd* (prescribed) punishment of illegal sex is *Rajm*.

**Rak'ah**: (الرکة) (pl. *Raka'at*) Literally, 'a bowing.' This term represents a unit of the prayer and consists of one standing, one bowing and two prostrations. Verses from the Qur'an, special prayers and phrases are stated in these different positions. Each of the five formal worship times is comprised of varying numbers of such cycles.

**Ramadān**: (رمضان) The month of fasting. It is the ninth month of the Islamic calendar. In it the Noble Qur'an started to be revealed to our Prophet محمد (س) and in it occurs the night of *Qadr* and in it also occurred the great decisive battle of Badr. Thus, it is considered a blessed and holy month. Furthermore, Ramadān is the month in which Muslims fast daily from dawn to sunset to develop piety and self-restraint.

**Ramal**: (الرمل) Fast walking accompanied by the movements of the arms and legs to show one's physical strength. This is to be observed in the first three rounds of the *Tawaf* around the Ka'bah, and is to be done by the men only and not by the women.

**Ramy**: (الرمي) The throwing of pebbles at the pillars (*Jimār*) at Mina.

**Rāsul-Māl**: (رأس المال) Capital invested in *Mudārabah* or *Musharakah*.

**Rasūl**: (الرسول) The meaning of the word *Rasūl* is a Messenger. Allāh sent many Prophets and Messengers to mankind. Amongst them, the names of twenty-five are mentioned in the Qur'an. From within the list, the Qur'an states the names of five Messengers who are the Mighty ones. These are: Nūh (Noah), Ibrāhīm (Abraham), Mūsā (Moses), 'Eisa (Jesus), and Muhammad محمد (س). See *Nabi*.

**Ratl**: (الرطَل) Measurement equal to half a seer or a liter. See *Qullah*.

**Rāwī**: (الراوي) A narrator. In *Hadīth* literature, it means the narrator of *Ahādīth*.

**Rāyāh**: (الرایة) A flag, it is bigger than *Liwā* (standard).

**Ribā**: (الربَا) It literally means 'to grow; to increase, to expand.' Technically, Ribā denotes the amount that a lender receives from a borrower at a fixed rate in excess of the principal. It is of two kinds: 1. *Ribā Nasi'ah* (ربَا النسيئة) - taking interest on loaned money. 2. *Ribā Fadl* (ربَا الفضل) - taking something of superior quality in exchange for giving less of the same kind of thing of poorer quality. See *Al-Baqarah* (2:275-280), *Āl Imrān* (3:130).

**Ribāt**: (الرباط) Guarding Muslim frontier. Guarding the boundaries of
Muslim lands against possible attacks from the enemies. It is considered one of the highly praiseworthy forms of worship.

Ridā’ (الرداء): A piece of cloth (sheet etc.) worn around the upper part of the body.

Rijz (الرجز): Whispering, evil suggestions.

Rikāz (ركان): Buried wealth or treasure (from the pre-Islamic period) discovered in any land, whose ownership and burial period is not known. One-fifth of it goes to the public treasury and the rest to the founder or owner of the land.

Risālah (الرسالة): Regarding Hadith compilations: collection of Ahādīth dealing with a particular topic.

Rīwāyah (الرواية): Narration.

Riyā (الرياء): A minor Shirk (polytheism). Carrying out a religious act for worldly gains and not for the pleasure of Allāh.

Riyādul-Jannah (رياض الجنة): A part of the Masjid Nabawi that is said to be a part of Paradise.

Rūhullāh (روح الله): According to the early religious scholars from among the Companions of the Prophet ﷺ and their students and the Mujtahidūn, there is a rule to distinguish between the two nouns in the genitive construction. (A) When one of the two nouns is Allāh, and the other is a person of a thing, e.g., (i) Allāh’s House (Baytullāh); (ii) Allāh’s Messenger; (iii) Allāh’s slave (‘Abdullāh); (iv) Allāh’s spirit (Rūhullāh) etc. The rule of the above words is that the second noun, e.g., House, Messenger, slave, spirit, etc. is created by Allāh and is honorable with Him, similarly Allāh’s spirit may be understood as the spirit of Allāh, in fact, it is a soul created by Allāh, i.e., Jesus, and it was His Word: “Be!” - and he was created (like the creation of Adam). (B) But when one of the two is Allāh and the second is neither a person nor a thing, then it is not a created thing but is a quality of Allāh, e.g., (i) Allāh’s Knowledge (‘Ilmullāh); (ii) Allāh’s Life (Hayātullāh); (iii) Allāh’s Statement (Kalāmullāh); (iv) Allāh’s Self (Dhātullāh) etc.

Rūhul-Qudus (روح القدس): ‘The Holy Spirit.’ Another name for the Angel Gabriel (Jibra’īl).

Rukn (الركن): (pl. Arkān) Pillar, basic article.

Rukū (الركوع): It means to bend the body to bow. This bowing is one of the acts required in Islamic prayer. Additionally, the same word denotes a certain unit in the Qur’ān. The whole Book, for the sake of the convenience of the reader is divided into thirty parts (Ajzā’, sing. Juz’), and each Juz’ consists
usually of sixteen *Rukū*.

**Ruqba**: (رَقْبَى) A kind of gift in the form of a house given to somebody to live in as long as he is alive.

**Ruyjah**: (الرَّجْعَة) Incantation, amulet. Divine Speech recited as a means of curing disease. (It is a kind of treatment, i.e., to recite *Sūrat Al-Fātiḥah* or any other *Sūrah* of the Qur'ān and then blow one's breath with saliva over a sick person's body-part).

**Rushd**: (الرَّشْد) It means the right way (see 2:256). It also implies integrity and maturity in thought and action (see 21:51).

**Rutab**: (الرَّطَب) Ripe dates, opposite of *Busr*.

**Sā'**: (أَصَابُع) A volume measure that equals four *Mudds* (3 kg. approx) (also 2.172 kg.), one *Sā*' of Al-Madīnah was equal to about two and a half kilograms.

**Sabā**: (الصَّبْر) Easterly wind.

**As-Sab'ah**: (السَّبْعَة) The seven compilers of *Ahādīth* - *Bukhārī*, *Muslim*, Abū Dāwūd, Nasā'ī, Tirmīzī, Ibn Mājah, Ahmad.

**Saba' or Sheba**: (سَبَأ) The queen who visited Solomon to test his wisdom. Biblical name of Saba. (See *Sābi‘ūn* or Sabean)

**As-Sab'ul-Mathnāi**: (أَسْبَعِ الْمَثْنَائِي) The seven repeatedly recited Verses, i.e., *Sūrat Al-Fātiḥah*.

**Sabāḥah**: (صَباَحَاء) An exclamation indicating an appeal for help.

**As-Sabt**: (السَّبْت) It means Saturday, which was declared for the Israelites as the holy day of the week. God declared the Sabbath as a sign of the perpetual covenant between God and Israel. (Exodus 31:12-16.) The Israelites were required to strictly keep the Sabbath, which meant that they may not engage in any worldly activity; they may not cook, nor make their slaves or cattle serve them. Those who violated these rules were to be put to death. The Israelites, however, publicly violated these rules. For further details, see *Sūrah* 7, *Al-A‘rāf*.

**Sābi’**: (الصَّباَيَاء) (pl. Sābi‘ians) Those who change their religion.

**Sābiqūn**: (السَّبِيقُونَ) See *Muqarrabūn*.

**As-Sābiqûn al-Awwalûn**: The first forerunners in the faith.

**Sābirūn**: (الصَّابِرُونَ) People who are patient and steadfast.

**Sābi‘ūn or Sabean**: (الصَّبِيِّونَ) Of or pertaining to Saba, an inhabitant of Saba.
or Sheba, Biblical name, Sheba. an ancient kingdom in southwestern Arabia noted for its extensive trade, esp. in spices and gems. The Sabaeans played an important role in the history of early Arabia. They had a flourishing kingdom in the Yemen tract of South Arabia about 800-700 BC, though their origin may have in North Arabia. Probably the Queen of Sheba is connected with them. They succumbed to Abyssinia about 350 AD and to Persia about 579 AD. Their capital was near San‘ā’. They had beautiful stone buildings in which the pointed arch was noticeable. It is said that this passed nation used to say Lā Ilāha illā Allāh (none has the right to be worshipped but Allāh) and used to read Zabūr (The Psalms of the Sābi‘ūns) and they were neither Jews nor Christians. (See note of Yusuf Ali, 76)

Sabr: (الصبر) Sabr is a comprehensive term having various shades of meaning. It implies (a) patience in the sense of being thorough, dedicated and devoted, (b) constancy, perseverance, steadfastness and firmness of purpose, (c) disciplined and planned effort with confidence and belief in the mission itself and (d) a cheerful attitude of acceptance and understanding under suffering and hardship and in times of strife and violence, and thankfulness to God in happiness, success and achievement.

Sa‘dān: (السعدان) A thorny plant suitable for grazing animals. Some say it to be Neurada peocumbens.

Sadāq: (الصداق) This word has the same meaning as Mahr.

Sadaqah: (الصدقة) Literally, 'righteousness.' This terms refers to the voluntary giving of alms (charity). Sadaqah is distinct from Zakāh, which is a mandatory contribution paid yearly and calculated based on one’s wealth or assets. Sadaqah can consist of any item of value, and can be provided to any needy person. The Qur‘ān states that Allāh loves those who are charitable and promises great reward and forgiveness for those who give regularly to others in need.

Sadaqatul-Fitr: (صدقة الفطر) Refers to the charity that is given on or prior to the day of ‘Eidul-Fitr.

Sadīq: (الصدق) Truthful.

As-Safā wal-Marwah: (الصفا والمروة) Two mountains at Makkah neighboring Al-Masjidul-Harām (the Great Sacred Mosque) to the east. One who performs ‘Umrah and Hajj should walk seven times between these two mountains and that is called Sa’y. These are referred to in the Qur‘ān as one of the symbols of Allāh. See Al-Baqarah (2).

Safar: (الصفر) It is a disease that afflicts the abdomen, and it is not a contagious one.
Saghîrah: (الصغيره) A child or minor girl underage.

Sahâbah: (الصحابه) A term meaning ‘companions,’ commonly used in reference to those followers of Prophet Muhammad ﷺ who were closest to him in his lifetime, kept frequent company with him, and strove to emulate his sayings and doings. The Sahâbah’s piety, knowledge and love for the Prophet ﷺ were important factors in the perpetuation of his teachings and the painstakingly careful recording of his Ahâdîth in the years following his death.

Sâhib: (صهباء) A place near Khaybar.

Sâhibul-Mâl: (صاحب المال) (pl. Ashâbul-Mâl) (also, Rabbul-Mâl) The financier in the Mudânrah form of partnership agreement. provides the finance while the Mudârib provides the entrepreneurship and management. There can be many Ashâbul-Mâl and Mudâribs in a given Mudâdrabah agreement.

Sahifah: (الصحيحة) A page or manuscript. Collection of Ahâdîth by a Companion.

Sahîhayn: (الصحيحين) The Twins. The two most authentic books of Ahâdîth—Sahîh Al-Bukhârî and Sahîh Muslim.


Sahîh Muslim: A book of Ahâdîth compiled by Imâm Muslim.

Sahûr: (الصيور) A light meal taken by Muslims before dawn prior to beginning the daily fast of Ramadân. Arising for this meal is an emulation of Prophet Muhammad ﷺ, since it was his practice to do so, and thus is part of his Sunnah.

Sahw: (السهر) Forgetting (here it means forgetting how many Rak‘ât a person has prayed in which case he should perform two prostrations of Sahw).

Sâ‘îmah: (السائمة) A flock of about one hundred grazing animals.

Sâ‘ibah: (الصيبة) A she-camel used to be let loose for free pastures in the name of idols, gods, and false deities, and nothing was allowed to be carried on it. (See the Noble Qur’ân 5:103)

Sayhâh: (الصيحة) Torment-awful cry.

Sayhân wa Jayhân: (سيحان وجيحان) Sayhân (Oxus or Amu Darya) and Jayhân (Jaxartes or Syr Darya) are two rivers in the country of Syria. These are different from Sayhûn and Jayhûn that are in the territory of Khurasan. (Mu‘jam Al-Buldân of Baladharî, 2/227, 3/333). Some maintain that Sayhân is in India and Jayhân in Khurasân. Furât (Euphrates) flows from Turkey
through Syria and Iraq and joins Tigris to form Shati‘ul-Arab, and Nil (Nile) is the well-known river in Egypt.

**Sayyi‘ah:** (السية) (pl. Saiyy‘āt) Sins or demerits or bad deeds (opposite of Hasanah), often means what one earns by doing something wrong (committing a sin). According to a Hadith, if one does one thing wrong, he will receive one demerit, but if he intends to do it and restrains himself, he will get a reward.

**Sajdah:** (السجدة) (pl. Suju’d) The act of prostration in the prayer, when seven portions of the body touch the earth: the forehead on pure ground, two palms, two knees, and the two big toes. The two prostrations together are called Sajdatayn.

**As-Sajdalz:** (السجدة) Sajdatus-Sahw: (السجدة (السجدة) Prostrations for forgetfulness. Remedial Prostrations to recompense forgetting a required act of prayer.

**Sakītalt:** (السکاء) Tranquility, calmness, peace and reassurance etc.

**Salab:** (االسلم) Belongings (arms, horse, etc.) of a deceased warrior killed in a battle.

**Salaf:** (السلف) A sale in which the price is paid at once for goods to be delivered later.

**Salam:** (السلام) Synonym of Salaf.

**Salām:** (السلام) Literally means ‘peace’. It is a salutation or a way of greeting among Muslims. With the greetings of peace or with safety. In prayer it refers to the saying of ‘As-Salāmu ‘Alaykum wa Rahmatullāh’ which denotes the end of the prayer.

**Salāt:** (صلالة) Prayers. Salāt is a spiritual relationship and communication between the creature and his Creator. Salāt refers to the prescribed form of worship in Islam, and is one of the ‘five pillars’ of Islam. Muslims perform the prayers five times throughout each day as a means of maintaining God-consciousness, to thank Him for His blessings and bounty, and to seek His help and support in one’s daily life. These prayers and their time zones are: 1. Fajr (dawn or morning prayer), after dawn but before sunrise; 2. Zuhr (noon prayer), early afternoon till late afternoon; 3. ‘Asr (afternoon prayer) late afternoon prayer till sunset; 4. Maghrib (sunset prayer); just after sunset; 5. ‘Ishā’ (night prayer); late evening till late at night. Consult a prayer man-
ual for full details. Each prayer consists of a fixed set of standings, bowings, prostrations and sittings in worship to Allâh. Prayers are to be performed with mental concentration, verbal communication, vocal recitation, and physical movements to attain the spiritual uplift, peace, harmony, and concord. To perform Salât, a Muslim has to have ablution (Wâlíd). He/she should make sure that cleanliness of body, clothing, and place are attained before performing Salât.

Salât: (الصلاة) We are told to send the blessings of Allah whenever the name of the Prophet Muhammad ﷺ is mentioned. There are great merits of sending the blessings through our supplication and invocation (Du‘â). So Salât (the act of sending the blessings) is not to be confused with Salât (prayer). The supplication of sending the blessings upon the Prophet ﷺ is: “O Allâh, send Your grace, honor and mercy upon Muhammad and upon the family of Muhammad, as You sent Your grace honor and mercy upon Ibrâhîm, You are indeed Praiseworthy, Most Glorious. O Allâh, send Your blessings upon Muhammad and upon the family of Muhammad, as You sent Your blessings upon Ibrâhîm, You are indeed Praiseworthy, Most Glorious.” Muslims are informed that if they proclaim such a statement once, Allâh will reward them ten times.

Salâtul-Awwâbin: (صلاة الأواني) It is another name for Salâtud-Duhâ, that is prayer after sunrise.

Salâtud-Duhâ: (صلاة الضحى) That is optional prayer after sunrise.

Salâtul-Hâjah: (صلاة الحاجة) Prayer at times of need.

Salâtul-Istikhrah: (صلاة الاستحارة) Prayer for (seeking) guidance. See Istikhrah.

Salâtul- Istisqa': (صلاة الاستسقاء) Prayer for rain.

Salâtul-Janâzah: (صلاة الجنازة) Funeral prayer in absentia. The prayer is done in standing position only and consist of four Takbîr: 1. After the first Takbîr, recite Al-Fâtihah. 2. After the second Takbîr, recite Tashahhud and As-Salâtul-Ibrâhîmîyyah. 3. After the third Takbîr, pray for the deceased person, his or her relatives, and all Muslims in general. 4. After the fourth Takbîr, finish the prayer by uttering As-Salâmû ‘Alaykum while turning to the right.

Salâtul-Jam‘: (صلاة الجمع) Combined prayer.

Salâtul-Jâmi‘ah: (صلاة الجماعة) Congregational prayer.

As-Salâtul-Jâmi‘ah: (الصلاة الجماعة) Prayer is about to begin.

Salâtul-Jumu‘ah: (صلاة الجمعة) Friday prayer. See Jumu‘ah.
Salātul-Khawf: (صلاة الخوف) Prayer in the state of insecurity. For its procedure see Sūrat An-Nisā’ 4:102.

Salātul-Kusūf wal-Khusūf: (صلاة الكسوف والخسوف) The prayer for the Eclipse of the moon and the Eclipse of the sun.

As-Salātul-Maktūbah: (الصلاة المكبوتة) Prescribed prayers/obligatory prayers.

Salātul-Qasr: (صلاة القصر) Shortened prayer.

Salātul-Tatawwu': (صلاة التطوع) A voluntary prayer.

Salātul-Tasbīh: (صلاة التسبيح) The prayer of glorification.

Sāliḥ: (الصالح) The word means to reconcile, to put things in order, signifies behavior that is righteous, just and dignified. ‘Amal Sāliḥ, honorable or righteous action, is often combined in the Qurʾān with Imān and made a condition for success in this world, as well as in the Hereafter. Also a Prophet of Islam, peace be on him.

Salwā: (السلوى) Quails. It is told that along with manna, quails were also sent to Israelites as a food. Quails in large flights are driven through winds in the Eastern Mediterranean in certain seasons of the year.

As-Samad: (الصمود) One of the ninety-nine Attributes of Allāh. It means Absolute, Eternal, and Everlasting. It refers to the One to Whom all created beings turn to for all their needs, and Who is not dependent on anything or anyone for any need. The Most Perfect in His Attributes.

Sami‘allāhu Līman Ḥamidah: (سمع الله لمن حمد) Allāh heard him who sent his praises to Him. The phrase that is uttered in the prayer while one stands upright from the bowing position.

Samur: (السمر) A kind of tree.

Sanāh: (سناء) Means ‘good’ in the Ethiopian language.

Sannūt: (السنوت) Fennel or aniseed.

Saqīfah: (السقيفة) A shelter with a roof. The Companions of the Prophet met in a Saqīfah in Al-Madinah to pledge their loyalty to Abu Bakr after the death of the Prophet.

Sarf: (الصرف) Exchange. (Neither Sarf nor ‘Adl means neither exchange nor substitute, or no repentance nor ransom, or no obligatory or voluntary deed.)

Sarf: (صرف) A place six miles away from Makkah.

Sariyyah: (السيرة) A small army sent by Prophet Muhammad for Jihād, in which he did not personally take part.
**Satr:** (ستر) Means ‘cover, shield’. And it refers to that area of the body that has to be covered. It is also referred to as the ‘Awrah.

**Sawm:** (الصوم) (pl. Siyām) Fasting. The daily fasts Muslims undertake during the month of Ramadān, and is one of the ‘five pillars’ of Islam. For Muslims, fasting means total abstinence from all food, drink, and marital sexual relations from dawn to sunset. Muslims fast for many reasons, including to build a sense of willpower against temptation, to feel compassion for less fortunate persons, and to re-evaluate their lives in spiritual terms. Fasting is also a training process to attain self-restraint, self-control, self-discipline, self-obedience, and self-education. Few people are excused from fasting during Ramadān. Some are required to make up later for the days they did not fast such as the travelers (over 50 miles by any means), sick, pregnant women, women nursing babies, and women during their periods. Other excused people are required to feed a poor person one meal for each day they do not fast if they can afford it, such as the elderly people and the ones who have permanent diseases like ulcers.

**Sawād Aʿzan:** (السواد الأعظم) The great majority.

**Sawiq:** (السوبري) A kind of mash made of powdered roasted wheat or barley grain (also with sugar and dates).

**Saʿy:** (السعي) The going for seven times between the mountains of Safā and Marwā in Makkah during the performance of Hajj and ‘Umrah. It is done to symbolize Hajar’s search for water for her son Ismāʿīl.

**Ṣāʾi:** (الساعي) The person responsible for collecting the Zakāt is sometimes called Ṣāʾi.

**Sayyid:** (السيد) A descendant of the Noble Prophet ﷺ. See Qurayshī.

**Sayyid:** (السيد) Leader or chief.

**Sayyidi:** (سيدي) My master.

**Sayyidul-Istighfār:** (سيد الاستغفار) The Master Supplication for forgiveness.

**Shaʿāʾirullāh:** (شعائر الله) These refer to all those rites which, in opposition to polytheism and outright disbelief and atheism, are the characteristic symbols of exclusive devotion to Allāh.

**Shaʿbān:** (شعبان) The eighth month of the Islamic calendar.

**Shāfiʿi:** (شافعي) Islamic school of law founded by Imām Shāfiʿī. Followers of this school are known as the Shāfiʿī.

**Shahādah:** (الشهادة) An Arabic word meaning ‘witnessing’. The declaration of faith: Lā ilāha illallāh Muḥammadur-Rasūllullāh (I testify that none has the
right to be worshipped but Allâh and I testify that Muhammad is the Messenger of Allâh). A person must recite the Shahâdah to convert to Islam. The Shahâdah constitutes the first of the five pillars of Islam.


Shâhid (الشاهد) A witness.

Shaikh (الشيخ) A title or a nickname for an elderly person or a religious leader in a community. This title is also given to a wise person. The meaning of the word Shaykh has been distorted, misused, and abused by some mass media to reflect the wrong meanings. In the Sufi tradition, the term has a more specific application, referring to leaders within various Tarîqahs (spiritual orders or groups).

Shaitân (الشيطان) (pl. Shayâtîn) Satan, the enemy of mankind and the source of evil in the world. See Iblîs.

Ash-Shajarah (الشجرة) A well-known place on the way from Al-Madinah to Makkah.

Shâm (الشام) The region comprising Syria, Palestine, Lebanon and Jordan.

Shamlah (الشملة) Turban, head wrap, cloak, mantle.

Shaqq (الشق) Ditch type of grave.

Shari’ah (الشريعة) These are the rules and regulations of Islam, the Divine law. Shari’ah is the totality of of Allâh’s Commandments relating to man’s activities. It signifies the entire Islamic way of life, especially the Law of Islam. The Shari’ah is based upon the Qur’ân and the Sunnah of the Prophet Muhammad ﷺ, and is interpreted by scholars in deliberating and deciding upon questions and issues of a legal nature.

Sharikah (الشركة) The term is used for joint-stock companies and corporations as well, but is qualified with an adjective to indicate its nature. Thus, Sharikah Musâhahamah (شركة مساهمة) for a public limited company or a corporation whose capital has been subscribed to by the general public.

Sharqâ’ (الشرقاء) An animal with split ears.

Shawwâl (شوال) The tenth month of the Islamic calendar.

Shî’ah (الشيعة) Literally, ‘party’ or ‘partisans.’ This term designates those Muslims who believe that the rightful successor to Prophet Muhammad should have been ‘Ali bin Abu Tâlib, rather than the first caliph Abu Bakr Siddiq. Moreover, Shî’ahs believe that ‘Ali was granted a unique spiritual authority, which was passed on to certain of his descendants given the title of
Imām (leader). The largest group in Shi‘ism believes that ‘Ali was the first of twelve Imāms, and that the last one continues to exist, albeit miraculously and in a state of occultation (concealment from human view). The teachings of these spiritual leaders are an additional source of Shari‘ah (Islamic law), used by Shī‘i religious scholars to derive legislation and issue religious opinions. So, a Shi‘āh is a follower of the twelve Imāms. Shi‘āh Muslims may be found in Iran, Iraq, Afghanistan, Lebanon, Syria, Pakistan, India, and some Gulf States. A branch of Islam comprising about 10% of the total Muslim population.

Shi‘b : (الشعب) A narrow pass.

Shighār: (الشغار) A type of marriage in which persons exchange their daughters or sisters in marriage without Mahr.

Shiqāq: (الشقاق) Difference between husband and wife.

Shirāk : (الشراك) A leather strap.

Shīrk : (الشرك) Polytheism and it is to worship others along with Allāh. This term commonly used to mean association of something other than God with God. For Muslims, Allāh is Absolute, Complete, and Self-Sufficient. To set anything alongside or in place of God as reality is to commit the sin of association, which is the only sin that Allāh does not forgive, according to the Qur‘ān. Thus, paganism, or even atheism, is viewed as expression of Shīrk.

Shirkah : (الشرك) Partnership between two or more persons, whereby unlike Mudārahah, all of them have a share in finance as well as entrepreneurship and management, though not necessarily equally.

Shirkah ‘Ammah : (الشركة العامة) A partnership in which each partner is a general attorney for the other partner; a partnership that permits trading in all types of goods.

Shirkatul-Amwāl : (شركة الأموال) A partnership in which participation is based on the contribution of wealth by all partners, but the partnership has to be of the type ‘Inān or Mufāwadah.

Shirkatul-‘Aqd : (شركة العقد) A partnership created through contract as opposed to co-ownership that may be the result of a joint purchase or agreement or it may result from inheritance or from some other legal situation.

Shirkatul-Inān : (شركة العنان) A basic contract of partnership based on agency in which participation may either be on the basis of wealth or labor or credit-worthiness, and in which, equality of contribution or legal capacity is not necessary.

Shirkatul-Jabr : (شركة الجبر) Mandatory co-ownership created by an act of
Shirkah khāssah: Partnership for a single venture or for trading in a particular item: partnership in which each partner is a special attorney of the other partner.

Shirkat Mafālis: A partnership between persons, whose assets have been reduced to copper coins and who have to buy on the basis of credit-worthiness: see Shirkatul-Wujūh.

Shirkah Mufāwadah: An unlimited partnership.

Shirkatul-Wujūh: Partnership based on credit-worthiness of the partners in which the ratio of profit and loss is based on the liability borne, but the partnership has to be of the type ʻInān or Mufāwadah.

Shirkatul-Zimān: It is a term used by the Mālikis to indicate a situation, where two or more persons are buying goods on credit. It is different from the Hanafi Shirkatul-Wujūh insofar as it requires the physical presence of all the partners at the time of purchase.

Shufʻah: Pre-emption.

Shukūk: Check, certificate of debt, certificates of investment.

Shūrā: Consultation.

Shurāt: One of the Khawārij sect. So called because they thought that they had sold their lives for the pleasure of Allāh.

Shurūt: Terms and conditions in Islamic law.

Sibtīyyah: A hairless sandal dyed with the leaves or pods of Qaraz which is a species of Mimosa tree, making a brown color.

Siddiq wa Siddiqīn: The steadfast affirmers of truth. Those followers of the Prophets who were first and foremost to believe in them. (See the Qurʼān 4:69)

Siddiq: Abū Bakr, one of the closest Companions of Prophet Muhammad, was given the appellation as-Sadiq, 'the Truthful.' Upon the death of the Prophet in 632 CE, Abū Bakr became the first caliph (successor) and served as leader of the Muslim community until his death in 634 CE.

Sidr: Lote tree (or Nabk tree).

Sidratul-Munţahā: 'The lote-tree of the furthest limit.' A Nabk tree over the seventh heaven near Paradise, the place where form ends and
beyond which no created being may pass. See *An-Najm* (53:14-18).

**Siffin** (صفین): A battle that took place between ‘Ali’s followers and Mu‘awiyah’s followers at the river of the Euphrates in Iraq.

**Sihah Sittah** (الصحاح السبعة): The term *As-Sihah us-Sittah* (The Sound Six authentic collections of *Ahadith*), is used for the compilations done by Imāms and Scholars named, Bukhārī, Muslim, Tirmidhi, Nasa‘ī, Abu Dāwūd and Ibn Mājah. Today, Muslim scholars have found the collections by the latter scholar (Ibn Mājah) to have defective narrations. The majority of the Shi‘ah reports are of even later date than the early compilations. For the most part, they are from the Buyid period of around 454 Hijri.

**Sihāq** (سحاق): Lesbian sex act. Sexual act between females. This is strongly condemned in Islam, and is considered a major sin.

**Sijjin** (السجن): It is a ‘prison’ where the records of the evildoers are kept. See *Al-Muttaffīn* (83:7-9).

**Sin-nul-Bulūgh** (سن البلوغ): This is the age of maturity and puberty. It is the age at which the Muslims are considered an adult and becomes accountable for his/her duties in Islam. There is no fixed age for that in terms of years, and it is decided by three signs: having a menstruation, period or pregnancy for girls, and being physically mature or having a wet dream for boys, growing pubic hair, or reaching the age of fifteen, whichever comes first.

**Sin-nut-Tamīz** (سن التمييز): This is the age of distinguishing. This age is used in *Fiqh* to decide the age before which the mother has the right to keep the child after divorce. It varies from one person to another. The age is reached when the child can take care of himself or herself and no longer needs an adult to help him eat, get dressed, and clean himself or herself. In the school of thought of Abu Hanīfah, it is seven years for the boy and nine years for the girl. The girl is given longer time so that she can learn more of the habits of women.

**Siyarā’** (السيراء): A sheet of pure or mixed silk having yellow stripes.

**Sirah** (السيرة): The writings of the Companions of the Prophet about him, his personality, his life story, and his ways of handling different situations is called *Sirah*. The famous collections of the *Sirah* are At-Tabari, Ibn Ishaq, and Ibn Hisham. These days *Ar-Rahiq Al-Makhtūm* in many languages is very famous. The *Sirah* is a source of reference that Muslims rely on in their daily life situations and problems.

**Sirāt** (الصراط): The bridge that will be laid across Hell-fire for the people to pass over on the Day of Judgment. It is described as sharper than a sword and thinner than a hair. It will have hooks over it to snatch the people.
As-Sirāṭul-Mustaqīm: ‘The straight path,’ the path that the Prophet Muhammad demonstrated to mankind by way of the Noble Qur’ān. The path that leads to Paradise.

Sirrī Salāt: Prayer of inaudible recitation. The congregational prayers of Zuhr and ‘Asr.

Sīwāl: (السروال) Long under garment (pyjama) worn by the Arabs, and Muslims of Turkey, Bangladesh, India, and many countries of Africa and Near East.

Sīwāk: (السواك) A piece of a root of a tree called Arāk, used as a tooth stick. Also called a Miswāk.

Subh Sādiq: (الصبح الصادق) Literally means ‘true dawn.’ It refers to the time when whiteness (brightness) can be noticed on the breadth of the horizon. It is at this time that the Fajr prayer commences.

Subhānallāh: To esteem Allāh by saying ‘Glorified is Allāh’ and holding that He is free from all that (unsuitable evil things) that are ascribed to Him by the polytheists.

Subhānuhu wa Ta’ālā: ‘He is Glorified and Exalted.’ This is an expression that Muslims use whenever the Name of Allāh is pronounced or written. The meaning of this expression is: Allāh is pure of having partners and He is exalted from having a son. Muslims believe that Allāh is the only God, the Creator of the universe. He does not have partners or children. Sometimes Muslims use other expressions when the Name of Allāh is written or pronounced. Some of which are: ‘Azza wa Jalla: ‘He is the Mighty and the Majestic’; Jalla Jalālhuhu: ‘He is the Exalted Majestic.’

Suffah: (الصفة) A shaded verandah with raised platform attached to the Prophet’s Mosque in Al-Madinah where poor Muslims, including some of the most exalted Companions, used to take shelter, seek knowledge and sleep during Prophet Muhammad’s time. It was also used by the Prophet as a welcoming point for newcomers or poor people. It was part of his mosque.

Sūfī: (الصوفي) One who endeavors to achieve direct inward knowledge of God through adherence to various spiritual doctrines and methods. These include repeatedly invoking the Divine Names and reciting other religious expressions, living an austere lifestyle, and participating in various spiritual gatherings usually formed around a spiritual master with the title Shaykh. Historically, sufis have been grouped into organizations known as Tariqahs.

Sufism: (الصوفية) A particular spiritual approach and lifestyle adopted by some Muslims (known as Sufis), rather than a distinct branch of Islam. Sufism holds that direct and intimate knowledge of God can be achieved
through spiritual discipline, exertion, and austerity. Essentially, Sufism is seen as an ‘inward’ path of communion with God, complementing the Shari'ah, or ‘outward’ religious law.

**Sufrah**: (السفرة) Dining sheets, eating cloth, when the meal is ready, food is served. A piece of cloth, sheet or skin spread out on the ground, and food is put over it, either in the form of heap or in a dish type utensil to eat it combinedly.

**Suhuf**: (الصفح) pages or manuscripts.

**Suhuliyah**: (السحولية) A cotton cloth, its name is derived from the name of a village in Yemen called Suhul.

**Suhur**: (الصحر) Predawn meal. A meal taken before Fajr in the month of Ramadan to begin fasting.

**Sujud**: (السجد) See Sajda.

**Sunan**: (السنن) Collection of Ahadith only containing legal traditions (Ahadithul-Ahkam).

**Sundus**: (السندس) A kind of silk cloth.

**Sunnah**: (السنة) Literally means legal ways, orders, acts of worship and statements etc., of the Prophet ﷺ. The Ahadith are reports on the Sunnah. The two major legal sources of jurisprudence in Islam are the Qur'an and the Sunnah. The Sunnah may confirm what is mentioned in Qur'an, interpret and explain it, specify what is meant by some general Verses, limit and restrict the meaning of any Verse in it, or may explain something that has been revealed in Qur'an.

**As-Sunnat-ut-Taqririyah**: (السنة التقريرية) The Prophet's remaining silent on any Companion’s explanation of his action amounts to his approval, as we know, the Prophet's abstaining from disapproving anything said or done before him means his approval.

**Sunnah or Mustahabb**: (السنة أو المستحب) means recommendable, desirable. The acts whose neglect is not punished, but whose performance is rewarded, e.g., the call for prayers (adhân). See Mustahabb.

**Sunnah**: (السنة) That action which the Prophet ﷺ did or sanctioned. Sunnat prayers are of two types: Sunnat Mu’akkadah and Sunnat Ghayr Mu’akkadah.

**Sunnah Mu’akkadah**: (السنة المؤكدة) Compulsory prayers. Those prayers the Prophet ﷺ continuously carried out. To leave out such a type of Sunnat is a sin and one is punished for this. However, there is no harm if one leaves it out because of some valid excuse.
Sunnah Ghayr Mu'akkadah: Unascertained prayers. These prayers the Prophet carried out, but also left out at times without any reason. To follow such a type of Sunnat entails reward and to leave it out does not necessitate any punishment. These types of optional prayers were much, but not always, practiced by the Prophet.

Sunni: A term designating those Muslims who recognize the first four successors of Prophet Muhammad as the ‘Rightly-Guided Caliphs,’ and who attribute no special religious or political function to the descendants of the Prophet’s son-in-law ‘Ali bin Abu Tâlib. Sunnis hold that any pious, just, and qualified Muslim may be elected a caliph. Sunnis comprise the majority of Muslims, numbering about 90% of the total.

Sûrah: A distinct chapter of the Qur’ân, designated by a title such as Abraham, The Pilgrimage, or The Table-Spread. An individual Verse within a Sûrah is called an Ayah. The Qur’ân is comprised of 114 Sûrahs of varying lengths. Each Sûrah in the Qur’ân is named from some subject or word that is particularly striking in that chapter.

Sutrah: Screen. An object like a pillar, wall or stick, a spear etc., the height of which should not be less than a foot and must be in front of a praying person to act as a symbolical barrier or screen between him and the others.

Tâbah: Madinatun-Nabî (City of the Prophet), Madînah Munawwarrah (the Illuminated or the Enlightened City), Tâbah, Taybah, Yathrib are the other names for Al-Madînah. See Al-Madînah.

Tabî’ (تَبِيعٌ): A male two-year-old cattle, cow or ox (entered its second year).

Tabî’tah (تَبِيَّة): A female two-year-old cattle, cow or ox (entered its second year).

Tabî‘ûn: Successors, are those who benefited and derived their knowledge from the Companions of the Prophet.

Tabûk: A well-known town about 700 kilometers north of Al-Madînah.

Tadbîr: About freeing a slave.

Tadlis: (Truncation) For some reasons, like explicit affirmation of a Mudallis (Truncated - immediate narrator not known) having directly heard from whom he is reporting, references from outside the Sound Six have also been given. See, for example, Hadîth no. 35, Ibn Mâjah, collected by Ahmad from Hadith of Muhammad bin Ishâq about whom it was affirmed that he had heard directly from him. See also Introduction.

Tafsîr: Any kind of explanation, but especially a commentary on the
Qur’an. Translations of the Qur’an from Arabic into other languages such as Spanish, Urdu, or English are considered interpretations of the Qur’an, since only the original Arabic text actually constitutes the content of the Qur’an.

**Tāghūt** (الطاغوت) Literally it denotes the one who exceeds his legitimate limits. In Qur’ānic terminology it refers to the creature who exceeds the limits of his creatureliness and abrogates to himself godhead and lordship. In the negative scale of values, the first stage of man’s error is *Fisq* (i.e., disobeying Allāh without necessarily denying that one should obey Him). The second stage is that of *Kufr* (i.e., rejection of the very idea that one has to obey Allāh). The last stage is that man not only rebels against Allāh but also imposes his rebellious will on others. All those who reach this stage are said to be *Tāghūts*. So, the word *Tāghūt* covers a wide range of meanings: It means anything worshipped other than the Real God (Allāh), i.e., all the false deities. It may be Satan, devils, idols, stones, sun, stars, angels, human beings, e.g., Jesus, Messengers of Allāh, who were falsely worshipped and taken as *Tāghūts*. Likewise saints, graves, rulers, leaders, etc., are falsely worshipped, and wrongly followed.

**Tahajjud** (التهججد) The *Tahajjud* prayer is an optional or voluntary prayer that is supposed to be performed in the middle of the night. It is required that a person sleep a little before he gets up for the *Tahajjud* prayer. It may be performed anytime between ‘Isha’ and Fajr.

**Tahārah** (الطهارة) It is the state of being clean and not impure.

**Tahiyyah** (التهية) (Blessed compliments) All compliments, prayers and good words are due to Allāh; peace be upon you, O Prophet, and the mercy of Allāh and His blessings; peace be upon us and upon the righteous slaves of Allāh.

**Tahiyyatul-Masjid** (تحية المسجد) Two Rak‘at Sunnat offered as greetings of the mosque on entering the mosque for prayer.

**Tahiyyatul-Wudū’** (تحية الوضوء) Two Rak‘at Sunnat offered as greetings of the Wudū’.

**Tahlīl** (التهليل) Assertion of the Oneness by saying *Lā ilāha illallāh* (None has the right to be worshipped but Allāh).

**Tahlīl** (التحليل) Saying *As-Salāmu ‘Alaykum* at the end of the prayer, after which all the actions prohibited because of prayer are legalized, loosened or permissible again.

**Tahmīd** (التحميد) Praising Allāh by saying *Al-Hamdu lillāh* (the praise is for Allāh).
nights of Ramadān. These may be performed individually or in congregation.

**Tarībat Yaminukā** (تریت یمینک) (May your right hand be in dust). It is an expression of exhortation, meaning, if you do not do what I tell you, you will lose great advantage and win nothing but dust.

**Tarjī** (الرجوع) Repetition of recitation (especially in Adhān)

**Tartīl** (الترتیل) Measured recitation of the Qur’ān taking extreme care with regard to the rules of slow reading, pausing and stopping at every indicated point. The Prophet ﷺ has recommended it saying: “Whoever does not chant the Qur’an is not among us.” (Abū Dāwūd).

**Tasbīḥ**: (النسبي) Glorification, saying Subhānallāh, Praise, saying Al-Hamdu Lillāh, and magnification, saying Allāhu Akbar. A rosary that is used to glorify Allāh è is also called a Tasbīḥ.

**Tashah-hud**: (الشهاد) Testimony. It is the declaration of the Muslim faith towards the end of the prayers, immediately after the recitation of Tahīyyah, while sitting with the first finger of the right hand extended as a witness to the oneness of God. It is to say: “I bear witness that none has the right to be worshipped but Allāh, and I bear witness that Muhammad is his slave and Messenger.”

**Tashbih**: (التشبيه) Ascription of human characteristics to Allāh.

**Tashmīt**: (التشمیت) To say Yarhamukallāh (may Allāh have mercy on you) when someone sneezes and says Al-Hamdu Lillāh (all praise is due to Allāh).

**Taslīm**: (التسليم) Salutations or greetings, saying of Salām–As-Salāmu ’Alaykum. On finishing the prayer, one turns one’s face to the right and then to the left saying, As-Salāmu ’Alaykum wa Rahmatullāh (Peace and mercy of Allāh be upon you), and this action is called Taslīm.

**Tasmīyyah**: (السمیة) Giving a name, nomination. A title given to the Basmalah.

**Ta‘til**: (التعطیل) Denying all attributes of Allāh.

**Tathwīb**: (التوویب) Saying of As-Salātu khārīm-ninan-Nawm (The prayer is better than sleep) in the Adhān for Fajr prayers.

**Tawhīd**: (التوحید) It has three aspects; A, B and C: (A) Oneness of the Lordship of Allāh; Tawḥīdur-Rūbabīyyah: (توحید الروبية) To believe that there is only one Lord for all the universe, its Creator, Organizer, Planner, Sustainer, and the Giver of Security, etc., and that is Allāh. (B) Oneness of the worship of Allāh; Tawḥīdul-Ulūhiyyah: (توحید الألوهیة) To believe that none has the right to be worshipped [e.g. praying, invoking, asking for help (from
the unseen), swearing, slaughtering sacrifices, giving charity, fasting, pilgrimage, etc.), but Allah. (C) Oneness of the Names and the Qualities of Allah: Tawhîdul-Asmâ’ was-Sifât: (توحيد الأسماء والصفات) To believe that: (i) we must not name or qualify Allah except with what He or His Messenger has named or qualified Him; (ii) none can be named or qualified with the Names or Qualifications of Allah; e.g. Al-Karîm; (iii) we must confirm Allah’s all qualifications which Allah has stated in His Book (the Qur’ân) or mentioned through His Messenger (Muhammad ﷺ) without changing them or ignoring them completely or twisting the meanings or giving resemblance to any of the created things; e.g., Allah is present over His Throne as mentioned in the Qur’ân. (V. 20:5): “The Most Beneficent (i.e., Allah) Istawa’ (rose over) the (Mighty) Throne” over the seventh heaven; and He only comes down over the first (nearest) heaven (to us) during the day of ‘Arafat (Hajj, i.e., 9th Dhul-Hijjah) and also during the last third part of the night as mentioned by the Prophet ﷺ, but He is with us by His Knowledge only, not by His Personal Self (Bi-Dhâtihî), “There is nothing like Him, and He is the All-Hearer, the All-Seer.” (The Qur’ân, V. 42:11). This noble Verse confirms the quality of hearing and the quality of sight for Allah without resemblance to others; and likewise He also said: “To one whom I have created with Both My Hands,” (V. 38:75); and He also said: “The Hand of Allah is over their hands.”: (V. 48:10). This confirms two Hands for Allah, but there is no similarity for them. This is the Faith of all true believers, and was the Faith of all the Prophets of Allah from Noah, Abraham, Moses and Christ till the last of the Prophets, Muhammad ﷺ. It is not like as some people think that Allah is present everywhere, here, there and even inside the breasts of men. These three aspects of Tawhîd are included in the meanings of Lā ilâha illallah (none has the right to be worshipped but Allah). It is also essential to follow Allah’s Messenger Muhammad ﷺ: Wujâbul-Ittibâ’ and it is a part of Tawhîdul-Ulûhîyyah. This is included in the meaning: “I testify that Muhammad ﷺ is the Messenger of Allah” and this means, “None has the right to be followed after Allah’s Book (the Qur’ân), but Allah’s Messenger ﷺ”. [See the Qur’ân (V. 59:7) and (V. 3:31)].

Tawârûk: (التحرك) Sitting in the prayer with the left foot brought forward so that the buttocks are in direct contact with the ground.

Tawbah: (التوبة) Repentance, turning to Allah to seek forgiveness of sins or other wrong actions. Often it should be a component of the personal prayers.

Tawâf: (الطواف) The circling or circumambulation of the Holy Ka’bah. It is a part of the worship of Hajj and ‘Umrah. It is done in sets of seven circuits, after each of which it is necessary to pray two Rak’ât, preferably at or near Maqâm Ibrâhîm. It refers to the act of walking around the Ka’bah. It is not permissible to make Tawâf of any other place irrespective of how sacred it may be.
**Tawāfiul-Ifādah** (طواف الإفادة) The circumambulation of the Ka'bah by the pilgrims after they come from Mina to Makkah on the tenth day of Dhul-Hijjah. This Tawāf is one of the essential ceremonies (Rukn) of the Ḥajj. It is also called Tawāfuz-Ziyārah.

**Tawāf ul-Qudūm** (طواف القدويم) The ‘Arrival Tawāf, the Tawāf of the Ka'bah that the pilgrim must do on first entering the Sacred Mosque in Makkah. It is one of the essential rites of both the Ḥajj and 'Umrah.

**Tawāf-Wadā':** (طواف الوداع) The ‘Farewell Tawāf The Tawāf made before leaving Makkah, as the last activity there. It should be connected directly to the trip of departure, and whoever is delayed and stays on afterwards should do it again.

**Tawāfuz-Ziyārah** (طواف الزيارة) See Tawāfiul-Ifādah.

**Tawrāh:** (التوراة) (Torah) Arabic name for the holy book revealed to Prophet Moses (عليه السلام) thousands of years ago. It is the Jewish Holy Book. For Muslims, the Torah was a scriptural precursor to the Qur’ān, just as Moses was a predecessor of Muhammad ﷺ in the history of Divinely revealed monotheism.

**Tā'wil:** (التاویل) A vision of reality in which everything seen takes on symbolic meanings.

**Ta'wīdha:** (التعویذ) An amulet that is generally suspended around the neck.

**Tayālisah:** (الطيلسه) (sing. Taylasān) A famous decorated cloth usually kept on shoulders, and they say it is black.

**Tayammum:** (التهيم) It literally means ‘to intend to do a thing.’ Dry ablution, sand ablution, dust ablution. The act of purifying oneself with pure sand in the absence of water. It means spiritual cleansing that is sometimes a substitute for Wudū’ and Ghusl. As an Islamic legal term, it refers to wiping one’s hands and face with clean earth as a substitution for ablution when water cannot be obtained. To put or strike lightly the hands over clean earth and then pass the palm of each on the back of the other, blow off the dust and then pass them on the face. This is performed instead of ablution (Wudū’) and Ghusl (in case of Janābah etc.) See Sahīh Al-Bukhārī, Vol. 1, Hadith No. 334 and 340.

**Tayyībat:** (الطيات) Literary good things and good deeds, also the monetary acts of worship, like Zakāt, alms, etc. (See Salawāt also)

**Ta'ẓīr:** (التعزير) Penalization, to inflict a penalty. Discretionary punishment.

**Thaghamah:** (الفغامة) A type of grass having white color; or a white fruit from a type of plant.
**Ath-Thalāthah** (الثلاثة): The three compilers of *Ahādīth* - Abū Dāwūd, Nasā’ī, Tirmidhī.

**Thanī or Thaniyyah** (الثني أو الثنية): Those having two teeth. See *Musinnah*.

**Thaniyyah** (الثنية): Mountain or valley pass or path.

**Thaniyyatul-Wadā’** (ثنيّة الوداع): A place near Al-Madīnah.

**Tha‘īj** (الثبيج): Performing the sacrifice on camels.

**Tharīd** (الثريد): A kind of meal, prepared from meat and bread.

**Thawb** (الثوب): Garment.

**Thawr** (الثور): It is the cave wherein Prophet Muhammad ﷺ stayed before finally migrating to Al-Madīnah.

**Thawāb** (الثواب): Reward of a good deed is a Divine blessing.

**Thayyib** (الطيب): A non-virgin married or previously married woman.

**Thiqah** (الثقة): Trustworthy.

**Thunyā** (الثنية): is a kind of trade in which a person sells the fruit of his garden still on trees for a certain price but on condition that he will keep some of its fruit. This is unlawful because ‘some’ is not a fixed measure, and it is fraudulent.

**Tijārah** (التجارة): Trade. Act of buying and selling.

**Tilā’** (التملاء): A kind of alcoholic drink prepared from grapes by thickening it through boiling, two third has gone and one third left.

**Tiwalah** (التملاء): Charms.

**Tiyarah** (الطيرة): Drawing an evil omen from birds etc..

**Tubbān** (تيبان): Shorts that cover the knees (used by wrestlers).

**Tulaq’** (الطلاق): Those persons who had embraced Islam on the day of the conquest of Makkah.

**Tūr** (الطور): A mountain.

**Turbah** (الترية): Earth, especially from the shrines of the Imāms, on which Shi‘ahs place their heads during *Sajdah*.

**Turs** (الترس): A kind of shield.

**Udhiyah** (الأضحية): Sacrifice (on ‘Eidul-Adhā).

**Uhud** (أحد): A well-known mountain in Al-Madīnah. One of the great battles
in the Islamic history took place at its foot. This battle is called *Ghazwah Uhud*.

`Ulamā‘: (العلماء) See ‘Ālim.

`Ulul-Amr: (أولو الأمر) The term includes all those entrusted with directing Muslims in matters of common concern.

`Uluwwah: (الألوة) They say it is a Persian word for ‘Ud (aloeswood).

*Ummah*: (الأمة) Community or nation. It is a special name given to Muslim brotherhood and unity (worldwide Muslim community whose population exceeds 1.2 billion). The Qur'ān refers to Muslims as the best *Ummah* or *Millat* raised for the benefit of all mankind (3:110). At another place (2:143), it calls them ‘the middle nation’ (*Ummah Wasat*) a unique characteristic of the Islamic community that has been asked to maintain equitable balance between extremes, pursue the path of moderation and establish the middle way. Such a community of Muslims will be a model for the whole world to emulate.

*Ummī*: (الأمي) It signifies the ‘unlettered.’ It is also used to refer to those who do not possess Divine revelation.

*Ummul-Mu‘minin*: (أم المؤمنين) It means ‘Mother of the Believers.’ This was the title of the Prophet’s wives; *Sūrah 33 Ayah 6* stipulated that they could not marry after the Prophet’s death because all of the believers were their spiritual children.


‘Umrā: (العمرى) See *Nihāl*.

*Umrah*: (العمرة) (Minor Pilgrimage) It is an Islamic rite performed in ritual purity wearing the *Ihram*, the seamless ceremonial garments consisting of a white sheet from the navel to the knees and a white sheet covering the left shoulder, back and breast, knotted on the right. Like *Hajj*, it consists of pilgrimage to the Ka‘bah, with the essentialities of *Ihram*, *Tawāf* (circumambulation) around the Ka‘bah (seven times), and *Sa‘y* (walking and running) between Safa and Marwah (seven times). It is called minor *Hajj* since it need not be performed at a particular time of the year and its performance requires fewer ceremonies than the *Hajj* proper. (See *Sahīh Al-Bukhārī*, Vol. 3, Page 1)

*Umratul-Qadā*: (عمرة القضاء) Making up for the missed *Umrah*. The fulfilled *Umrah*—the *Umrah* that the Prophet performed in the seventh year after *Hijrah*, which he intended to do in the sixth year but the Quraysh disbelievers
had not allowed him to complete.

**Úqiyah:** (أوقية) (pl. *Awāq*) An ounce; for silver 119.4 grams, for other substances 127/128 grams, modern use of ounce 28.349 grams. One Úqiyah is equal to 40 dirhams or 147 grams of silver. It may be less or more according to different countries. (See *Awāq*)

‘Urbān: (العيران) Urbān means earnest money. If somebody settles the price of an animal and pays a certain amount as earnest money that if he did not buy this animal, the seller will keep the earnest money and in case the deal is accomplished, the buyer will deduct the earnest money from the price paid. It is prohibited.

‘Urūf: (العرف) The tree which produces *Maghāfir*.

‘Uṣr: (العصفر) Safflower.

‘Ushr: (العشر) Ten percent (in some cases five percent) of the agricultural produce payable by a Muslim as part of his religious obligation, like *Zakāh*, mainly for the benefit of the poor and the needy. (See *Sahīh Al-Bukhārī*, Vol. 2, Hadith No. 560)

Al-‘Usrah: (العسرة) The battle of Tabūk, called so because of the poverty the Muslims were facing at that time.

Usālud-Dīn: (أصول الدين) The principles of Islam.

‘Uzza: (العزى) A chief goddess identified with Venus, but it was worshipped under the form of an acacia tree, and was the deity of the Ghatafān tribe in the religion of the pre-Islamic Arabs during the days of *Jāhiliyyah*.

*Wa ‘Alaykum-Salām:* (وعليكم السلام) ‘And on you be peace.’ The reply to the Muslim greeting of *‘As-Salāmu ‘Alaykum* (peace be on you).

Wad‘i’ah: (الوديعة) This refers to deposits in trust, in which a person may hold property in trust for another, sometimes by implication of a contract.

Wafāt: (الوفاة) The death of a person.

*Wahy:* (الوحي) It refers to Revelation that consists of communicating God’s Messages to a Prophet or Messenger of God. The highest form of revelation is the Qur‘ān of which even the words are from God.

*Wahy Ghayr Matlū:* (الوحي غير المتملَّ) Revelation unrecited.

*Wahy Matlū:* (الوحي المتملَّ) Revelation recited.

Waylaka: (ويليك) May Allāh be merciful to you.

Waylaka: (ويلك) ‘Woe upon you!’
Wājib: (الواجب) Compulsory or obligatory. An act that must be performed. In Islamic jurisprudence, it refers to that act which has not been established by an absolute proof. Leaving out a Wājib without any valid reason makes one a Fāsiq and entails punishment. Imām Abū Hanīfah makes Wājib a separate category between the Fard and the Mubah.

Al-Wakālatul Mutlaqah: (الوكالة المطلقة) Resale of goods with a discount on the original stated cost.

Wakil: (الوكيل) A person who is an authorized representative or proxy. Also can mean lawyer in Urdu.

Walā': (الأела) A kind of relationship, i.e., loyalty (between the master who freed a slave and the freed slave) about the right of inheritance.

Wāli: (الولي) (pl. Awwliyā') legal guardian. A friend, protector, ruler, officer, supporter, caretaker, helper etc. Someone who is supposed to look out for your interest.

Walīmah: (الوليمة) A marriage banquet, wedding feast, or the reception after the wedding. A traditional dinner feast provided to wedding guests by the groom's family after a marriage is consummated. Providing a Walīmah was highly recommended by the Prophet ﷺ, whether it be a grand or humble affair. Friends, relatives, and neighbors are invited in it.

Waqq: (الوقف) Endowment. Term designating the giving of material property by will or by gift for pious works or for the public good. A charitable trust in the Name of Allāh, usually in perpetuity, and usually for the purposes of establishing the religion of Islam, teaching useful knowledge, feeding the poor or treating the sick. Properties with Waqq status, such as schools or hospitals, remain so perpetually, providing endless benefit to the community and endless heavenly blessings to the donor.

Wārs: (الورس) A kind of perfume. It is said to be Memecyclon Tinctorium, a plant of Yemen used as a liniment and yellow dye.

Warsiyyah: (الورسية) A cloth dyed with Wārs.

Wasīyat: (الوصايا) Wills or testaments.

Wāshimāt: (الواشمات) The women who do the job of tattoo marking.

Al-Wāsil: (الواصل) One who keeps good relations with his kith and kin.

Wāsilah: (الواصلة) The women who affixes hair extensions.

Wasilah: (الوسلة) A she-camel set free for idols because it had given birth to a she-camel at its first delivery and then again gave birth to a she-camel at its second delivery.
**Glossary Of Islamic Terms**

**Wasmah:** (الوسمة) A plant used for dyeing hair (Katam).

**Wasq:** (الوستى) (plural Awsaq or Awsuq) A volume measure equal to 60 Sā' = 135 kg. approx. It may be less or more. [One Wasq of Hijāz is equal to 180 kilos (Ibn Bāz) and 629.856 kilograms (Shaykh Fāruq Asghar Sāram Pākistāni) and according to modern measures, one Iraqui Wasq is equal to 189 kilograms.]

**Wisāl:** (الواصل) Fasting for more than one day continuously.

**Witr:** (الوضوء) Odd number. Witr Rak’ahs are odd number of Rak’ahs such as 1, 3, 5, etc. - usually 1 or 3 - that are offered after the last prayer at night.

**Wudū':** (الوضوء) Literally means ‘purity or cleanliness.’ It refers to the ablution made before performing the prescribed prayers. It requires washing (1) the face from the top of the forehead to the chin and as far as each ear; (2) the hands and arms up to the elbow; (3) wiping with wet hands a part of the head; and (4) washing the feet to the ankle. Wudū’ serves as an act of physical cleansing as a well as a precursor to the mental and spiritual cleansing necessary when in the worship of God. If clean water is unavailable, a ritual purification known as Tayyamum, which involves symbolically touching clean earth, may be substituted.

**Yājūj wa Mājūj:** (يَأَوجوج وَمآوجوج) (Gog and Magog) Two evil empires. They are mentioned in the Qur’an and Ahādīth when mentioning some of the scenes just before the Final Hour. According to Bible, Gog was a chief prince of Meshech and Tubal who came from Magog. While Magog a people descended from Japheth (son of Noah). Gog and Magog will be two nations led by Satan in a climactic battle at Armageddon against the kingdom of God. [See Qur’an, Al-Anbiyā’ (21:96), Sahih Muslim, Kitābul-Fitan wa Ashrāt us-Sā’ah]

**Yaksifan:** (يخصفان) Eclipse.

**Yalamlam:** (يِلَامِلِم) The Miqāt of the people of Yemen.

**Yamāmah:** (اليمامة) A place in Saudi Arabia towards Najd.

**Yaqīn:** (اليقين) Perfect absolute Faith.

**Ya’qūb:** (يعقوب) A Prophet of Allāh, mentioned in the Qur’ān and the Old Testament.

**Yarmūk:** (البرموک) A place in Shām.

**Yathrib:** (يثرب) See Al-Madinah.

**Yawmud-Dār:** (يُوم الدار) The Day of the House, this refers to the day when the rebels besieged ʿUthmān in his house and murdered him.
**Yawmud-Dīn**: Literally 'Day of Faith,' one of several Arabic terms for Judgment Day. See Day of Judgment.

**Yawmul-Qiyāmah**: Belief in the Day of Judgment is a basic article of faith in Islam. After God ends the present world and order of creation, a day will follow on which He will judge every person according to his or her intentions, deeds, and circumstances. Judgment by God is followed by punishment in Hell or eternal reward in Paradise.

**Yawmun-Nāfr**: The day of Nāfr. The 12th and 13th of Dhul-Hijjah when the pilgrims leave Mina after performing all the ceremonies of Ḥajj at ‘Arafāt, Al-Muzdalifah and Mina. See Nāfr.

**Yawmun-Nahr**: The day of slaughtering the sacrificial animals, i.e., the 10th of Dhul-Hijjah.

**Yawmur-Ru‘ūs**: Meaning ‘day of heads’. It is the name of the day following the ‘Eid day (‘Eidul-Adhā).

**Yawmut-Tarwiyyah**: The eighth day of the month of Dhul-Hijjah, when the pilgrims leave Makkah for Mina.

**Yūsuf**: A Prophet of Allah, mentioned in the Qur‘ān and the Old Testament.

**Zabūr**: Arabic name for the holy scripture revealed to Prophet David (Dāwūd) thousands of years ago. For Muslims, the Zabur, analogous to the Christian Psalms (the Old Testament), was a scriptural precursor to the Qur‘ān, just as David was a predecessor of Muhammad in the history of Divinely revealed monotheism.

**Zahw**: Unripe dates that have begun to ripen.

**Zakariyyā**: (Zacharia) A Prophet of God and father of John the Baptist.

**Zakāt**: One of the five pillars of Islam is Zakāt, which means purification and increment of one’s wealth. A Muslim who has money beyond a certain quantity is to pay the Zakāt. It is also called the alms due or poor due. It is to be used in eight categories for welfare of the society that are mentioned in the Qur‘ān, namely: the poor, the needy, the sympathizers, the captives, the debtors, the wayfarers, in the cause of Allah, and for those who are to collect it. The Zakāt is compulsory on all Muslims who have saved (at least) the equivalent of 85g of 24 carat gold at the time when the annual Zakāt payment is due. The amount to be collected is 2.5%, 5%, or 10%, depending on the assets and the method used to produce it. For ex-
ample, it is 2.5% of the assets that have been owned over a year, 5% of the
wheat when irrigated by the farmer, and 10% of the wheat that is irrigated
by the rain. [See Sahih Al-Bukhari, Vol. 2, Book of Zakat (24)]

Zakatul-Fitr: (زكاة الفطر) An obligatory Sadaqah to be given by Muslims
before the prayer of 'Eidul-Fitr (See Sahih Al-Bukhari, Vol. 2, The Book of
Zakatul-Fitr, Page No. 339).

Zakatul-Hubub: (زكاة الحبوب) Zakat of grain/corn.

Zakatul-Madin: (زكاة المعدن) Zakat of minerals.

Zakatul-Rikaz: (زكاة الركاز) Zakat of treasure or precious stones.

Zalim: (الظلماء) The wrongdoer, he who exceeds the limits of right, the
unjust.

Zamzam: (زمنم) The sacred well inside Al-Masjid Al-Haram near Ka‘bah in
Makkah. The water that comes out from this well is called Zamzam water.

Zanadiqah: (الزنادقة) Atheists.

Zanjabil: (الزنجبيل) A special mixture that will be in one of the drinks of the
people of Paradise. See the Qur’an, Al-Insan (76:17).

Zaqqum: (الزقوم) An extremely bitter and thorny tree that grows at the
bottom of the Hell-fire. See the Qur’an, Al-Isra’ (17:60), for example.

Zarnab: (زرنب) A kind of good smelling grass.

Zihar: (الظهار) It is a condition similar to divorce that was common in pre-
Islamic Arabia, but was made unlawful by Islam. It was a way when the hus-
band wanted to divorce his wife he would selfishly say to her, “You are like
my mother.” This way she would have not conjugal rights, but at the same
time, she would still be bound to him like a slave. See Qur’an, Al-Ahzab
(33:4), Al-Mujadilah (58:1-5).

Zina: (الزنا) Illegal sexual intercourse and embraces both fornication and
adultery.

Zindiq: (الزنيدي) One who goes so far into innovated and deviant beliefs and
philosophizing, etc., without sticking to the truth found in the Qur’an and the
Sunnah to such an extreme extent that they actually leave Islam altogether.

Ziyarah: (الزيارة) To visit or to recite special salutations for the Prophet
Muhammad ﷺ and his household.

Zuhr: (الظهير) The noon or the mid-day prayer, that is performed right after
the sun moves away from it’s zenith. The second obligatory prayer of the day.
Zulm: Zulm literally means placing a thing where it does not belong. Technically, it refers to exceeding the right and hence committing wrong or injustice.